
2604 High Performance Controller/Programmer

Engineering Handbook

Contents of binder

This binder contains item 1 from the list below.

1	Engineering Handbook 2604 Controller	HA026761
---	--------------------------------------	----------

© Copyright Eurotherm Limited 2002

All rights strictly reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced, modified or transmitted in any form by any means, nor may it be stored in a retrieval system other than for the purpose to act as an aid in operating the equipment to which the document relates, without the prior written permission of Eurotherm Limited.

Eurotherm Limited pursues a policy of continuous development and product improvement. The specifications in this document may therefore be changed without notice. The information in this document is given in good faith, but is intended for guidance only. Eurotherm Limited will accept no responsibility for any losses from errors in this document.



MODEL 2604 CONTROLLER

Engineering Handbook

Contents

1.	CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION	1-2
1.1.	ABOUT THIS MANUAL.....	1-2
1.1.1.	The Structure Of This Manual	1-2
1.2.	WHAT IS 2604.....	1-3
1.3.	GENERAL VIEW OF 2604 CONTROLLER	1-4
1.4.	OPERATOR INTERFACE - OVERVIEW	1-5
1.4.1.	Readouts and Indicators	1-5
1.4.2.	LED Status Indicators	1-6
1.4.3.	Operator Buttons	1-7
1.5.	INSTALLATION - OVERVIEW	1-8
1.6.	I/O MODULES	1-9
1.6.1.	To Add or Change Modules.....	1-10
1.7.	PARAMETERS AND HOW TO ACCESS THEM	1-11
1.7.1.	Pages	1-11
1.7.2.	To Step Through Page Headers.....	1-12
1.7.3.	Sub-headers.....	1-12
1.7.4.	To Step Through Parameters.....	1-13
1.7.5.	To Change Parameter Values	1-14
1.7.6.	Confirmation Mechanism.....	1-15
1.8.	BACKPAGE.....	1-16
1.9.	BACKSCROLL	1-16
1.10.	JUMP TO HOME DISPLAY	1-16
1.11.	INVALID KEY ACTIONS.....	1-16
1.12.	PARAMETER TABLES	1-17
1.13.	PARAMETER AVAILABILITY AND ALTERABILITY	1-18
1.12.	NAVIGATION DIAGRAM.....	1-18
2.	CHAPTER 2 FUNCTION BLOCKS	2-2
2.1.	WHAT IS A FUNCTION BLOCK?.....	2-2
2.1.1.	Inputs	2-2
2.1.2.	Outputs.....	2-3
2.1.3.	Settings.....	2-3
3.	CHAPTER 3 SOFT WIRING	3-2
3.1.	WHAT IS SOFT WIRING?	3-2
3.1.1.	An Example of Soft Wiring	3-3
3.1.2.	Configuration of the Simple PID Loop.....	3-4

4.	CHAPTER 4 ACCESS LEVELS	4-2
4.1.	THE DIFFERENT ACCESS LEVELS	4-2
4.2.	PASSCODES	4-2
4.3.	TO ENTER CONFIGURATION LEVEL	4-3
4.4.	TO ENTER NEW PASSCODES	4-4
4.5.	TO EXIT CONFIGURATION LEVEL	4-4
5.	CHAPTER 5 INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION	5-2
5.1.	WHAT IS INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION?	5-2
5.1.1.	To Select the Instrument Configuration Pages	5-2
5.2.	TO CONFIGURE CONTROLLER OPTIONS	5-3
5.2.1.	INSTRUMENT Options Page	5-3
5.2.2.	INSTRUMENT Info Page	5-5
5.2.3.	INSTRUMENT Units Page	5-5
5.2.4.	INSTRUMENT Display Page	5-6
5.2.5.	INSTRUMENT Page Promote Page	5-8
5.2.6.	INSTRUMENT User Text Page	5-9
5.2.7.	INSTRUMENT Summary Page	5-10
5.2.8.	INSTRUMENT Standby Page	5-12
5.3.	USER TEXT EXAMPLES	5-13
5.3.1.	To Re-Name Loop 1 to Zone 1	5-13
5.3.2.	To Re-Name User Alarm 1 and Provide a Message	5-13
5.3.3.	To Re-Name Module 1 to be called Heat Output	5-13
5.3.4.	To Show User Text in the Summary Page on an Event	5-14
5.3.5.	To Assign Custom Units to the Power Up Display	5-15
5.3.6.	To Customise the Power Up Display	5-15
6.	CHAPTER 6 PROGRAMMER CONFIGURATION	6-2
6.1.	WHAT IS SETPOINT PROGRAMMING ?	6-3
6.2.	THE 2604 SETPOINT PROGRAMMER DEFINITIONS	6-4
6.2.1.	Run	6-4
6.2.2.	Hold	6-4
6.2.3.	Reset	6-4
6.2.4.	Servo	6-4
6.2.5.	Hot Start	6-4
6.2.6.	Digital Inputs	6-5
6.2.7.	Power Fail Recovery	6-6
6.2.8.	Wait	6-7
6.2.9.	Holdback (Guaranteed Soak)	6-8
6.2.10.	Fine and Coarse Holdback	6-9
6.3.	PROGRAM USER VALUES	6-10
6.3.1.	Program User Value Enumerations	6-10
6.4.	PROGRAMMER TYPES	6-11
6.4.1.	Time To Target Programmer	6-11
6.4.2.	Ramp Rate Programmer	6-11
6.5.	SEGMENT TYPES	6-11

6.5.1.	Profile	6-11
6.5.2.	Go Back Segment.....	6-12
6.5.3.	End Segment	6-12
6.6.	TO ENABLE THE PROGRAMMER FUNCTION BLOCK	6-13
6.7.	TO CONFIGURE PROGRAM TYPE.....	6-14
6.7.1.	PROGRAM EDIT Options Page.....	6-15
6.8.	PROFILE LOCK.....	6-16
6.9.	PROGRAMMER WIRING	7-17
6.9.1.	Programmer Function Block.....	6-17
6.9.2.	PROGRAM EDIT Wiring Page.....	6-18
6.10.	TO CREATE OR EDIT A PROGRAM.....	6-19
6.10.1.	Parameters Common To A Program.....	6-19
6.10.2.	PROGRAM EDIT Program Page.....	6-20
6.10.3.	Parameters Common To Each Segment	6-21
6.10.4.	PROGRAM EDIT Segment Page.....	6-22
6.10.5.	Run Parameters	6-24
6.11.	PROGRAMMER WIRING EXAMPLES	6-29
6.11.1.	One Profile, Three Loops	6-29
6.11.2.	Two Profiles, Two Loops.....	6-31
7	CHAPTER 7 DIGITAL PROGRAMMER.....	7-1
7.1	WHAT IS THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER?	7-2
7.2	TO EDIT THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER	7-3
7.2.1	Digital Program Edit Page	7-4
7.2.2	Digital Program 1 to 4 Page.....	7-5
7.3	POWER FAIL RECOVERY	7-5
8.	CHAPTER 8 ALARM CONFIGURATION.....	8-2
8.1.	DEFINITION OF ALARMS AND EVENTS	8-2
8.1.1.	Customisable Parameter Names.....	8-2
8.2.	TYPES OF ALARM USED IN 2604 CONTROLLER.....	8-3
8.2.1.	Full Scale High	8-3
8.2.2.	Full Scale Low	8-3
8.2.3.	Deviation High Alarm.....	8-4
8.2.4.	Deviation Low Alarm.....	8-4
8.2.5.	Deviation Band	8-5
8.2.6.	Rate Of Change Alarm (Negative Direction)	8-6
8.2.7.	Rate Of Change Alarm (Positive Direction).....	8-6
8.3.	BLOCKING ALARMS	8-7
8.3.1.	Full Scale Low With Blocking.....	8-7
8.3.2.	Full Scale High Alarm With Blocking	8-7
8.3.3.	Deviation Band With Blocking	8-8
8.4.	LATCHING ALARMS	8-9
8.4.1.	Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) With Automatic Reset.....	8-9
8.4.2.	Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) With Manual Reset	8-10
8.4.3.	Grouped Alarms	8-10

8.5.	HOW ALARMS ARE INDICATED	8-11
8.5.1.	Alarm Delay Time	8-11
8.6.	TO CONFIGURE LOOP 1 ALARM TYPE.....	8-12
8.7.	ALARMS TABLES.....	8-14
8.7.1.	ALARMS (Summary Page).....	8-15
8.7.2.	ALARMS <i>LPI</i> (2 or 3) Page Parameters	8-16
8.7.3.	ALARMS (PV Input Page) Parameters.....	8-17
8.7.4.	ALARMS (An Input Page) Parameters	8-18
8.7.5.	ALARMS (Module 1,3, 4, 5 & 6 Page) Parameters	8-18
8.7.6.	ALARMS (User 1 to 8 Page) Parameters.....	8-18
8.8.	ALARM WIRING EXAMPLES.....	8-20
8.8.1.	Control Loop With High and Low Alarms.....	8-20
8.8.2.	Loop Alarm Inhibited if Programmer not in Run.....	8-22
9.	CHAPTER 9 LOOP SET UP.....	9-3
9.1.	WHAT IS LOOP SET UP	9-3
9.1.1.	LOOP SET UP (Options page)	9-4
9.2.	SINGLE LOOP CONTROL	9-8
9.2.1.	LOOP SET UP (Wiring page) SINGLE LOOP	9-8
9.3.	SETPOINT DEFINITION	9-10
9.3.1.	Setpoint Function Block	9-10
9.3.2.	Setpoint Parameters.....	9-11
9.3.3.	<i>LPI</i> SETUP (SP Aux) Page	9-12
9.4.	PID CONTROL	9-13
9.4.1.	Proportional Term	9-13
9.4.2.	Integral Term.....	9-13
9.4.3.	Derivative Term	9-14
9.4.4.	High and Low Cutback	9-14
	PID Block Diagram.....	9-15
9.4.6.	Remote (External) OP Feedback.....	9-16
9.4.7.	Analogue Value.....	9-16
9.5.	GAIN SCHEDULING	9-17
9.5.1.	To Configure Gain Scheduling:-	9-18
9.5.2.	PID Parameters	9-19
9.5.3.	PID (Aux) Parameters	9-21
9.6.	OUTPUT PARAMETERS.....	9-22
9.6.1.	Table of Output Parameters.....	9-22
9.7.	MOTORISED VALVE CONTROL	9-24
9.7.1.	Motor Parameters.....	9-24
9.8.	DIAGNOSTICS.....	9-26
9.8.1.	Diagnostic Page.....	9-26
9.9.	DISPLAY.....	9-27
9.9.1.	Display Page	9-27
9.10.	CASCADE CONTROL	9-28
9.10.1.	Overview	9-28
9.10.2.	Full Scale Cascade Mode	9-28
9.10.3.	Trim Mode	9-29

9.10.4.	Auto/Manual Operation in Cascade	9-30
9.10.5.	Cascade Controller Block Diagrams	9-31
9.10.6.	LOOP SETUP (Wiring page) for Cascade Loop.....	9-32
9.10.7.	Cascade Parameters	9-34
9.10.8.	Cascade Wiring Example	9-35
9.11.	RATIO CONTROL	9-37
9.11.1.	Overview	9-37
9.11.2.	Basic Ratio Control	9-37
9.11.3.	Controller Configured For Ratio	9-38
9.11.4.	Ratio Parameters	9-39
9.11.5.	Ratio Wiring Example.....	9-40
9.12.	OVERIDE CONTROL	9-42
9.12.1.	Overview	9-42
9.12.2.	Simple Override	9-42
9.12.3.	Controller Configured For Override.....	9-43
9.12.4.	Override Parameters.....	9-45
9.12.5.	Override Wiring Example	9-46
9.13.	LOOP2 SET UP	9-48
9.14.	LOOP3 SET UP	9-48
10.	CHAPTER 10 TUNING	10-2
10.1.	WHAT IS TUNING	10-2
10.2.	AUTOMATIC TUNING	10-3
10.2.1.	One-shot Tuning	10-3
10.3.	TO AUTOTUNE CONTROL LOOP <i>LPI</i>	10-4
10.3.1.	Carbon Potential Control	10-5
10.3.2.	AutotuneParameters	10-6
10.3.3.	How Tuning State is Displayed.....	10-7
	MANUAL TUNING.....	10-8
10.3.4.	Setting the cutback values	10-9
10.3.5.	Integral action and manual reset.....	10-10
10.3.6.	Valve Position Control.....	10-10
10.4.	TUNING WHEN GAIN SCHEDULING IS USED.....	10-11
10.4.1.	Tuning Procedure	10-11
10.5.	CASCADE TUNING	10-12
10.5.1.	To Tune a Full Scale Cascade Loop.....	10-12
10.5.2.	To Tune a Trim Mode Cascade Loop	10-15
11.	CHAPTER 11 CONTROLLER APPLICATIONS	11-2
11.1.	ZIRCONIA - CARBON POTENTIAL CONTROL	11-3
11.1.1.	Temperature Control	11-3
11.1.2.	Carbon Potential Control	11-3
11.1.3.	Sooting Alarm	11-3
11.1.4.	Automatic Probe Cleaning	11-3
11.1.5.	Endothermic Gas Correction	11-3
11.1.6.	Example of Carbon Potential Controller Connections	11-4
11.2.	TO VIEW AND ADJUST ZIRCONIA PARAMETERS	11-5

11.2.1.	Zirconia Parameters.....	11-6
11.2.2.	Wiring Page.....	11-8
11.3.	ZIRCONIA WIRING EXAMPLE.....	11-8
11.3.1.	The Zirconia Function Block	11-8
11.3.2.	Configuration of a Carbon Potential Control Loop.....	11-9
11.3.3.	Probe Impedance.....	11-12
11.4.	HUMIDITY CONTROL	11-13
11.4.1.	Overview	11-13
11.4.2.	Example Of Humidity Controller Connections	11-13
11.4.3.	Temperature Control Of An Environmental Chamber	11-14
11.4.4.	Humidity Control Of An Environmental Chamber	11-14
11.5.	TO VIEW AND ADJUST HUMIDITY PARAMETERS	11-15
11.5.1.	Humidity Options Parameters	11-16
11.5.2.	Wiring Page.....	11-16
11.6.	HUMIDITY WIRING EXAMPLE.....	11-17
11.6.1.	The Humidity Function Block.....	11-17
11.6.2.	Configuration of a Humidity Control Loop.....	11-17
12.	CHAPTER 12 INPUT OPERATORS.....	12-2
12.1.	WHAT ARE INPUT OPERATORS.....	12-2
12.2.	CUSTOM LINEARISATION.....	12-3
12.2.1.	Compensation for Sensor Non-Linearities	12-4
12.2.2.	To Create a Linearised Input	12-5
12.2.3.	Input Operators Custom Linearisation Parameters	12-6
12.3.	THERMOCOUPLE/PYROMETER SWITCHING	12-7
12.3.1.	To Set Up Thermocouple/Pyrometer Switching Points.....	12-8
12.3.2.	Input Operators Switch Over Parameters	12-9
12.4.	THE MONITOR BLOCK.....	12-10
12.4.1.	Input Operators Monitor Parameters	12-10
12.5.	BCD INPUT	12-11
12.5.1.	Main Features.....	12-11
12.5.2.	BCD Parameters.....	12-12
12.6.	INPUT OPERATORS WIRING EXAMPLES.....	12-13
12.6.1.	Switch Over Loop With Custom Linearised Input	12-13
12.6.2.	Configuring the BCD Input to Select a Program.....	12-15
12.6.3.	Holdback Duration Timer	12-17
13.	CHAPTER 13 TIMER, CLOCK, TOTALISER, OPERATION	13-2
13.1.	WHAT ARE TIMER BLOCKS?	13-2
13.2.	TIMER TYPES.....	13-4
13.2.1.	On Pulse Timer Mode	13-4
13.2.2.	Off Delay Timer Mode	13-5
13.2.3.	One Shot Timer Mode.....	13-6
13.2.4.	Minimum On Timer Mode	13-7
13.3.	TO VIEW AND ADJUST TIMER PARAMETERS.....	13-8
13.3.1.	Timer Parameters	13-9
13.4.	THE CLOCK	13-10
13.4.1.	Clock Parameters.....	13-10

13.5.	TIME BASED ALARMS	13-11
13.5.1.	Timer Alarm Parameters	13-11
13.6.	TOTALISERS.....	13-12
13.6.1.	Totaliser Parameters	13-12
13.7.	APPLICATION EXAMPLE.....	13-14
13.7.1.	Compressor Timer.....	13-14
14.	CHAPTER 14 ADVANCED FUNCTIONS.....	14-2
14.1.	PATTERN GENERATOR.....	14-2
14.1.1.	Example: Programmer Event Outputs	14-2
14.2.	ANALOGUE SWITCHES	14-5
14.2.1.	To Set up an Analogue Switch	14-5
14.2.2.	Analogue Switch Parameters.....	14-6
14.3.	USER VALUES.....	14-7
14.3.1.	To Access User Values.....	14-7
14.3.2.	User Values Parameter Table	14-8
14.4.	USER MESSAGES.....	14-9
14.4.1.	To Configure A User Message	14-10
14.5.	USER SWITCHES.....	14-11
14.5.1.	To Configure User Switches	14-11
14.6.	CUSTOM ENUMERATIONS	14-12
14.6.1.	To Configure Custom Enumerations.....	14-12
15.	CHAPTER 15 ANALOGUE OPERATORS.....	15-2
15.1.	WHAT ARE ANALOGUE OPERATORS?	15-2
15.1.1.	Analogue Operations.....	15-3
15.2.	TO CONFIGURE ANALOGUE OPERATORS	15-4
15.2.1.	Analogue Operator Parameters.....	15-5
15.	CHAPTER 15 ANALOGUE OPERATORS.....	16-2
15.1.	WHAT ARE ANALOGUE OPERATORS?	16-2
15.1.1.	Analogue Operations.....	16-3
15.2.	TO CONFIGURE ANALOGUE OPERATORS	16-4
15.2.1.	Analogue Operator Parameters.....	16-5
17.	CHAPTER 17 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS.....	17-2
17.1.	WHAT IS DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS?	17-2
17.2.	TO CONFIGURE COMMUNICATIONS PARAMETERS.....	17-3
17.2.1.	H Module Parameters.....	17-4
17.2.2.	J Module Parameters	17-5
17.3.	DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS DIAGNOSTICS.....	17-6

18.	CHAPTER 18 MASTER COMMUNICATIONS.....	18-2
18.1.	INTRODUCTION.....	18-2
18.1.1.	Broadcast Communications.....	18-2
18.1.2.	Direct read/write.....	18-2
18.2.	WIRING CONNECTIONS.....	18-3
18.2.1.	Example Wiring Diagrams for Different Slaves.....	18-4
18.3.	CROSS-BOARD VERSION.....	18-5
18.4.	BASIC NAVIGATION.....	18-6
18.5.	TO CONFIGURE PARAMETERS.....	18-7
18.6.	TO CONFIGURE SLAVES.....	18-9
18.7.	PARAMETER TABLES.....	18-10
18.8.	ADDITIONAL NOTES.....	18-13
18.8.1.	IEEE in 2000 Series.....	18-13
18.8.2.	Configuration mode.....	18-14
19.	CHAPTER 19 STANDARD IO.....	19-2
19.1.	WHAT IS STANDARD IO?.....	19-2
19.2.	PV INPUT.....	19-3
19.2.1.	To Configure Input Channel Type.....	19-3
19.2.2.	Standard IO <i>PV Input</i> Parameters.....	19-4
19.2.3.	PV Input Scaling.....	19-6
19.2.4.	Offset.....	19-6
19.2.5.	To Scale a Linear PV Input.....	19-7
19.2.6.	To View and Change Input Filter Time.....	19-8
19.3.	ANALOGUE INPUT.....	19-9
19.3.1.	To Scale the Analogue Input.....	19-9
19.3.2.	Standard IO <i>Analogue Input</i> Parameters.....	19-9
19.3.3.	Sensor Break Value.....	19-10
19.4.	THE FIXED RELAY OUTPUT PARAMETERS.....	19-11
19.4.1.	Fixed Relay Output Scaling.....	19-11
19.4.2.	To Set up and Scale the Fixed Relay Output.....	19-12
19.4.3.	Standard IO <i>AA Relay</i> Parameters.....	19-13
19.5.	STANDARD IO DIG I/O PARAMETERS.....	19-14
19.5.1.	Standard <i>Digital IO</i> Parameters.....	19-14
19.6.	STANDARD IO DIAGNOSTIC PARAMETERS.....	19-16
19.6.1.	Standard IO Diagnostic Parameters Table.....	19-16
20.	CHAPTER 20 MODULE IO.....	20-2
20.1.	WHAT IS MODULE IO?.....	20-2
20.2.	MODULE IDENTIFICATION.....	20-4
20.2.1.	Idents Page.....	20-4
20.3.	MODULE IO PARAMETERS.....	20-5
20.3.1.	DC Control and DC Retransmission.....	20-6
20.3.2.	Relay Output.....	20-7
20.3.3.	Triac Output.....	20-8
20.3.4.	Triple Logic Output and Single Isolated Logic Output.....	20-9
20.3.5.	Triple Logic and Triple Contact Input.....	20-10
20.3.6.	Transmitter Power Supply.....	20-10

20.3.7.	Transducer Power Supply	20-11
20.3.8.	Potentiometer Input.....	20-12
20.3.9.	PV Input.....	20-13
20.3.10.	DC Input.....	20-15
20.3.11.	Dual PV Input	20-17
20.3.12.	Dual DC Output Module.....	20-20
20.3.13.	High Resolution Retransmission Output.....	20-22
20.4.	MODULE SCALING	20-27
20.4.1.	The PV Input.....	20-27
20.4.2.	To Scale a Linear PV Input:-.....	20-28
20.4.3.	Output modules	20-29
20.4.4.	To Scale A Control Output:-	20-30
20.4.5.	Retransmission Output	20-31
20.4.6.	To Scale a Retransmission Output	20-32
20.4.7.	To Scale the Potentiometer input	20-33
20.5.	MODULE IO WIRING EXAMPLES	20-35
20.5.1.	To Configure Module 1 Channel A to Run a Program.....	20-35
20.5.2.	To Operate a Relay from a Digital Input	20-35
20.5.3.	Zirconia Probe Impedance Measurement.....	20-36
21.	CHAPTER 21 TRANSDUCER SCALING	21-2
21.1.	WHAT IS TRANSDUCER SCALING?.....	21-2
21.2.	SHUNT CALIBRATION	21-3
21.2.1.	To Calibrate a Strain Gauge Bridge Transducer.....	21-4
21.3.	LOAD CELL CALIBRATION.....	21-6
21.3.1.	To Calibrate a Load Cell	21-7
21.4.	COMPARISON CALIBRATION	21-8
21.4.1.	To Calibrate a Controller Against a Second Reference	21-9
21.5.	AUTO-TARE CALIBRATION	21-11
21.5.1.	To Use the Auto-Tare Feature.....	21-11
21.6.	TRANSDUCER SCALING PARAMETERS	21-13
21.6.1.	Transducer Scaling Parameter Table	21-13
21.6.2.	Parameter Notes	21-15
22.	CHAPTER 22 IO EXPANDER.....	22-2
22.1.	WHAT IS IO EXPANDER?	22-2
22.2.	TO CONFIGURE IO EXPANDER.....	22-3
22.2.1.	IO Expander parameters	22-4
23.	CHAPTER 23 DIAGNOSTICS	23-2
23.1.	WHAT IS DIAGNOSTICS?	23-2
23.1.1.	Diagnostics parameters.....	23-2
24.	CHAPTER 24 CALIBRATION.....	24-2
24.1.	USER CALIBRATION	24-2
24.2.	PRECAUTIONS	24-3
24.3.	PV INPUT.....	24-4
24.3.1.	To Calibrate mV Range.....	24-4
24.3.2.	Thermocouple Calibration.....	24-6

24.3.3.	Voltage Calibration	24-7
24.3.4.	High Z Voltage Calibration	24-7
24.3.5.	RTD Calibration	24-8
24.4.	ANALOGUE INPUT	24-10
24.5.	TO RESTORE FACTORY CALIBRATION VALUES	24-11
24.6.	MODULE I/O.....	24-12
24.6.1.	DC Output Module.....	24-12
24.6.2.	PV Input Module.....	24-14
24.6.3.	Dual PV Input Module.....	24-14
24.6.4.	DC Input Module	24-14
A.	APPENDIX A ORDER CODE	A-2
A.1.	HARDWARE CODE.....	A-2
A.2.	CONFIGURATION CODING (OPTIONAL)	A-3
A.3.	QUICK START CODE EXAMPLE:	A-4
B.	APPENDIX B SAFETY AND EMC INFORMATION.....	B-2
B.1.	SAFETY	B-2
B.1.1.	ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY	B-2
B.2.	SERVICE AND REPAIR	B-2
B.2.1.	Electrostatic discharge precautions	B-2
B.2.2.	Cleaning	B-2
B.3.	INSTALLATION SAFETY REQUIREMENTS	B-3
B.3.1.	Safety Symbols.....	B-3
B.3.2.	Personnel.....	B-3
B.3.3.	Enclosure of live parts.....	B-3
B.3.4.	Isolation.....	B-3
B.3.5.	Wiring	B-4
B.3.6.	Power Isolation	B-4
B.3.7.	Earth leakage current.....	B-4
B.3.8.	Overcurrent protection	B-5
B.3.9.	Voltage rating.....	B-5
B.3.10.	Conductive pollution.....	B-5
B.3.11.	Over-temperature protection	B-6
B.3.12.	Grounding of the temperature sensor shield	B-6
B.4.	INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EMC	B-6
B.4.1.	Routing of wires.....	B-6
C.	APPENDIX C TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION	C-2
C.1.	ALL ANALOGUE, DUAL AND PV INPUTS.....	C-2

C.2.	PRECISION PV INPUT / MODULE.....	C-3
C.3.	DUAL (PROBE) INPUT MODULE.....	C-3
C.4.	ANALOGUE INPUT	C-4
C.5.	ANALOGUE INPUT MODULE	C-4
C.6.	STANDARD DIGITAL I/O	C-5
C.7.	DIGITAL INPUT MODULES.....	C-5
C.8.	DIGITAL OUTPUT MODULES.....	C-5
C.9.	ANALOGUE OUTPUT MODULES	C-5
C.10.	TRANSMITTER PSU	C-5
C.11.	TRANSDUCER PSU	C-6
C.12.	DUAL DC OUTPUT.....	C-6
C.13.	HIGH RESOLUTION DC OUTPUT	C-6
C.14.	POTENTIOMETER INPUT	C-6
C.15.	DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS	C-6
C.16.	ALARMS.....	C-6
C.17.	USER MESSAGES	C-7
C.18.	CONTROL FUNCTIONS.....	C-7
C.19.	SETPOINT PROGRAMMER.....	C-7
C.20.	ADVANCED FUNCTIONS	C-7
C.21.	GENERAL SPECIFICATION	C-8
C.22.	GRAPHICAL REPRESENTATION OF ERRORS.....	C-9
C.22.1.	mV Input	C-9
C.22.2.	Mid range high impedance Input.....	C-10
C.22.3.	High Level Input	C-11
C.22.4.	RTD (Pt-100) Input type	C-12
C.22.5.	Thermocouple Input type	C-14
D.	APPENDIX D PARAMETER UNITS AND ADDRESSES.....	D-2
D.1.	COMMONLY USED PARAMETERS.....	D-2
D.2.	PARAMETER UNITS.....	D-8
D.3.	MODULE STATUS MESSAGES	D-8
E.	APPENDIX E CASCADE TRIM MODE – EARLIER CONTROLLERSE-2	
E.1	CASCADE PARAMETERS	E-3

F.	APPENDIX F INSTALLATION.....	F-2
F.1.	MECHANICAL INSTALLATION.....	F-2
F.1.1.	Positioning.....	F-2
F.1.2.	Outline dimensions Model 2604.....	F-2
F.1.3.	Mounting the Controller.....	F-3
F.1.4.	Unplugging and Plugging in the Controller.....	F-3
F.2.	WIRING.....	F-4
F.2.1.	Electrical Connections.....	F-4
F.2.2.	Rear Terminal Layout.....	F-4
F.3.	STANDARD CONNECTIONS.....	F-6
F.3.1.	Power Supply Wiring.....	F-6
F.3.2.	Relay Output.....	F-6
F.3.3.	Sensor Input Connections.....	F-7
F.3.4.	Analogue Input Connections.....	F-8
F.3.5.	I/O Expander (or Additional Digital Input).....	F-9
F.3.6.	Digital I/O.....	F-10
F.4.	OPTIONAL PLUG IN MODULE CONNECTIONS.....	F-11
F.4.1.	Digital Communications Connections.....	F-11
F.4.2.	Devicenet Wiring.....	F-13
F.4.3.	I/O Modules.....	F-15
F.5.	TO CONNECT ZIRCONIA (DUAL SIGNAL) PROBE.....	F-21
F.5.1.	Zirconia Probe Screening.....	F-22

Issue Status Of This Manual

Section	Issue	Section	Issue
Contents	3	Appendix A	3
Chapter 1	3	Appendix B	2
Chapter 2	3	Appendix C	3
Chapter 3	3	Appendix D	3
Chapter 4	3	Appendix E	3
Chapter 5	3	Appendix F	3
Chapter 6	3		
Chapter 7	3		
Chapter 8	3		
Chapter 9	3		
Chapter 10	3		
Chapter 11	3		
Chapter 12	3		
Chapter 13	3		
Chapter 14	3		
Chapter 15	3		
Chapter 16	3		
Chapter 17	3		
Chapter 18	1		
Chapter 19	3		
Chapter 20	3		
Chapter 21	3		
Chapter 22	3		
Chapter 23	3		
Chapter 24	3		

Notes

1. Sections are up-dated independently and so may be at different issues.
2. The Contents section, and the manual as a whole, always take the issue number of the most recently up-issued section.

1.	Chapter 1 INTRODUCTION	2
1.1.	ABOUT THIS MANUAL	2
1.1.1.	The Structure Of This Manual.....	2
1.2.	WHAT IS 2604.....	3
1.3.	GENERAL VIEW OF 2604 CONTROLLER.....	4
1.4.	OPERATOR INTERFACE - OVERVIEW	5
1.4.1.	Readouts and Indicators	5
1.4.2.	LED Status Indicators	6
1.4.3.	Operator Buttons	7
1.5.	INSTALLATION - OVERVIEW.....	8
1.6.	I/O MODULES	9
1.6.1.	To Add or Change Modules	10
1.7.	PARAMETERS AND HOW TO ACCESS THEM.....	11
1.7.1.	Pages	11
1.7.2.	To Step Through Page Headers.....	12
1.7.3.	Sub-headers	12
1.7.4.	To Step Through Parameters.....	13
1.7.5.	To Change Parameter Values	14
1.7.6.	Confirmation Mechanism.....	15
1.8.	BACKPAGE	16
1.9.	BACKSCROLL	16
1.10.	JUMP TO HOME DISPLAY	16
1.11.	INVALID KEY ACTIONS	16
1.12.	PARAMETER TABLES.....	17
1.13.	PARAMETER AVAILABILITY AND ALTERABILITY	18
1.14.	NAVIGATION DIAGRAM.....	20

1. Chapter 1 INTRODUCTION

Thank you for selecting the 2604 High Performance Programmer/Controller. This chapter provides an overview of your controller including how to change modules and the principle of operation of the user interface.

1.1. ABOUT THIS MANUAL

This manual is intended for those who wish to configure the controller.

Installation and operation of the controller is described in the Installation and Operation Handbook, Part No. HA026491 supplied with the controller.

Access to the parameters in the controller is achieved through five levels of security. The levels of access are:-

Level 1	Operation only. This level allows, for example, parameters to be changed within safe limits or programmers to be run, held or reset.
Level 2	Supervisory level. This level allows, for example, parameter limits to be pre-set or programs to be edited or created. (Default Passcode = 2)
Level 3	Commissioning level. This level is intended for use when commissioning the instrument. It allows, for example, calibration offsets to be adjusted to match transducer and transmitter characteristics. (Default Passcode = 3)
View Config	It is possible also to read the configuration of the controller at any level but the configuration cannot be changed. (Passcode = 2604)
Config	Configuration of the controller allows you to set up the fundamental characteristics of the controller so that it can be made to match the requirements of the process. (Default Passcode = 4)

1.1.1. The Structure Of This Manual

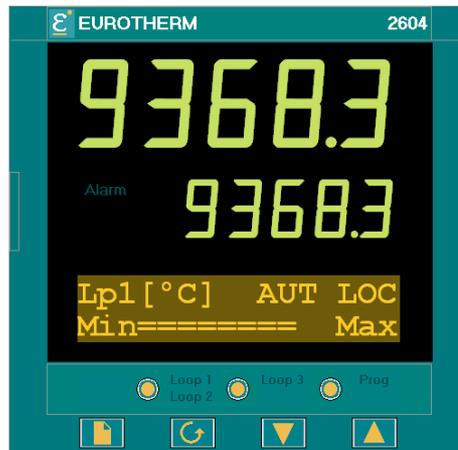
This chapter provides an overview of the controller including the principle of the key handling and parameter navigation diagram.

Chapter 2 describes the principle of function blocks.

Chapter 3 explains how to wire function blocks using software wiring.

The remaining chapters provide the parameter tables with explanations of their meanings. These chapters follow the order in which the features appear in the pull out navigation at the end of this chapter.

1.2. WHAT IS 2604



The 2604 is a modular, fully configurable, high accuracy, high stability temperature and process controller which is available in a single, dual or three loop format.

It is supplied in accordance with an ordering code which can be found printed on a label on the side of the instrument case. A description of the order code is given in Appendix A of this guide and should be checked with that shown on the label.

It has a dual 7-segment display of process value and setpoint with a LCD panel for display of information and user defined messages.

Figure 1-1: General View of 2604 Controller Display

Features include:

- Advanced ramp/dwell programmer with storage of up to 50 programs.
- Application specific controllers such as Carbon Potential, Temperature/Humidity and Melt Pressure
- A wide variety of inputs which can be configured, including thermocouples, Pt100 resistance thermometers and high level process inputs.
- Each loop can be defined to be PID, On/Off or motorised valve position and can control using a variety of strategies including single, cascade, override and ratio control.
- PID control outputs can be relay, logic, triac or dc with motorised valve position outputs being relay triac or logic.
- Auto tuning and PID gain scheduling are available to simplify commissioning and optimise the process

Configuration of the controller is explained in this manual. Configuration is achieved either via the front panel operator interface or by using 'iTools' - a configuration package which runs under the Windows 95, 98, 2000, ME, XP or NT (service pack 4 or later).

1.3. GENERAL VIEW OF 2604 CONTROLLER

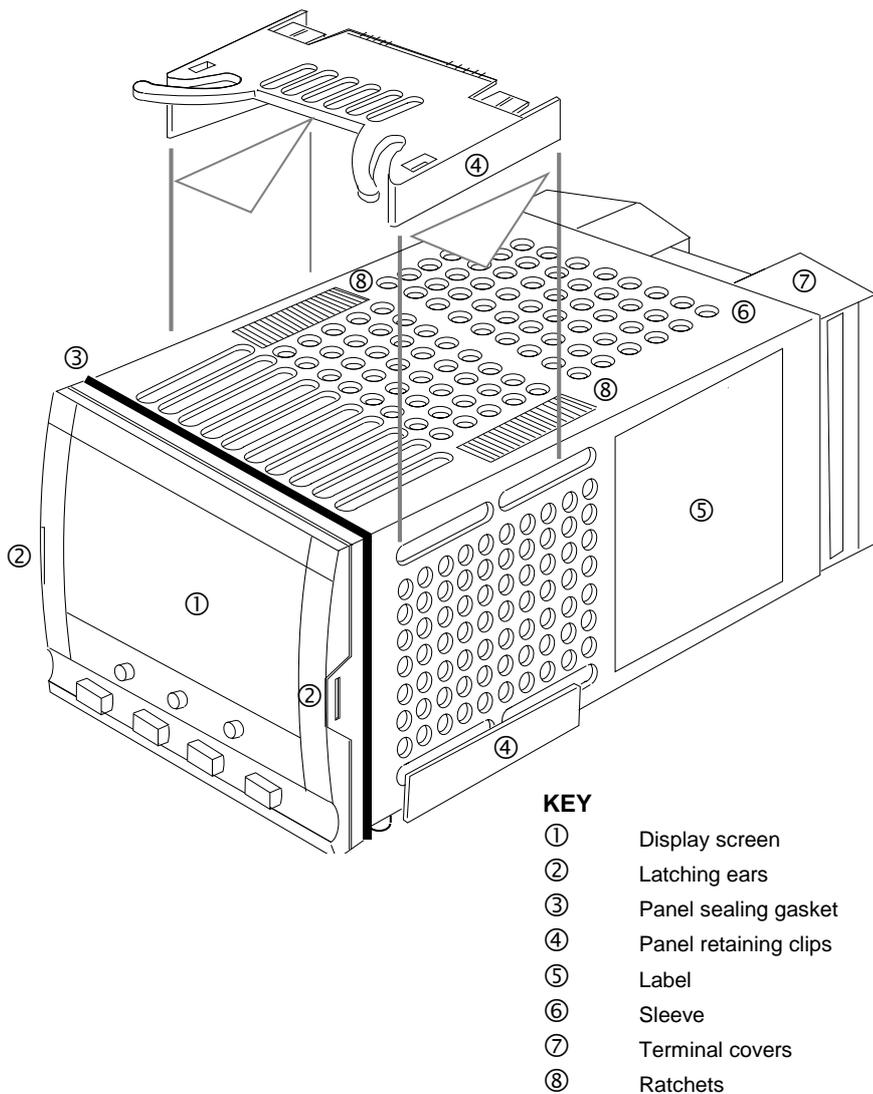


Figure 1-2: General View of 2604 Controller

1.4. OPERATOR INTERFACE - OVERVIEW

The front panel of the 2604 consists of two 5 digit numeric readouts, one alpha numeric readout, eight LED status indicators and seven operator push-buttons. See below

- The upper numeric readout normally indicates the current process value from the plant.
- The centre readout is slightly smaller than the upper display and normally shows the setpoint.
- The lower readout is an alpha numeric LCD display which provides access to instrument operating and configuration parameters.
- The eight LED status indicators are illuminated to show controller operating mode such as a loop view, auto/manual or programmer run/hold.
- The seven operator buttons allow adjustments to be made to the controller.

1.4.1. Readouts and Indicators

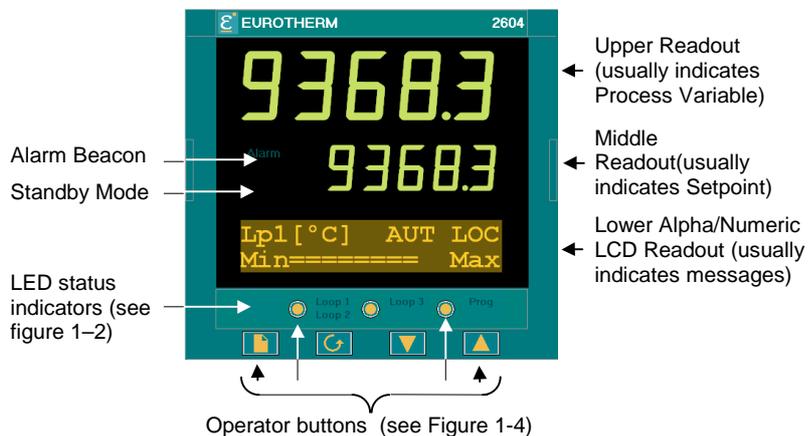


Figure 1-3: Operator Interface

[Units] If units have been selected in configuration level they will be displayed in the lower readout.

The choices are:-

°C/°F/°K

V, mV, A, mA

PH

mmHg, psi, bar, mbar, mmWg, inWg, inWW, PSIG

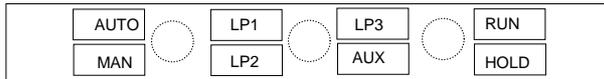
Ohms

%, %RH, %O₂, %CO₂, %CP,

PPM

Custom units are also possible

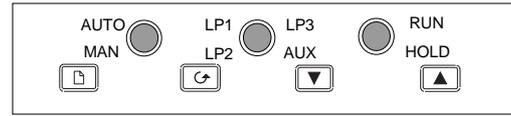
1.4.2. LED Status Indicators



Indicator	Function
AUTO	The selected loop is in automatic (closed loop) control
MAN	The selected loop is in manual (open loop) control
LP1	Indicates which control loop is selected
LP2	
LP3	
AUX	Indicates that the selected loop has a second control function. For example, if a loop is configured as cascade or override then a second press of the loop button will cause the AUX indicator to illuminate together with the loop indicator. If the loop is configured as Ratio this display is also used to show the ratio parameters even though ratio only uses one control loop.
RUN	Indicates a program is activated
HOLD	Indicates a program is held at its current levels
ALARM BEACON	This is a red LED which will flash when any new alarm occurs. It will be accompanied by a message displayed on the lower readout. The beacon will be permanently lit when an alarm is acknowledged but is still present.
STANDBY BEACON	This is a green LED which will be lit when the controller is in Standby mode. When the controller is in standby mode all interfaces to the plant are switched to a rest condition. For example, all control outputs = 0. When this beacon is lit the controller is no longer controlling the process. This beacon will be lit when:- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The controller is in configuration mode • Standby mode has been selected through the user interface or via an external digital input • During the first few seconds after start up

Figure 1-4: Status Indicators

1.4.3. Operator Buttons



	Auto/Manual button	<p>The Auto/Manual button only operates from the loop view. When pressed, this toggles between automatic and manual mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the controller is in automatic mode the AUTO light will be lit. • If the controller is in manual mode, the MAN light will be lit.
	Loop select button	<p>Repeat pressing to select:- Loop1 ▶ Loop2 ▶ Loop3 ▶ Back to Loop1</p> <p>If a loop is cascade, ratio or override the AUX indicator will illuminate as well as the loop indicator.</p> <p>When this loop overview is selected pressing  will scroll through up to 10 parameters. These parameters can be chosen by the user in configuration level.</p>
	Run/Hold button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press once to start a program (RUN light on.) • Press again to hold a program (HOLD light on) • Press again to cancel hold and continue running (HOLD light off and RUN light ON) • Press and hold in for two seconds to reset a program (RUN and HOLD lights off) <p>The RUN light will flash at the end of a program. The HOLD light will flash during holdback.</p>
The above three buttons (Function Keys 1 to 3) can be disabled, see Section 5.2.3.		
	Page button	Press to select a new list of parameters.
	Scroll button	Press to select a new parameter in a list.
	Down button	Press to decrease a parameter value.
	Up button	Press to increase a parameter value.

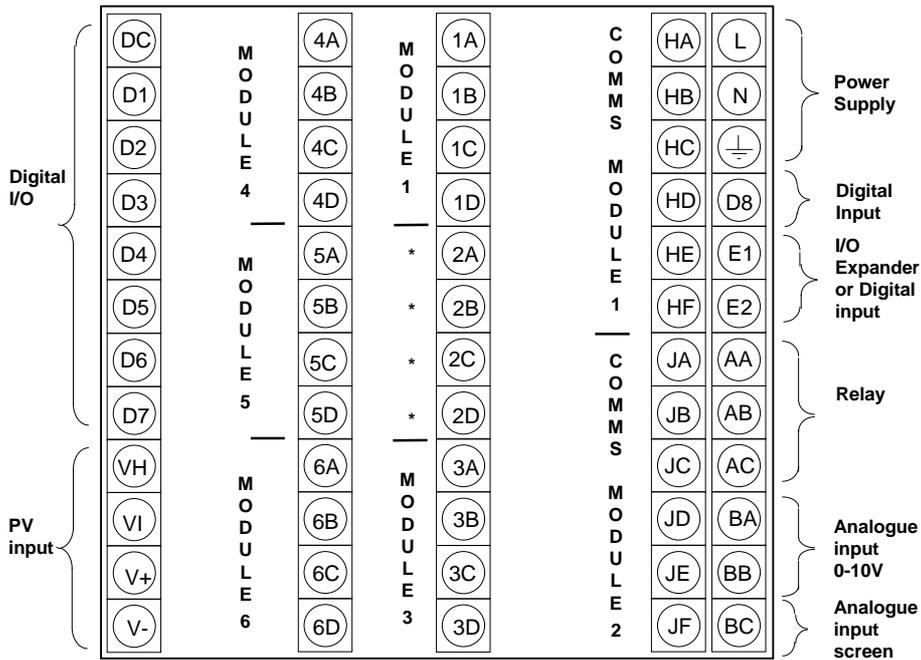
Figure 1-5: Operator Buttons

1.5. INSTALLATION - OVERVIEW

The 2604 controller must be mounted and wired in accordance with the instructions given in Appendix E or Chapter 2 of the Installation and Operation Handbook, Part No. HA026491

The controller is intended to be mounted through a cut out in the front panel of an electrical control cabinet. It is retained in position using the panel mounting clips supplied.

All wires are connected to terminals at the rear of the instrument. Each block of six terminals is protected by a hinged cover which clicks into closed position.



The functionality of the two outer rows of terminals is common to all instrument variants, as follows:-

PV input	VH, VI, V+, V-
Analogue input	BA, BB
I/O expander	E1, E2
Fixed changeover relay	AA, AB, AC
Digital I/O channels	D1 to D8 and Com
Power supply	L, N, Earth

*** Terminals 2A, 2B, 2C, 2D must not be wired to.**

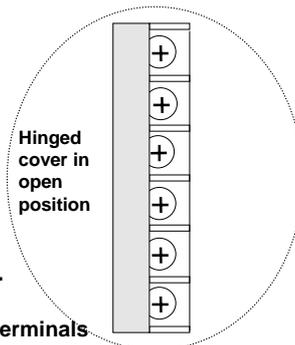


Figure 1-6: View of the Rear Terminals

1.6. I/O MODULES

The 2604 controller has the facility to fit optional plug in modules. The connections for these modules are made to the inner three connector blocks as shown in Figure 1-6

The modules are:

- Communications modules.
- I/O modules

A list of available modules is given in Table 21-1

These modules are fitted simply by sliding them into the relevant position as shown below.

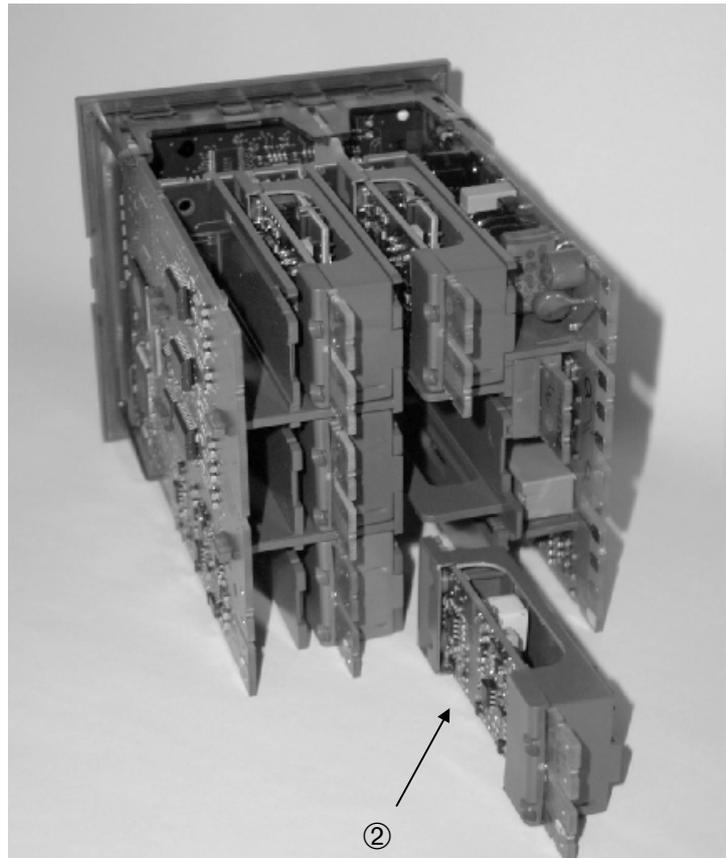


Figure 1-7: View of the Plug-in Modules

1.6.1. To Add or Change Modules

It is recommended that the controller is switched off before it is removed from its sleeve.

1. Remove the controller from its sleeve by pushing both latching ears ① (Figure 1-8) outwards and easing the controller forwards from its sleeve. It should not be necessary to use any tools for this.

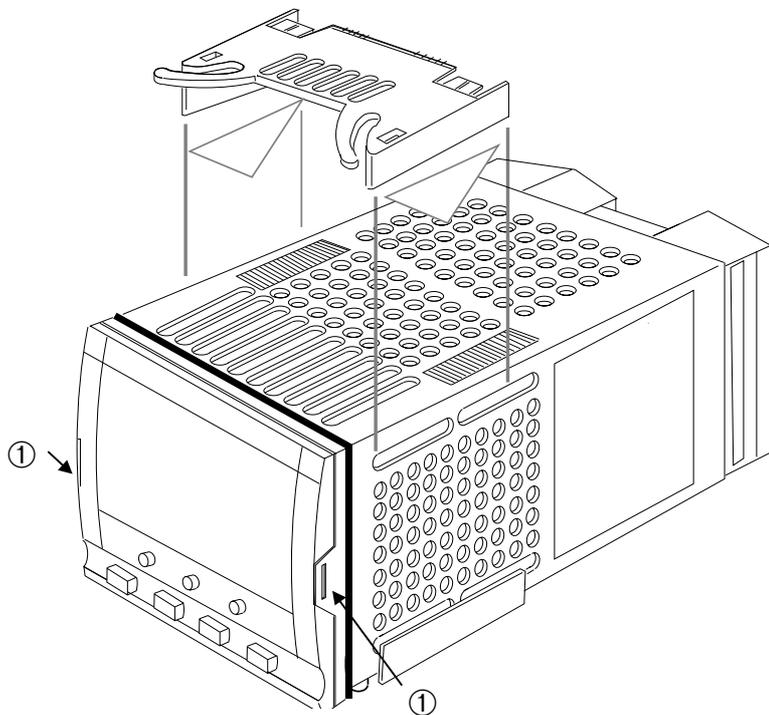


Figure 1-8: View of the Controller in its Sleeve

2. To remove a module it may be gripped by the connector at the back of the module and pulled out from its location. It should not be necessary to use any tools for this.
3. To fit a new module gently insert it into the required location ensuring that the raised guide rail on the plastic cover of the module slides into the slot in the retaining housing
4. Slide the controller back into its sleeve and turn power back on.
5. After a brief initialisation period, the message **!Module Changed** will appear in the lower LCD.
6. Press  and  together, as instructed on the lower display, to acknowledge.
7. If the message **Bad Ident** is displayed this indicates that the wrong type of module has been installed, for example an unisolated logic output module from 2400 series.

1.7. PARAMETERS AND HOW TO ACCESS THEM

Parameters are settings, within the controller, which determine how the controller will operate. They are accessed using the lower alpha-numeric display and can be changed by the user to suit the process. Selected parameters may be protected under different security access levels.

Examples of parameters are:-

Values - such as setpoints, alarm trip levels, high and low limits, etc.,

or

States - such as auto/manual, on/off, etc. These are often referred to as enumerated values.

1.7.1. Pages

The parameters are organised into different pages. A page shows information such as page headers, parameter names and parameter values.

Parameters are grouped in accordance with the function they perform. Each group is given a '**Page Header**' which is a generic description of the parameter group. Examples are 'The Alarm Page', 'The Programmer Page', etc,. A complete list of pages are shown in the navigation diagram, Section 1.14.

The 2604 contains a set of default pages for most applications. It is possible to configure different start up pages as the Home page, but the principle of navigation is the same as the default pages.

Note:-

A page only appears on the controller if the function has been ordered and has been enabled in Configuration mode. For example, if a programmer is not configured the RUN page and the EDIT PROGRAM pages will not be displayed.

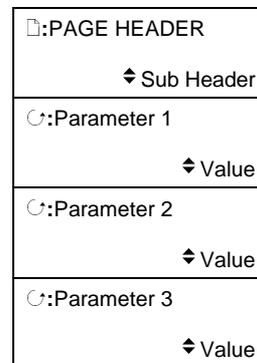
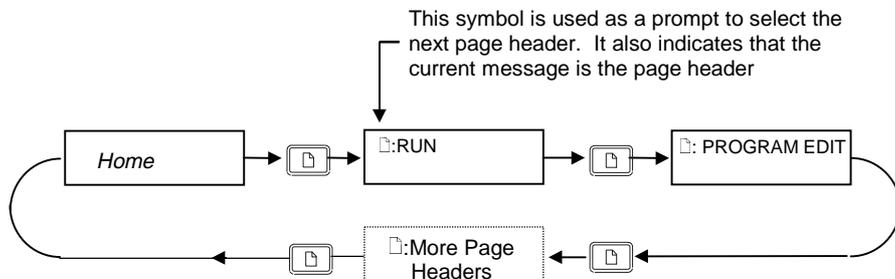


Figure 1-9: Page Concept

1.7.2. To Step Through Page Headers

Press  - (The Page Button).

At each press the first line of the alpha-numeric display will change to the name of the **page header**. This is a continuous list which will eventually return to the starting point, as shown below. If the page button, , is held down continuously the pages auto advance.



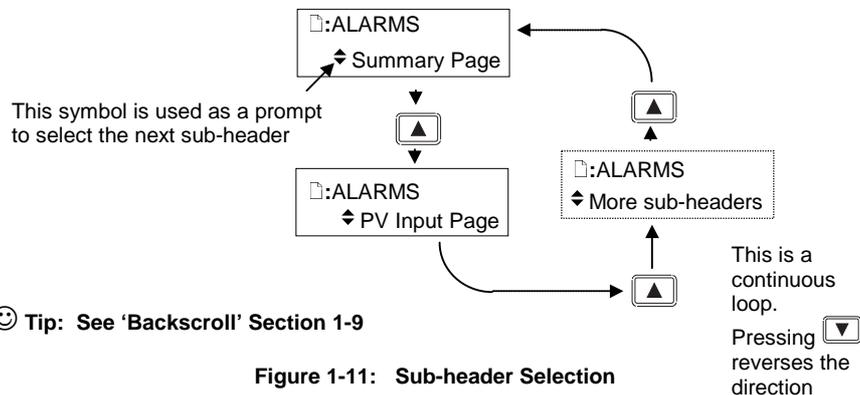
☺ Tip: See 'Backpage' Section 1-8

Figure 1-10: Stepping Through Page Headers

1.7.3. Sub-headers

The page header shown in Figure 1-11 contains sub-headers.. The sub-header appears in the lower right hand corner of the alpha-numeric display.

The sub-header can be changed using the  or  buttons, as prompted by the  symbol. This is a continuous list which will return to the first sub-header.



☺ Tip: See 'Backscroll' Section 1-9

Figure 1-11: Sub-header Selection

1.7.4. To Step Through Parameters

When the page header (and sub-header) which contains the required parameter has been selected :-

Press  - (The Scroll Button)

This will access the first parameter on the page. At each subsequent press the next parameter in the list is displayed. This is a continuous list which will eventually return to the list header. If the scroll button, , is held down the parameters auto advance.

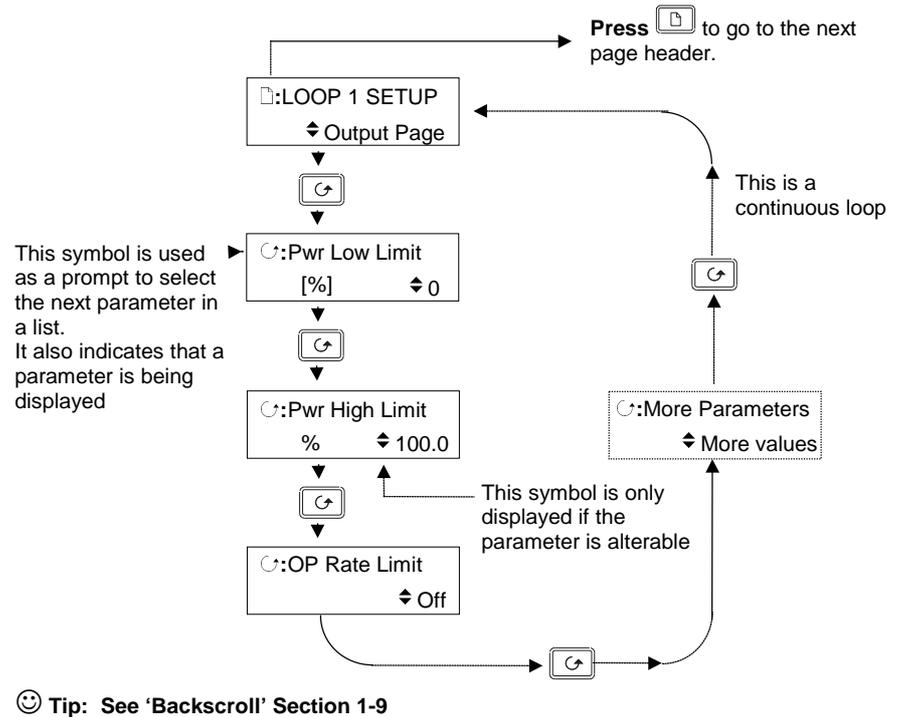


Figure 1-12: Parameter Selection

Tip:- To return to the Page Header at any time press .

1.7.5. To Change Parameter Values

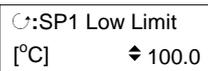
When the required parameter has been selected its value is shown in the lower part of the alpha-numeric readout.

To change a parameter value press  or  - (The Raise or Lower Buttons)

If an attempt is made to change a read only parameter, the parameter value will be replaced by ----- as long as the  or  buttons are held. For many parameters an upper and lower limit can be set. When changing a parameter value its new value must be within these limits.

Parameter values can be displayed in different ways depending upon the parameter type. Figure 1-13 below shows the different types of parameter and how their values are changed.

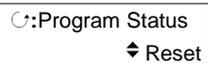
1. Numerical Values



Press  to increase the value
 Press  to decrease the value
 (↔ shown only if parameter alterable)

Note:
Units are displayed automatically if applicable

2. Enumerated Values



Press  to show next state
 Press  to show previous state

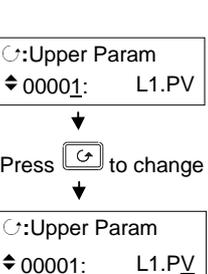
3. Digital Values (e.g. programmer event outputs)



Press  to step along the values. The selected value flashes.
 Press  or  to turn the value on or off

☺ Tip: See 'Backscroll' Section 1.8 to step back

4. Parameter Addresses



Press  or  to change the **Parameter address**. A cursor flashes under the parameter address indicating that it can be changed.
 The parameter name for that address (if it exists) is shown in the lower right of the readout.

Press  to change from parameter address to parameter name

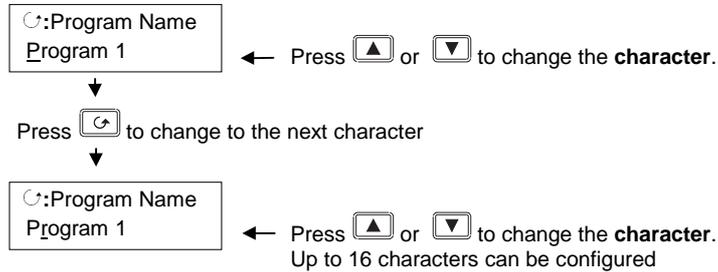
Press  or  to change the **parameter name**. A cursor flashes under the parameter name indicating that it can be changed.

Note:- The parameter addresses are only available in configuration level, but are included here to illustrate the principle of operation.

Figure 1-13: Changing a Parameter Value

5. Text (User definable)

The first character alternates between the character and _ indicating that it can be changed



☺ **Tip:** See 'Backscroll' Section 1.8 to if you need to re-enter a previously entered character.

6. Time



Figure 1-14: Changing a Parameter Value (continued)

1.7.6. Confirmation Mechanism

When the  or  key is released, the display will blink after a period of 1.5 seconds, indicating that the new parameter value has been accepted. If any other key is pressed during the 1.5 second period the parameter value is accepted immediately.

There are exceptions for specific parameters. Examples of these are:-

Output Power adjustment when in Manual mode. The value is written continuously as the value is changed.

Alarm Acknowledge. If the Alarm Acknowledge is changed from 'No' to 'Acknowledge' a confirmation message appears. Press  key to confirm the change. If no key is pressed for 10 seconds the value is restored to its previous value.

1.8. BACKPAGE

When stepping through list headers, a backpage short cut is provided by holding down  and pressing . Each press of  will step back one position of the list header in a continuous loop.

This function is provided as a short cut and is not necessary to navigate through the pages.

1.9. BACKSCROLL

When stepping through parameters in a list, a backscroll short cut is provided by holding down  and pressing . Each press of  will step back to the previous parameter, until the page header is reached.

This function is provided as a short cut and is not necessary to navigate through the parameters.

1.10. JUMP TO HOME DISPLAY

Press  and  together to return the display to the configured HOME screen.

1.11. INVALID KEY ACTIONS

At any time some state transitions may be invalid, due, for example, to contention with digital inputs or to the current operating state of the instrument.

Examples are:-

1. Digital inputs have priority over the operator buttons.
2. If a parameter value cannot be changed the  prompt is not shown
3. If the  or  button is pressed for a read only parameter a number of dashes, ----, is displayed.

1.12. PARAMETER TABLES

Subsequent chapters in this manual refer to parameter tables. These tables provide the full list of parameters available in 'Config' level in a particular page. The table below is an example.

- Column 1 gives the name of the parameter as it appears on the display.
 Column 2 is a description and possible usage of the parameter
 Column 3 is the range of values which can be set. . This may be a numerical value, eg -n to +n, or the condition (enumeration) of a parameter, eg the parameter 'Program Status' has enumerations 'Run', 'Hold', 'Reset'.
 Column 4 is the default value (if applicable) of the parameter set during manufacture
 Column 5 is the access level required to change the parameter value.
 L1 means that the value is only shown in Level 1
 L2 means that the value is only shown in Level 1 and Level 2
 L3 means that the value is always available in the instrument operating mode
 Conf means Configuration Level
 R/O is Read Only
 Access Levels are described in Chapter 4.

Table Number:		Description of the page			Page Header
1	2	3	4	5	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Program Number	The number of the selected program			L3	
Segment Number	The currently running segment number			L3	
PSP1 Type	Program Setpoint 1 type			L3	
PSP1 Working SP	Program Setpoint 1 working setpoint			L3	
PSP1 Target	Program Setpoint 1 target setpoint			L3	
PSP1 Dwell Time	Program Setpoint 1 dwell time			L3	
This is a continuous loop which returns to the list header					

Notes:-

- A parameter only appears if it is relevant to the configuration of the controller. For example, a programmer configured as Time to Target will not display the Rate parameter.**
- Throughout this handbook parameter names shown in *italics* are customisable by the user when in configuration access level. The name of the parameter may vary, therefore, from instrument to instrument.**

1.13. PARAMETER AVAILABILITY AND ALTERABILITY

A parameter which appears on a page is described as available. Parameters are not available if they are not appropriate for a particular configuration or instrument status. For example, relative cool gain does not appear in a heat only controller, and integral time does not appear in an On/Off controller.

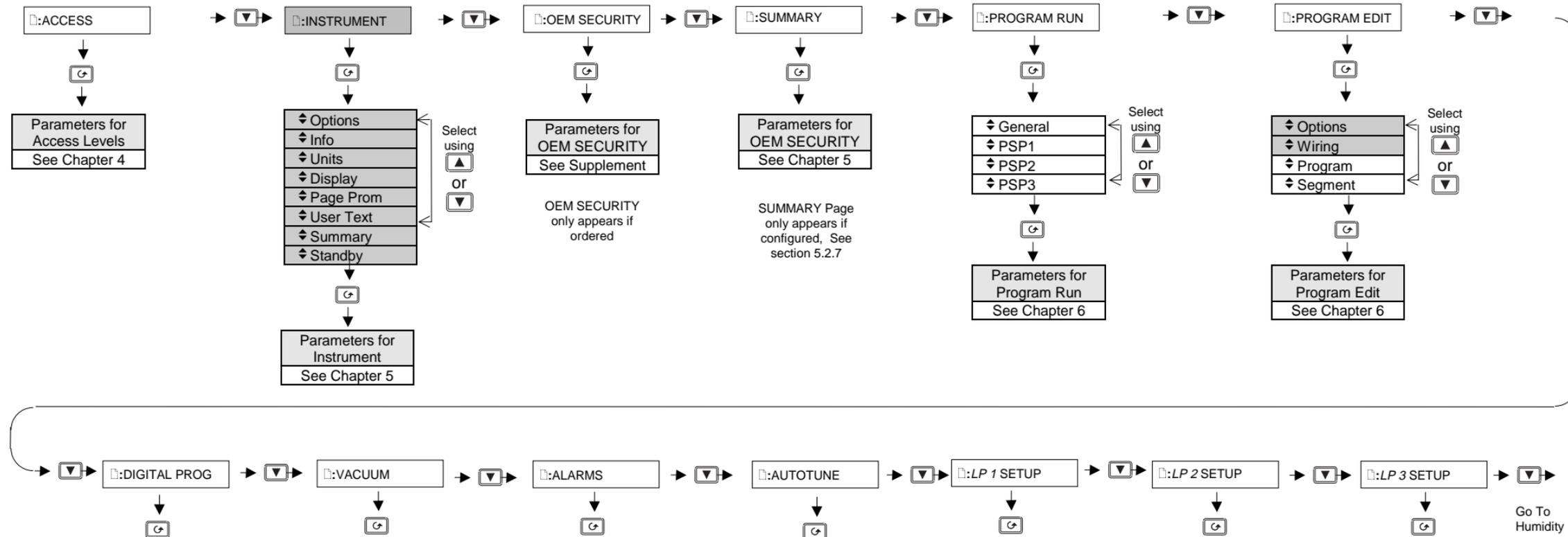
A parameter described as alterable is, generally, preceded by the \blacklozenge symbol which indicates that its value can be changed. A parameter which is not alterable may be viewed (subject to availability), but may be changed by an instrument algorithm.

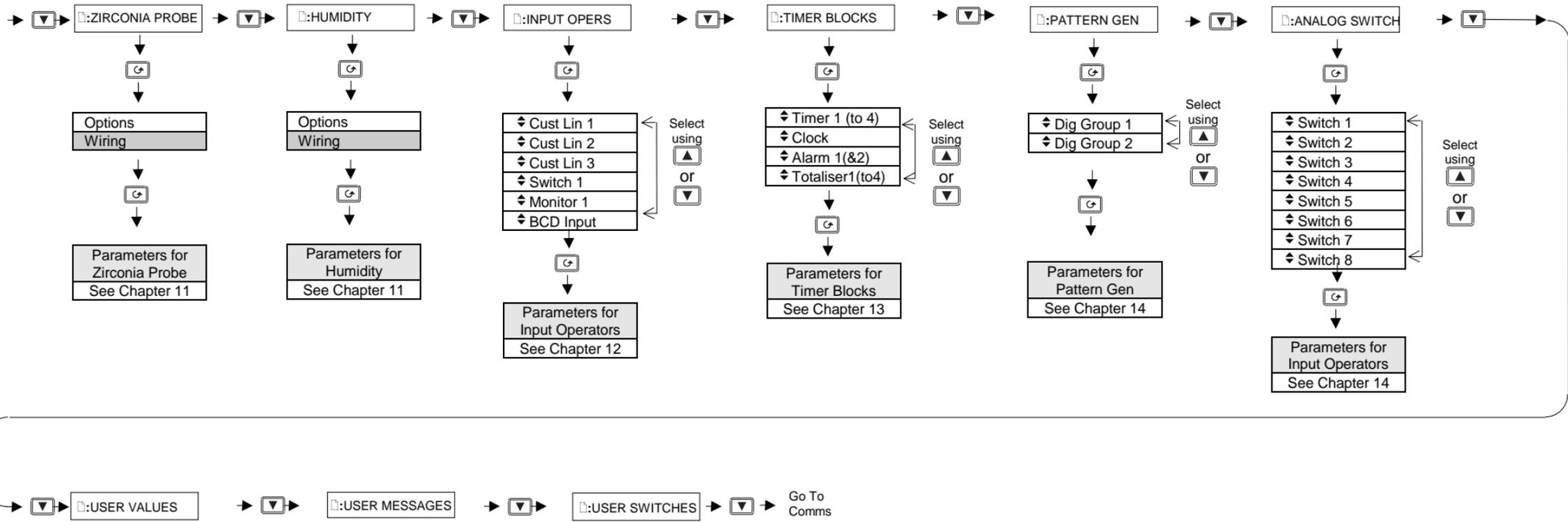
A parameter is alterable only if the following conditions are satisfied:-

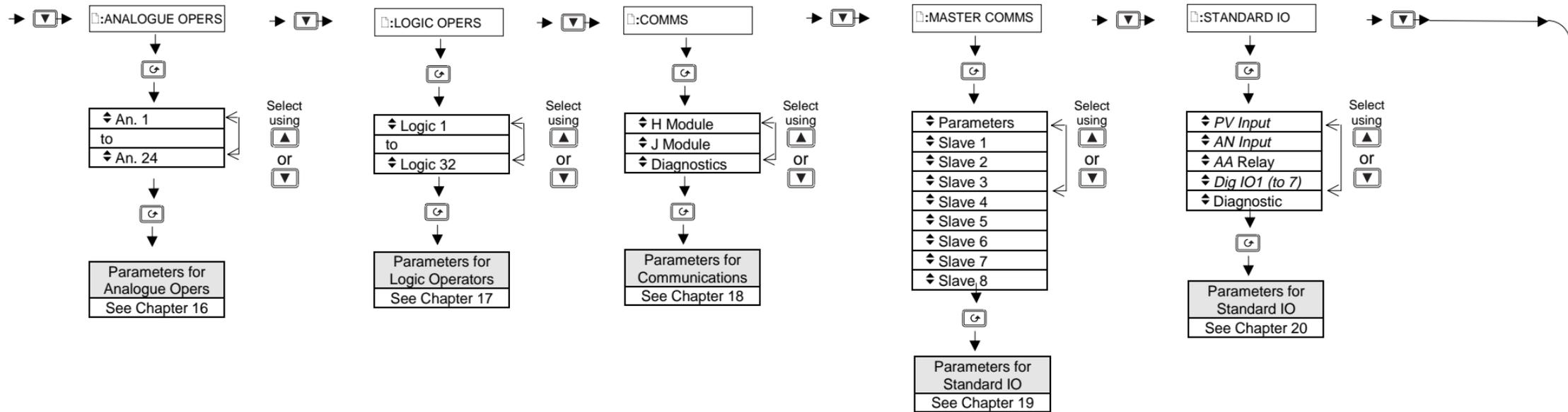
- The parameter is READ/WRITE
- The parameter does not conflict with the status of the instrument. For example, the proportional band will not be alterable if autotune is active
- The instrument keys must be enabled. Keys can be disabled by a logic input, turned off in configuration level or via digital communications. A logic input can be configured to disable front panel keys; this will not remove remote control of the user interface via digital communications.

The Navigation Diagram which follows shows all pages which are available at Config Level.

1.14 NAVIGATION DIAGRAM







2.	CHAPTER 2 FUNCTION BLOCKS.....	2
2.1.	WHAT IS A FUNCTION BLOCK?	2
2.1.1.	Inputs.....	2
2.1.2.	Outputs.....	3
2.1.3.	Settings.....	3

2. Chapter 2 Function Blocks

2.1. WHAT IS A FUNCTION BLOCK?

A function block is a software device which performs a control strategy. Examples are PID Controller, Setpoint Programmer, Cascade Controller, Timer, etc. A function block may be represented as a 'box' which takes in data at one side (as 'Inputs'), manipulates the data internally (using parameter 'Settings') and 'outputs' data at the other side to interface with analogue or digital IO and other function blocks. Figure 2-1 shows a representation of a PID function block as used in the 2604 controller.

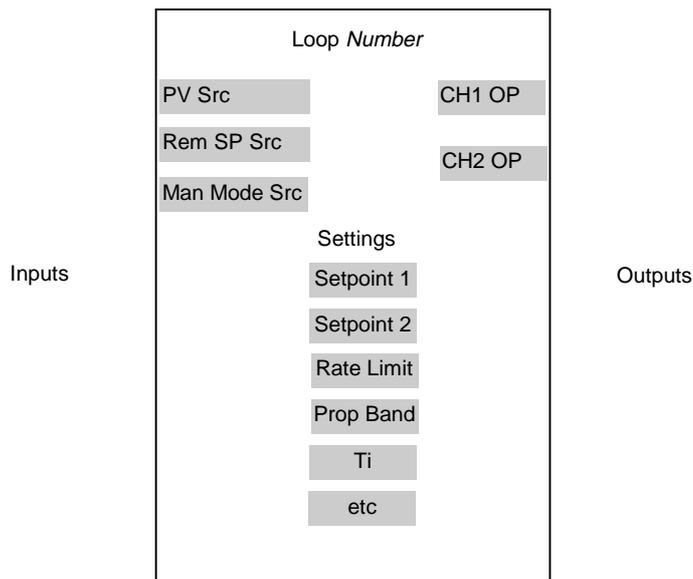


Figure 2-1: A Simple PID Function Block

2.1.1. Inputs

Inputs are provided to the function block from field sensors or from other function blocks within the controller. Each field input is served by an analogue or digital input block which processes the signal (depending upon the type of input) and makes it available to the function block in a useable form.

Each input 'wire' (see Chapter 3) is labelled as 'Src' since it defines the source of the signal by holding its Modbus address.

2.1.2. Outputs

In a similar way the function block makes available signals to other blocks, plant actuators and other devices. Each output interfaces with analogue or digital output drivers which provide signals to the plant such as relay, 4-20mA, 0-10V outputs, etc

2.1.3. Settings

The purpose of a particular function block is defined by its internal parameters. Some of these parameters are available to the user so that they can be adjusted to suit the characteristics of the plant.

Examples of parameters available to the user are shown in Figure 2-1 as 'Settings'. In this manual these parameters are shown in tables an example of which is shown in Section 1.12.

3. CHAPTER 3 SOFT WIRING	2
3.1. WHAT IS SOFT WIRING?	2
3.1.1. An Example of Soft Wiring.....	3
3.1.2. Configuration of the Simple PID Loop	4

3. Chapter 3 Soft Wiring

3.1. WHAT IS SOFT WIRING?

Soft Wiring (sometimes known as User Wiring) refers to the connections which are made in software between function blocks. This chapter describes the principles of soft wiring through the operator interface of the instrument. iTools configuration software, available from your supplier, enables you to configure this feature using a PC.

In general every function block has at least one input and one output. Input parameters are used to specify where a function block reads its incoming data (the 'Input Source'). The input source is usually soft wired to the output from a preceding function block. Output parameters are usually soft wired to the input source of subsequent function blocks.

It is possible to wire from any parameter using its Modbus address. In practice, however, it is unlikely that you will wish to wire from many of the available parameters. A list of commonly wireable parameters has, therefore, been produced and these are displayed in the controller with both their Modbus address and a mnemonic of the parameter name. An example is shown in the Section 3.1.2.1. i.e. 05108:PVIn.Val. The full list if these commonly wired parameters is given in Appendix D.

The function blocks used in this manual are drawn as follows:

1. Input parameters defined by 'Src' on the left of the function block diagram
2. Typically wired output parameters on the right hand side
3. Other parameters, which are not normally wired to, are shown as settings

A parameter which is not wired to can be adjusted through the front panel of the controller provided it is not Read Only (R/O) and the correct access level is selected.

All parameters shown in the function block diagrams are also shown in the parameter tables, in the relevant chapters, in the order in which they appear on the instrument display.

Figure 3-1 shows an example of how a PID function block (Loop 1) might be wired to other function blocks to produce a simple single loop controller. The 'PV Src' input is soft wired to the output value from the PV Input block on terminals V- to VH.

The channel 1 (heat) output from the PID block is soft wired to the input source ('Wire Src') of Module 1A, fitted as an output module.

Also in this example, a digital input to the 'Man Mode Src', allows the loop to be placed into manual depending upon the state of the digital input. The digital input is DIO1 connected to terminal D1 on the controller.

For further information on the configuration of the fixed IO and IO modules see Chapters 17 and 18 respectively.

Further examples of function block wiring are given in specific chapters throughout this manual.

3.1.1. An Example of Soft Wiring

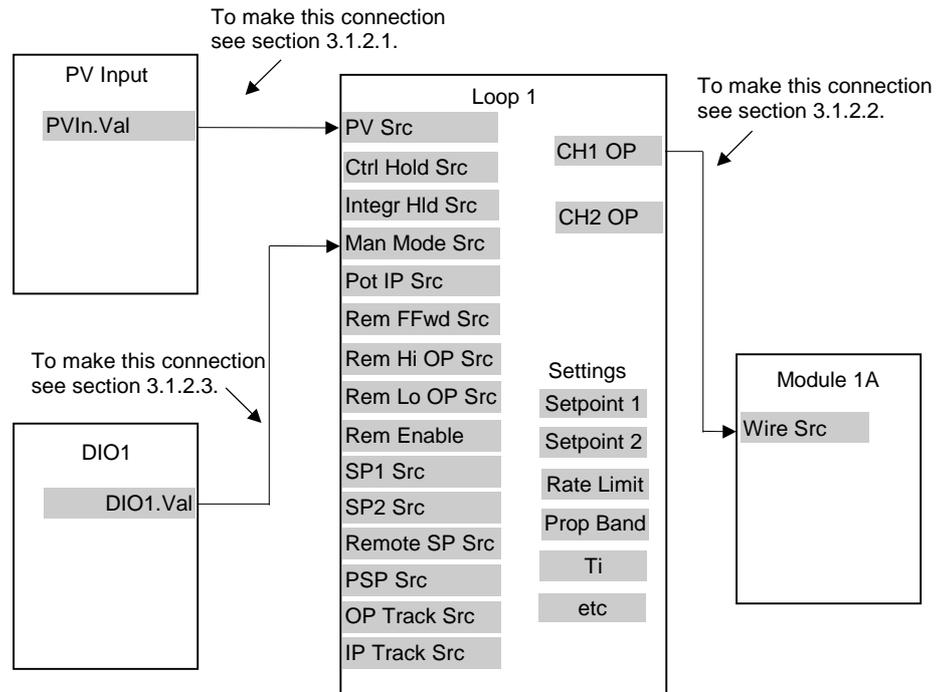


Figure 3-1: A Simple Wiring Example of a PID Function Block

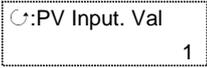
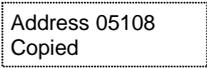
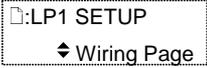
3.1.2. Configuration of the Simple PID Loop

The following description explains how the wiring connections are made to produce the simple PID controller shown in Figure 3-1.

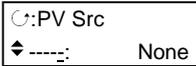
3.1.2.1. To connect the PV input to the Loop

The example is to connect the output from the 'PV Input' to the 'PV Source' of Loop 1. Firstly, enter Configuration mode. This is further explained in Chapter 4.

Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p>From any display press  as many times as necessary to select the module page header, i.e. STANDARD IO</p> <p>Press  or  to select the required Module Page, i.e. PV Input Page</p>	<p>Select the wire source</p> 	
<p>Press  as many times as necessary to select PV Input. Val</p>		<p>This selects the parameter to be wired from. Val denotes the output value.</p>
<p>Press  to copy this parameter.</p> <p>This button becomes a 'copy' button in this mode.</p>		<p>This display confirms that the parameter with Modbus address 05108 (ie PV Input.Val) has been copied.</p> <p>This display appears for as long as the A/M button is depressed.</p>
<p>Press  as many times as necessary to select the loop set up page header i.e. LP1 SETUP</p> <p>Press  or  to select the Wiring Page</p>	<p>Select the wire destination</p> 	
Continued on next page		

Continued from previous page

Press  to select **PV Src**


PV Src of LP1 is the parameter to be wired to.

The flashing last character is the modbus address of the parameter to be wired from.

If the address is known it can be entered directly here.

At this point you have three choices:

1. If the modbus address is known, enter it here by pressing the  or  button
2. If the modbus address is not known press . The display transfers to the name of the parameter. Press  or  to scroll through a list of parameter names. See Appendix D for the list of these parameters.
3. Paste the parameter (already copied) as follows

Paste the wire source

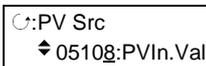
Press the Loop Select button, , to paste the copied parameter ie 05108 to the PV Src of LPI.

This button becomes a 'paste' button in this mode



The Loop Select button becomes a 'paste' button in this mode

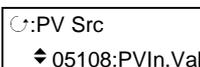
Press  to confirm
Press  to cancel as instructed



The parameter with Modbus address 05108 is pasted to PV Src.

The last character flashes to indicate that you can change the modbus address if required, using the  or  button

Press .



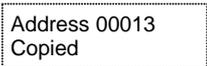
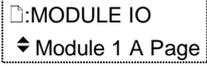
The display transfers to the name of the parameter.

The last character flashes to indicate that you can change the parameter by name if required, using the  or  button

The connection is now made

3.1.2.2. To connect the Loop to the Output Module

The example is Loop 1 Channel 1 output to Module 1A input.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p>From any display press  as many times as necessary to select the Loop 1 Set Up page header, i.e. :LP1 SETUP</p> <p>Press  or  to select the Output Page</p>	<p>Select the wire source</p> 	
<p>Press  as many times as necessary to select CH1 OP</p>		<p>This selects the parameter to be wired from.</p>
<p>Press  to copy this parameter.</p> <p>This button becomes a 'copy' button in this mode.</p>	<p>Copy the wire source</p> 	<p>This display confirms that the parameter with Modbus address 00013 (ie CH1 OP) has been copied.</p> <p>This display appears for as long as the A/M button is depressed</p>
<p>Press  as many times as necessary to select the Module IO page header i.e. :Module IO</p> <p>Press  or  to select the Module 1 A Page</p>	<p>Select the wire destination</p> 	

Continued on next page

Continued from previous page

Press  to select **Wire Src**


↻:Wire Src
◆-----: None

This is the parameter to be wired to.

The flashing last character is the modbus address of the parameter to be wired from.

At this point you have three choices:

1. If the modbus address is known, enter it here by pressing the  or  button
2. If the modbus address is not known press . The display transfers to the name of the parameter. Press  or  to scroll through a list of parameter names
3. Paste the parameter (already copied) as follows

Press the Loop Select button,



to paste the copied parameter ie 00013 to the Wire Src of Module 1A.

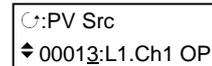
This button becomes a 'paste' button in this mode

Paste the wire source


Paste 00013?
☐→Cancel ↻→OK

The Loop Select button becomes a 'paste' button in this mode

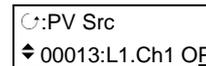
Press  to confirm
Press  to cancel as instructed



↻:PV Src
◆00013:L1.Ch1 OP

The parameter with Modbus address 00013 is pasted to Wire Src of module 1A.

The last character flashes to indicate that you can change the modbus address if required, using the  or  button

Press .


↻:PV Src
◆00013:L1.Ch1 OP

The display transfers to the name of the parameter.

The last character flashes to indicate that you can change the parameter by name if required, using the  or  button

The connection is now made

☺ **Tip:**

You can page back by holding down the  button and pressing  button.

You can scroll back by holding down the  button and pressing  button.

4.	CHAPTER 4 ACCESS LEVELS	2
4.1.	THE DIFFERENT ACCESS LEVELS.....	2
4.2.	PASSCODES	2
4.3.	TO ENTER CONFIGURATION LEVEL.....	3
4.4.	TO ENTER NEW PASSCODES.....	4
4.5.	TO EXIT CONFIGURATION LEVEL.....	4

4. Chapter 4 Access Levels

4.1. THE DIFFERENT ACCESS LEVELS

There are five access levels:

Access Level	What you can do	Password Protection
Level 1	This is sometimes referred to as Operator Level since it allows operators to view and adjust parameters within limits set in higher levels. Any page available in levels 2 or 3 may be configured to appear in level 1. This is done from the configuration level using the page promote feature.	No
Level 2	This is sometimes referred to as Supervisor level since all the parameters relevant to a particular configuration are visible. All alterable parameters can be adjusted.	Yes
Level 3	These are parameters which are generally required when commissioning the controller. Any page at this level can also be configured to appear at level 2.	Yes
Config	This level allows access to configure the fundamental characteristics of the controller and it is this level which is described in this manual	Yes
View Config	This is a read only level which allows you to view the configuration of the controller. It is not possible to change parameter values in this level. It is not possible to read passcodes in this level.	Yes

4.2. PASSCODES

On switch on the controller defaults to Level 1 which is not protected by a passcode. A limited set of parameters can be changed in this level. The parameter tables in each chapter list those parameters which can be changed.

Level 2, level 3 and Configuration level are protected by passcodes. The default passcodes set in a new controller are:

Level 2	Passcode '2'
Level 3	Passcode '3'
Config	Passcode '4'
View Config	Passcode 2604 (Fixed)

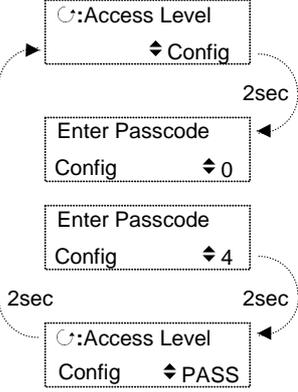
These passcodes with the exception of View Config can be changed in configuration level.

If a passcode of 'None' has been entered for any level (apart from View Config, which is fixed) it will not be necessary to enter a passcode to enter that level.

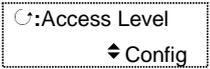
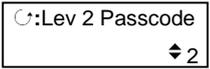
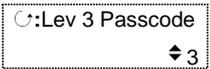
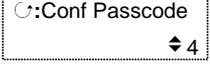
Note:-

In configuration mode the controller enters a standby state in which all outputs are frozen. If the controller is connected to a process it will not control the process when in this mode.

4.3. TO ENTER CONFIGURATION LEVEL

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p>From any display press  as many times as necessary until the ACCESS page header is displayed</p>		
<p>Press  to select : Access Level</p>		
<p>Press  or  to select the required access level. E.g. Config</p> <p>Press  or  to enter the passcode.</p> <p>When the correct passcode is entered the display momentarily changes to  PASS, then back to the start level to confirm correct entry.</p>		<p>The default passcode of a new controller is 4 to enter config level. If a new passcode has been previously entered it will be in the form 0 to 9999.</p> <p>If an incorrect passcode is entered, the display returns to  0.</p> <p>Note: In the special case that the passcode has been configured as 'None', the display will blink momentarily when Config Level is selected and Config Level will be entered immediately</p>

4.4. TO ENTER NEW PASSCODES

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
From the previous display		<p>When the controller is in configuration level the upper display will show Conf</p> <p>The middle display will change depending on the parameter selected</p>
<p>Press  to select Ⓞ:Lev 2 Passcode</p> <p>Press  or  to select a new passcode for level 2</p>		The display will blink to accept the new passcode
<p>Press  to select Ⓞ:Lev 3 Passcode</p> <p>Press  or  to select a new passcode for level 3</p>		The display will blink to accept the new passcode
<p>Press  to select Ⓞ:Conf Passcode</p> <p>Press  or  to select a new passcode for configuration level</p>		The display will blink to accept the new passcode

4.5. TO EXIT CONFIGURATION LEVEL

To exit configuration level it is only necessary to select the level which you wish to go to. When entering a new level from a higher level it is not necessary to enter the passcode for this level. It is only necessary to enter the passcode when going from a lower level of access to a higher level.

5.	CHAPTER 5 INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION.....	2
5.1.	WHAT IS INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION?	2
5.1.1.	To Select the Instrument Configuration Pages	2
5.2.	TO CONFIGURE CONTROLLER OPTIONS	3
5.2.1.	INSTRUMENT Options Page.....	3
5.2.2.	INSTRUMENT Info Page.....	5
5.2.3.	INSTRUMENT Units Page.....	5
5.2.4.	INSTRUMENT Display Page.....	6
5.2.5.	INSTRUMENT Page Promote Page	8
5.2.6.	INSTRUMENT User Text Page	9
5.2.7.	INSTRUMENT Summary Page	10
5.2.8.	INSTRUMENT Standby Page	12
5.3.	USER TEXT EXAMPLES.....	13
5.3.1.	To Re-Name Loop 1 to Zone 1	13
5.3.2.	To Re-Name User Alarm 1 and Provide a Message.....	13
5.3.3.	To Re-Name Module 1 to be called Heat Output	13
5.3.4.	To Show User Text in the Summary Page on an Event.....	14
5.3.5.	To Assign Custom Units to the Power Up Display	15
5.3.6.	To Customise the Power Up Display	15

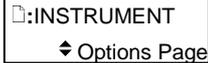
5. Chapter 5 Instrument Configuration

5.1. WHAT IS INSTRUMENT CONFIGURATION?

Instrument configuration allows you to set up features such as:-

1. The number of loops
2. To enable/disable. PID Loops, Programmer, Zirconia, Humidity, Input Operators, Timer Blocks, Analogue and Logic Operators, Transducer Scaling
3. Displayed Units
4. The format of the upper, middle and lower readouts
5. The functions of the keys (buttons)
6. Promotion of selected parameters to different levels
7. User text
8. Format of the Summary Page
9. Standby Behaviour

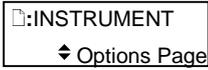
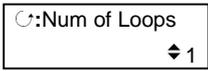
5.1.1. To Select the Instrument Configuration Pages

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the INSTRUMENT page header is displayed 2. Press  or  to select the sub header, e.g. Options Page 		<p>The choice of page headers is:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Options Page Info Page Units Page Display Page Page Prom Page User Text Page Summary Page Standby Page

Note:-

It is only possible to configure chargeable options if they have been ordered. An example of a chargeable option is the number of loops. For other chargeable options see Order Code, Appendix A.

5.2. TO CONFIGURE CONTROLLER OPTIONS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Select INSTRUMENT (Options Page) as shown in the previous section		
2. Press  to select the first parameter in the list for this page. This is 'Num of Loops'		1, 2 or 3 loops can be selected if the option has been supplied
3. Press  or  to select the required number of loops		A full list of parameters available in this page is shown in the following table Parameters are selected using  and their values may be changed using  or 



5.2.1. INSTRUMENT Options Page

Table Number: 5.2.1.		These parameters allow you to enable or disable instrument options which have been ordered		INSTRUMENT (Options Page)	
Parameter Name Press  to select	Parameter Description	Value	Further Information	Access Level	
Num of Loops *	To configure the number of loops	1, 2 or 3	Chapter 9	Config	
Programmer *	To enable or disable the programmer	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 7	Config	
Digital Prog *	To enable or disable the digital programmer	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 8		
Zirconia *	To enable or disable a zirconia block	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 8	Config	
Humidity	To enable or disable the humidity block	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 12	Config	
Input Opers	To enable or disable the Input Operators	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 12	Config	

Timer Blocks	To enable or disable the Timer Blocks	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 14	Config
Patter Gen	To enable or disable the Pattern Generator	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 15	
Analog Switch	To enable or disable analog switches	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 15	
An/Logic Opers *	To enable or disable the Analogue and Logic Operators	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 15	Config
Txdcr Scaling	To enable or disable transducer scaling	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 22	
IO Expander	To enable or disable the IO Expander	Disabled Enabled	Chapter 23	
Master Comms	To enable or disable master communications	Disabled Enabled	Chapter	
Load Sim A Technical Note, Ref TIN123 is available for further information.	To enable or disable load simulation. This allows a simulation of a control loop to be enabled for test and demonstration purposes	Disabled Enabled	Technical note TIN123	

* These are options which can only be activated if they have been ordered, see 'Ordering Code' Appendix A.

Further pages are available under the INSTRUMENT heading as sub-headers. These are selected using  or . They are:-

- Options Page
- Info Page
- Units Page
- Display Page
- Page Prom Page
- User Text Page
- Summary Page
- Standby Page

The following tables list the parameters available in each of these pages. Parameters are selected as above using  and their values can be changed using  or .

5.2.2. INSTRUMENT Info Page

Table Number: 5.2.2.		These parameters, all available in Level 3, give you information about the controller		INSTRUMENT (Info Page)	
Parameter Name Press  to select	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Inst Type	Instrument type	2604	2604	R/O	
Inst Serial No	Instrument serial number	Numeric		R/O	
Inst Version	Software version	e.g. V5.00		R/O	
CBC Version	Software version number of the 'cross board'	e.g. 45 (version no 4.5)		R/O	
Feature Code 1	Codes required to upgrade chargeable features	Numeric		R/O	
Feature Code 2		Numeric		R/O	
Inst 2 nd Lang	Instrument language for user interface			R/O	
Alt Protocol	Alternative digital communications protocol	EI Bisynch Modbus Profibus Devicenet		R/O	
ROM Size	ROM Size	eg 256K Word		R/O	
RAM Size	RAM Size	eg 32K Bytes		R/O	

5.2.3. INSTRUMENT Units Page

Table Number: 5.2.3.		These parameters allow you to configure instrument units		INSTRUMENT (Units Page)	
Parameter Name Press  to select	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Temp Units	Temperature Units	None °C, °F, °K			
Custom Units 1	An index of customised display units selected from 'User Text' See section 5.2.6.		01:Usr01	Conf	
Custom Units 2		01:Usr01	01:Usr01	Conf	
Custom Units 3		to	01:Usr01	Conf	
Custom Units 4		50:Usr50	01:Usr01	Conf	
Custom Units 5			01:Usr01	Conf	
Custom Units 6			01:Usr01	Conf	

5.2.4. INSTRUMENT Display Page

Table Number: 5.2.4.		These parameters allow you to configure the display			INSTRUMENT (Display Page)
Parameter Name Press  to select	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Language	Display language	See note 1		Conf	
Startup Text 1	Text which may be used to override the default message	01:Usr01 to 50:Usr50	Default Text	L3	
Startup Text 2	Up to 50 text strings are available	01:Usr01 to 50:Usr50	Default Text	L3	
Upper Param	To define which parameter will be displayed in the upper readout in operation level	See note 2		Conf	
Middle Param	To define which parameter will be displayed in the middle readout in operation level	See note 2		Conf	
Home Page	Defines which page is displayed in the lower readout after initialisation	See Note 3		L3	
Home Timeout	To set a timeout for the display to return to the Home page.	None 9:99:99.9	0:10:00	Conf	
All Loops Name	All loops summary page name	01:Usr01 to 50:Usr50	Default Text	Conf	
Disable Keys	Yes will disable all front panel buttons when in operation levels	No Yes	No	Conf	
Function Key 1	Function key 1 is Auto/Manual or disabled	Auto/Manual Disabled	Auto/Man	Conf	
Function Key 2	Function key 2 is Loop Select key or disabled	View Loop Disabled	View Loop	Conf	
Function Key 3	Function key 1 is Program Run/Hold or disabled	Run/Hold Disabled	Prog Run/Hold	Conf	

Disable Keys S	Disable all keys source	Keys may be wired to an external source. E.g. a digital input for remote panel operation. The source is defined by a Modbus address. See also Chapter 3	None	Conf
Page Key Src	Page key source		None	Conf
Scroll Key Src	Scroll key source		None	Conf
Lower Key Src	Lower key source		None	Conf
Raise Key Src	Raise key source		None	Conf
Func Key 1 S	Function key 1 source		None	Conf
Func Key 2 S	Function key 2 source		None	Conf
Func Key 3 S	Function key 3 source		None	Conf
Func1 Pressed	State of function key 1	No	No	Conf
Func2 Pressed	State of function key 2	Yes	No	Conf
Func3 Pressed	State of function key 3	Note 4	No	Conf

Note 1:-

The 2604 stores the user interface in 2 languages. English is always available plus French, German or Spanish.

Note 2:-

Any parameter can be displayed in the upper and lower readout and wired to front panel buttons. For convenience the most often used parameters have been provided in the controller together with their Modbus addresses. A list of these parameters together with their Modbus addresses is given in Appendix D.

Note 3:-

The first page to be displayed when the instrument is switched on can be chosen from:-

Summary Page

Run Page

Loop 1, Loop 1 Aux., Loop 2, Loop 2 Aux., Loop 3, or Loop 3 Aux.

Access Page

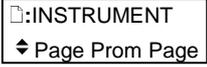
Cycle Each Loop

Note 4:-

These parameters are generally only used over digital communications

5.2.5. INSTRUMENT Page Promote Page

Any page shown un-shaded in the Navigation Diagram, Figure 1-14, can be promoted to Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3 as follows:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the INSTRUMENT page header is displayed 2. Press  or  to select Page Prom Page		
3. Press  to select the pages which you wish to promote to Levels 1, 2 or 3. 4. Press  or  to select Lev1, Lev2, or Lev3.		In this view the Summary page will only be displayed at Level 2 (and Level 3). It will not be shown at Level 1

All pages listed in the Navigation Diagram section 1.14. are available in Level 3, but they can be promoted to any level using the procedure above.

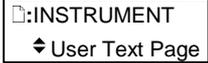
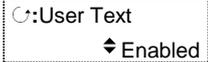
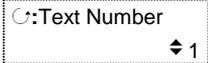
By default the pages shown in the following table are available in Level 1. Any page available in a lower level is automatically available in a higher level.

Parameter Name	Default Level
SUMMARY	Lev1
PROGRAM RUN (General)	Lev1
PROGRAM RUN (PSP1)	Lev1
PROGRAM RUN (PSP2)	Lev1
PROGRAM RUN (PSP3)	Lev1
PROGRAM EDIT (segment)	Lev1
ALARMS (All pages)	Lev1

5.2.6. INSTRUMENT User Text Page

This page allows you to configure up to 50 User Text strings of up to 16 characters. Any string can be used to provide a name for particular parameters. For example Loops can be given names which are more meaningful to the user, such as 'Zone 1', 'Level Controller', etc.

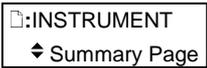
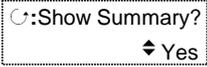
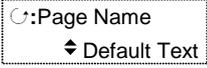
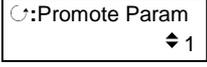
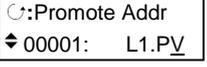
To enter User Text:-

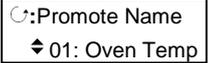
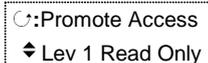
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the INSTRUMENT page header is displayed 2. Press  or  to select User Text Page		
3. Press  to select User Text 4. Press  or  to enable User Text		If Disabled no further pages are available
5. Press  to select Text Number 6. Press  or  to select the Text Number		Up to 50 Text Numbers are available
7. Press  to select Text 8. Press  or  to change the first (flashing) character to the first character of your text.		
9. Press  to select the next character up to 16 characters 10. Press  or  to change the (flashing) character.		Repeat this step for all characters – up to 16

5.2.7. INSTRUMENT Summary Page

This page allows you to configure a page consisting of a list of 10 parameters which are in common use on a particular installation. The first parameter in the list - 'Show Summary' must be enabled so that the Summary list can be shown in operating levels.

To configure Summary pages:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the INSTRUMENT page header is displayed		The level at which the Summary Page is shown is selected by the Page Promote section 5.2.5.
2. Press  or  to select Summary Page		
3. Press  to select Show Summary?		If Yes is selected the Summary Page will be shown in the Main Menu see Navigation Diagram, section 1.14
4. Press  or  to select Yes or No		If 'No' is selected the Summary page will not be shown.
5. Press  to select Page Name		Up to 50 user defined text Names are available.
6. Press  or  to select a name for the page from 'User Text'		The previous section explains how User Text is set up.
7. Press  to select Promote Param		This selects the first parameter which will appear on the summary page. Up to 10 parameters may be listed.
8. Press  or  to select '1' (if necessary)		
9. Press  to Promote Addr		The Modbus address is shown on the left of the lower readout. The mnemonic is shown on the right.
10. Press  or  to select the parameter from its Modbus address		Only the more typical names (listed in Appendix D) are displayed

<p>11. Press  to select Promote Name</p> <p>12. Press  or  to choose between default text or user text configured as in section 5.2.5.</p>		<p>Every parameter promoted to the Summary page can be given a user defined name chosen from 'User Text'</p> <p>The text 'Oven Temp' is used in this example.</p>
<p>13. Press  to select the Promote Access level</p> <p>14. Press  or  to select the Access Level</p>		<p>This sets the level to which the parameter is promoted. The choices are:-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable
<p>15. If a parameter has been selected to appear on the Summary page, then pressing  will show how that parameter will</p>		<p>The actual value of the parameter is shown in this display together with its allocated units.</p> <p>If more parameters have been chosen to appear on the Summary page they will be listed in turn after each press of </p>

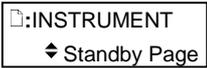
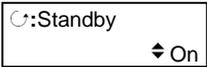
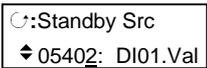
Repeat the above steps for 10 parameters which are to be promoted to the Summary page header.

5.2.8. INSTRUMENT Standby Page

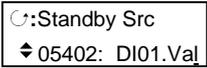
The standby state of the controller occurs when it is in configuration mode or during the first few seconds after switch on.

The INSTRUMENT Standby Page allows you to wire to a parameter such as a digital input which when true will switch the controller to Standby Mode.

5.2.8.1. Example:- To Wire Standby to Fixed Digital Input 1.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the INSTRUMENT page header is displayed 2. Press  or  to select Standby Page		
3. Press  to select Standby 4. Press  or  to select On or Off		'On' enables the feature 'Off' disables the feature.
5. Press  to select Standby Src 6. Press  or  to edit the Modbus Address of the parameter to be wired to		The Modbus Address of Fixed Digital Input number 01 is 05402

If the Modbus Address is not known it is possible to select the required parameter from a list of commonly used parameters. This list is shown in Appendix D

7. Press  again. 8. Then press  or  to scroll through a list of commonly used parameters		If the Modbus Address is not known the parameter can be selected its mnemonic. See Appendix D for a list of these commonly used parameters.
--	---	---

 **Tip: See 'Copy and Paste' Section 3.1.2.**

5.3. USER TEXT EXAMPLES

5.3.1. To Re-Name Loop 1 to Zone 1

First enable User Text since its factory default is disabled. A library of User Text can then be created from which the new loop name can be selected.

5.3.1.1. Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page (Section 5.2.6),
 - set User Text = Enabled
 - set 'Text Number' = 1 (or any unused text no.)
 - set 'Text' = Zone 1
 - This defines Text Number 1 to be Zone 1.
2. In LOOP 1 SETUP /Display Page
 - set 'Loop Name' = 01:Zone 1
 - This replaces the default name (LP1) with Zone 1

5.3.2. To Re-Name User Alarm 1 and Provide a Message

User alarms can be re-named and also provide a diagnostic message to the user.

5.3.2.1. Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page (Section 5.2.6),
 - set User Text = Enabled
 - set 'Text Number' = 2 (or any unused text no.)
 - set 'Usr2' = High Temp
 - This defines Text Number 2 to be High Temp.
 - set 'Text Number' = 3 (or any unused text no.)
 - set 'Usr3' = Check Chiller
2. In ALARMS/User 1 Page
 - set 'Name' = 02:High Temp
 - This replaces the default name with High Temp
 - Set 'Message' =03:Check Chiller

5.3.3. To Re-Name Module 1 to be called Heat Output

Individual modules can be re-named to simplify plant diagnostics.

5.3.3.1. Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page (Section 5.2.6),
 - set User Text = Enabled
 - set 'Text Number' = 4 (or any unused text no.)
 - set 'Usr4' = Heat Output
 - This defines Text Number 4 to be Heat Output.
2. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page
 - set 'Module Name' = 04:Heat Output
 - This replaces the default name with Heat Output

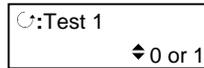
5.3.4. To Show User Text in the Summary Page on an Event

This example will display the text 'Test 1' in the Summary Page when the Digital Input 1 becomes true.

5.3.4.1. Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page (Section 5.2.6),
 - set User Text = Enabled
 - set 'Text Number' = 5 (or any unused text no.)
 - set 'Usr5' = Test 1
2. In STANDARD IO /Dig IO1 Page
 - set Channel Type = Digital Input
 - This page also allows you to set the input for inverted operation
3. In INSTRUMENT/Summary Page (Section 5.2.7)
 - set 'Show Summary?' = Yes
 - set 'Promote Param' = 1 (or the text no. above)
 - set 'Promote Addr' = 05402:DIO1.Val
 - This connects digital input 1 to the first parameter of the Summary display

In Operation Level, the text in the Summary page will show:-



In place of 0 or 1, you may wish to display On or Off. This can be achieved by using a Logic or Analogue Operator. The implementation using Logic Operator 1 is as follows:

1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page (Section 5.2.6),
 - set User Text = Enabled
 - set 'Text Number' = 5 (or any unused text no.)
 - set 'Usr5' = Test 1
2. In STANDARD IO /Dig IO1 Page
 - set Channel Type = Digital Input
 - This page also allows you to set the input for inverted operation
3. In LOGIC OPERS/Logic 1 Page
 - set 'Operation = OR
 - set 'Input 1 Src = 05402:DIO1.Val
 - set 'Input 2 Src = 05402:DIO1.Val
 - This connects digital input 1 to logic operator 1.
 - Note: it is necessary to wire to both inputs of a logic (or analogue operator)
4. In INSTRUMENT/Summary Page (Section 5.2.7)
 - set 'Show Summary?' = Yes
 - set 'Promote Param' = 1 (or the text no. above)
 - set 'Promote Addr' = 07176:LgOp1.OP
 - The logic operator is defined simply to provide On/Off annunciation in the display Summary page.

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

5.3.5. To Assign Custom Units to the Power Up Display

Most commonly used units can be selected for display on the user interface. In addition to the standard selection up to six custom units can be created. In this example the units of the PV Input will be Gal/m

5.3.5.1. Implementation

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page (Section 5.2.6), | set User Text = Enabled
set 'Text Number' = 6 (or any unused text no.)
set 'Usr6' = Gal/m
This defines Text Number 6 to be Gal/m. |
| 2. In INSTRUMENT/Units Page (Section 5.2.3), | set 'Custom 1 Units' = 06:Gal/m
This sets Custom Units 1 to Gal/m |
| 3. In STANDARD IO/PV Input Page (Table 17.2.1.) | set 'Units' = Custom 1 |

5.3.6. To Customise the Power Up Display

In this example the users company name will be used provide the start up message when the controller is switched on. The company name will be CML Controls and is based in Scotland.

5.3.6.1. Implementation

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. In INSTRUMENT/User Text Page (Section 5.2.6), | set User Text = Enabled
set 'Text Number' = 7 (or any unused text no.)
set 'Usr7' = CML Controls
This defines Text Number 7 to be CML Controls
set 'Text Number' = 8 (or any unused text no.)
set 'Usr8' = Scotland |
| 2. In INSTRUMENT/Display Page (Section 5.2.4), | set 'Startup Text 1' = 07: CML Controls
set 'Startup Text 2' = 08: Scotland |

6.	CHAPTER 6 PROGRAMMER CONFIGURATION.....	2
6.1.	WHAT IS SETPOINT PROGRAMMING ?	3
6.2.	THE 2604 SETPOINT PROGRAMMER DEFINITIONS	4
6.2.1.	Run	4
6.2.2.	Hold	4
6.2.3.	Reset.....	4
6.2.4.	Servo	4
6.2.5.	Hot Start	4
6.2.6.	Digital Inputs.....	5
6.2.7.	Power Fail Recovery	6
6.2.8.	Wait.....	7
6.2.9.	Holdback (Guaranteed Soak)	8
6.2.10.	Fine and Coarse Holdback.....	9
6.3.	PROGRAM USER VALUES	10
6.3.1.	Program User Value Enumerations	10
6.4.	PROGRAMMER TYPES.....	11
6.4.1.	Time To Target Programmer.....	11
6.4.2.	Ramp Rate Programmer	11
6.5.	SEGMENT TYPES	11
6.5.1.	Profile.....	11
6.5.2.	Go Back Segment.....	12
6.5.3.	End Segment	12
6.6.	TO ENABLE THE PROGRAMMER FUNCTION BLOCK.....	13
6.7.	TO CONFIGURE PROGRAM TYPE	14
6.7.1.	PROGRAM EDIT Options Page.....	15
6.8.	PROFILE LOCK.....	16
6.9.	PROGRAMMER WIRING.....	17
6.9.1.	Programmer Function Block	17
6.9.2.	PROGRAM EDIT Wiring Page	18
6.10.	TO CREATE OR EDIT A PROGRAM	19
6.10.1.	Parameters Common To A Program	19
6.10.2.	PROGRAM EDIT Program Page	20
6.10.3.	Parameters Common To Each Segment.....	21
6.10.4.	PROGRAM EDIT Segment Page	22
6.10.5.	Run Parameters	24
6.11.	PROGRAMMER WIRING EXAMPLES.....	29
6.11.1.	One Profile, Three Loops	29
6.11.2.	Two Profiles, Two Loops	31

6. Chapter 6 Programmer Configuration

This chapter explains how to configure and use a Setpoint Programmer and describes in more detail other features such as:-

- Program **User Values**
- **Pattern Generator**
- **Program, Segment** and other **User Defined Names**
- The strategy adopted by the controller following a **power fail**
- Other parameters applicable to **configuration of programmers**
- A description of **Holdback**

Customisable Parameter Names

Throughout this chapter parameter names shown in *italics* are customisable by the user when in configuration access level. The name of the parameter may vary, therefore, from instrument to instrument.

Typical customisable parameter names are:

- Program names
- Profile Setpoint names
- User Value names

6.1. WHAT IS SETPOINT PROGRAMMING ?

Many applications need to vary the process value over time. Such applications need a controller which varies a setpoint as a function of time. The 2604 controller will program up to three separate profiles. These may be temperature, pressure, light level, humidity, etc., depending on the application, and are referred to as **Profiled Setpoints (PSPs)**. A setpoint program containing three profile setpoints is shown in Figure 6-1.

The **Program** is divided into a flexible number of **Segments** - each being a single time duration, - and containing details for each profiled setpoint. The total number of segments available is **100 per program** with a **maximum of 500** in any instrument.

A controller containing functionality to control profile setpoints against time is referred to as a **Programmer**. The 2604 programmer works on a single timebase for all programs.

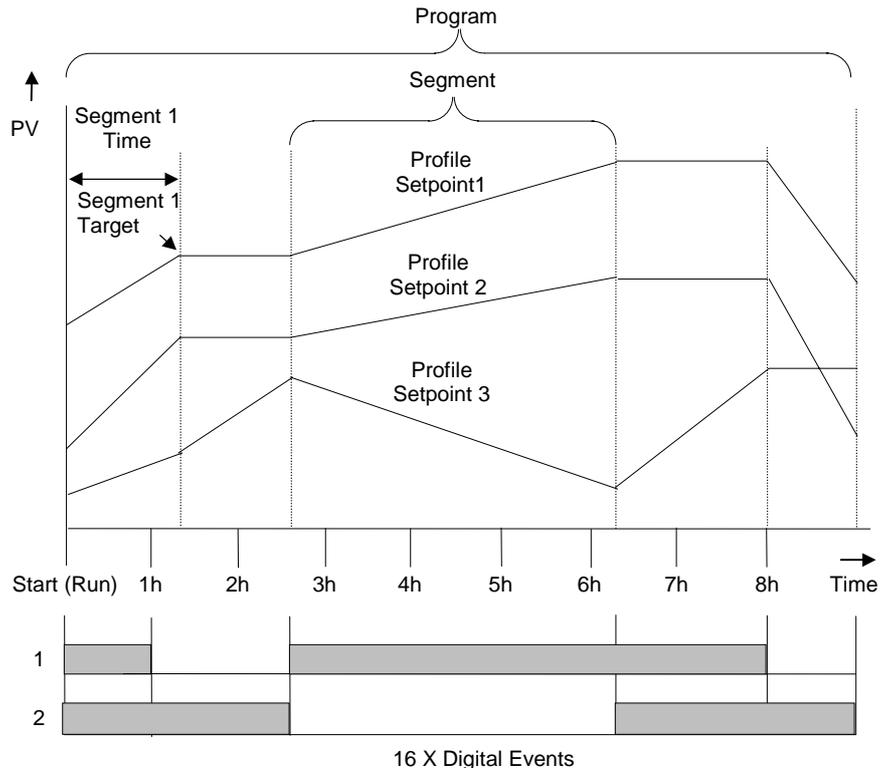


Figure 6-1: A Setpoint Program

The profiled setpoints may be used as either **control loop setpoints** or independent parameters for **retransmission** or for use in **derived calculations**.

The 2604 may store up to **20 programs** as standard, with up to 50 if purchased.

6.2. THE 2604 SETPOINT PROGRAMMER DEFINITIONS

6.2.1. Run

In run the programmer varies the setpoint in accordance with the profile set in the active program.

6.2.2. Hold

In hold the programmer is frozen at its current point. In this state you can make temporary changes to program parameters such as a target setpoint, ramp rates and dwells (if programmer configured for ramp rate) or segment duration (if programmer configured as Time to Target). Such changes will only remain effective until the end of the currently running segment, when they will be overwritten by the stored program values.

6.2.3. Reset

In reset the programmer is inactive and the controller behaves as a standard controller, with the setpoint determined by the raise/lower buttons.

6.2.4. Servo

When a program is run the setpoint can start from the initial controller setpoint or from the current process value. Whichever it is the starting point is called the servo point. This can be set in the program.

The usual method is to servo to the process value because this will produce a smooth and bumpless start to the process.

If, however, it is essential to guarantee the time period of the first segment it may be better to set the controller to servo to setpoint.

6.2.5. Hot Start

Hot start can occur in any segment type, for any PSP but is most useful to ramp segments.

When run is initiated it allows the program to automatically advance to the correct point in the profile which corresponds to the operating temperature of the process. Hot start is enabled in configuration level and specifies which programmed variable to use when deciding the correct segment.

6.2.6. Digital Inputs

Digital inputs are available on the controller which can be configured for the following programmer functions:

Run	Allows the program to be run from an external source such as a pushbutton or other event
Hold	Allows the program to be held from an external source such as a pushbutton or other event
Reset	Allows the program to be reset from an external source such as a pushbutton or other event
Run/Hold	Allows the program to be run or held from a single external input source
Run/Reset	Allows the program to be run or reset from a single external input source
Advance Segment	Selects the next segment from an external input source
Program Number	Selects the next program from an external input source. When this event occurs, the controller display will change to programmer view. Subsequent changes of this input source will cause the program number to increment.
Holdback disabled	Disables holdback from an external input source
BCD Program switch	Allows different programs to be selected using an external BCD switch

For more information on digital inputs refer to Chapters 17 and 18.

6.2.7. Power Fail Recovery

In the event of power fail to the controller, a strategy may be set in configuration level, which defines how the controller behaves on restoration of the power. These strategies include:

Continue	<p>The program runs from the last setpoint. This may cause full power to be applied to the process for a short period to heat the process back to its value prior to the power failure</p>	
Ramp back	<p>The PV will ramp back to its original value at the rate last encountered.</p> <p>In a Dwell segment, the period continues when the PV recovers to the SP value. The power fail time + the recovery time is added to the dwell time set.</p>	
	<p>A special case exists if no ramps have been encountered. The diagram shows the behaviour following a power fail in segment 3.</p>	
Reset	<p>The process is aborted by resetting the program</p>	
Hold Program	<p>The programmer will enter the HOLD state. The operator may then change the state to Reset or Run. On exiting from Hold into Run the program will continue, it will not ramp back.</p>	
Test Time	<p>This option makes use of the real time clock in the controller to determine how long the power has been off. Two time periods can be set which allows three strategies:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the power is off for less than the first period, the programmer will continue from its last operating point 2. If the power is off for a time between the two time boundaries, the controller will servo to the PV and ramp back to the operating point using the previous ramp rate. 3. If the power is off for longer than the second time boundary, the programmer will reset. <p> The programmer takes about 25 seconds to start running after power is applied to the 2604. This delay should be taken into consideration when setting up the Test Time recovery parameter.</p>	

6.2.8. Wait

Three wait conditions are provided at the end of each segment which may be wired, in configuration level, using a 'Toolkit Block' expression or by a digital input. Each segment may then select No-Wait, Wait on Event A, Wait on Event B or Wait on Event C. When all profile segments are complete, and the configured wait event is active, the program waits until the wait event becomes in-active before progressing to the next segment.

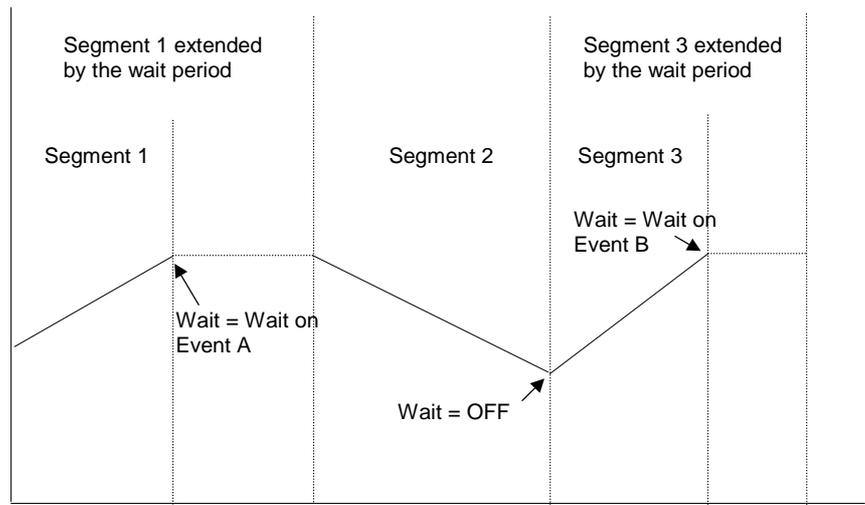
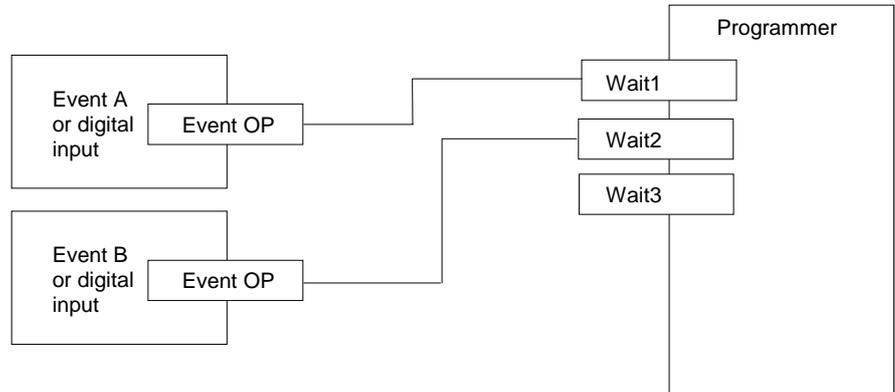


Figure 6-2: Wait Events

6.2.9. Holdback (Guaranteed Soak)

Holdback freezes the program if the process value does not track the setpoint by an amount which can be set by the user. It may operate in any type of segment

In a **Ramp** segment it indicates that the process value is lagging the setpoint by more than a pre-set amount and that the program is waiting for the process to catch up.

In a **Dwell** segment it will freeze the dwell time if the difference between SP and PV exceeds pre-set limits.

In both cases it guarantees the correct soak period for the product.

Holdback may be configured in three modes:

- OFF - holdback does not operate
- Applied to the complete program. Holdback operates the same way in every segment
- To each individual segment. A different holdback type can be applied to each segment

Holdback Mode defines how holdback operates. It may apply when:

- The PV is below the SP by a pre-set value (Lo),
- The PV is above the SP by a pre-set value(Hi)
- The PV is below or above the SP by a pre-set value (Band).

In addition two levels of holdback are available per profile setpoint, per program. These are defined as 'Fine' and 'Course'.

Example:

Holdback, operating in each segment, is often used in a temperature control application as detailed below:-

During a ramp up period the holdback type may be set to deviation low. If the Process Value lags the programmed rate of rise, holdback will stop the program until the PV catches up. This prevents the set program from entering the next segment until the PV has attained the correct temperature.

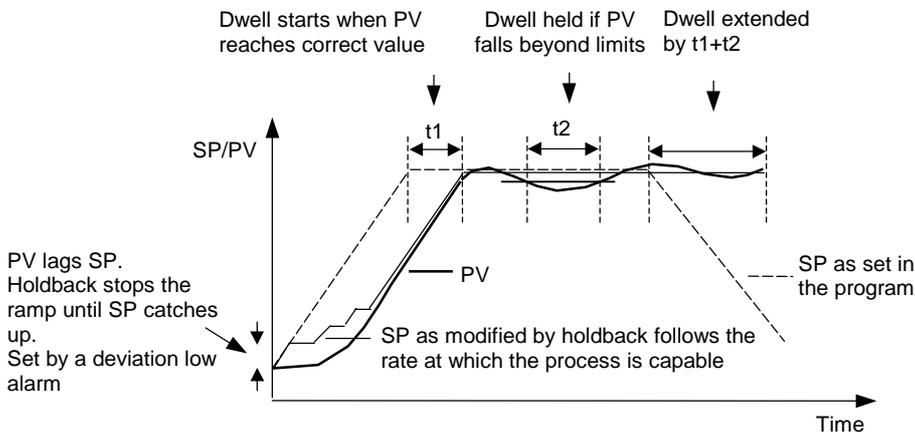


Figure 6-3: Effect of Holdback to Produce Guaranteed soak

During a dwell period the holdback type may be set to deviation band. This guarantees that the dwell or soak period operates only when the process value is within both high and low deviation limits.

During a ramp down period the holdback type may be set to deviation high. If the process cannot cool at the rate set by the ramp down rate the program will be held until the process catches up.

When a profile is placed into holdback the other profiles are (normally) not held. They continue and rendezvous at the end of the segment.

Each segment may consist of up to three profiles. Two levels of holdback value, coarse and fine, may be applied for each profile of each segment in the PROGRAM EDIT Program page.

6.2.10. Fine and Coarse Holdback

Fine and Coarse Holdback values are only displayed when 'Holdback Mode' = 'Per Segment' or 'Per Program'. They allow you to apply one value of holdback to selected segments/program and another value to other segments/program. For example, you could apply 'Fine Holdback' to one or more Dwell segments and 'Coarse Holdback' to one or more Ramp segments

6.3. PROGRAM USER VALUES

Program User Values provide multiplexor facilities for the user. Each user value provides storage for a number of event values (currently 100). Each user value will normally be soft wired (see Chapter 3) to call up another feature.

The following example shows how the programmer user values may be used to call up different sets of pre-configured digital output values for different segments in a programmer. This would make use of the Pattern Generator described in Chapter 15, and assumes that a user value has been wired to a Pattern Generator.

Program Segment 1	Program Segment 2	Program Segment 3	Program Segment x
User Value 1 Value 1	User Value 1 Value 6	User Value 1 Value 11	User Value 1 Value 15
Pattern Generator output 1	Pattern Generator output 6	Pattern Generator output 11	Pattern Generator output 15

In each segment a different pattern of digital outputs is set up from the single value set in the User Value for each segment.

6.3.1. Program User Value Enumerations

Each program user value may be allocated a name chosen from 'User Text' library. This means that a name can be allocated to Value 1 to Value x in the above table, and can be used to describe the functions carried out in each segment. For example, if User Value 1 is called 'Carburise' the Pattern Generator will set the digital pattern required for carburising and this message can be made to appear in the PATTERN GEN (Dig Group x) page during that segment.

An example which shows how to apply an Enumeration to a Programmer User Value is given in Chapter 14.

6.4. PROGRAMMER TYPES

The programmer can be configured as **Time to Target** or **Ramp Rate**. A time to target programmer requires fewer settings and is simple to use since all segments are the same. A time to target programmer can, in general contain more segments than a ramp rate.

6.4.1. Time To Target Programmer

Each segment consists of a **single duration parameter** and a set of **target values** for the profiled variables.

1. The **duration** specifies the time that the segment takes to change the profiled variables from their current values to the new targets.
2. A **dwll** type segment is set up by leaving the target setpoint at the previous value.
3. A **Step** type segment is set up by setting the segment time to zero.

6.4.2. Ramp Rate Programmer

Each segment can be specified by the operator as **Ramp Rate, Dwell or Step**.

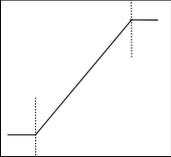
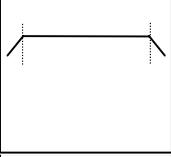
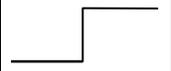
1. Each profiled setpoint must complete its segment before the programmer will move to the next segment. If one ramp reaches its target setpoint ahead of the other variables, it will dwell at that value until the other variables have completed. The program will then move to the next segment.
2. The duration parameter for a segment is read only unless the segment contains only dwells. In this case the dwell period can be changed when the program is in Hold..
3. The duration is determined by the longest profile setting.

6.5. SEGMENT TYPES

A segment type can be defined as **Profile, Go Back or End**.

6.5.1. Profile

A profile segment may be set as:-

Ramp		The setpoint ramps linearly , from its current value to a new value, either at a set rate (called <i>ramp-rate programming</i>), or in a set time (called <i>time-to-target programming</i>). You must specify the ramp rate or the ramp time, and the target setpoint, when creating or modifying a program.
Dwell		The setpoint remains constant for a specified period at the specified target. When creating programs the target is inherited from the previous segment. When editing an existing program it is necessary to re-enter the target value. This allows the dwell target to be matched to a go-back segment.
Step		The setpoint steps instantaneously from its current value to a new value at the beginning of a segment.

6.5.2. Go Back Segment

Go Back allows segments in a program to be repeated by a set number of times. It is the equivalent of inserting 'sub-programs' on some controllers. Figure 6-4 shows an example of a program which is required to repeat the same section a number of times and then continue the program.

A Go Back segment is used to save the total number of segments required in a program and to simplify setting up. When planning a program it is advisable to ensure that the end and start setpoints of the program are the same otherwise it will step to the different levels. A Go Back segment is defined when editing a program.

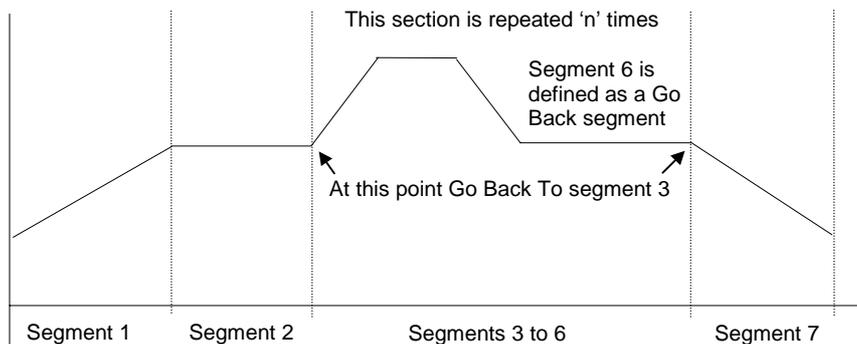


Figure 6-4: An Example of a Program with Repeating Section

Note 1. If a second or more 'Go Back' segments are created, they cannot return to a segment before the previous 'Go Back' segment as shown below.

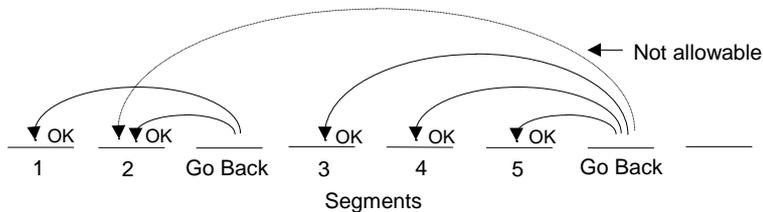


Figure 6-5: Permitted Go Back Segments

6.5.3. End Segment

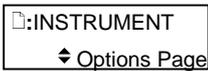
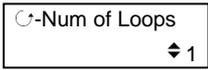
The last segment in a program is normally defined as an End segment

The program either ends, repeats or resets in this segment. You specify which is the case when you create, or modify, the program. When the program ends, the programmer is put into either, a continuous dwell state with all outputs staying unchanged, or the reset state.

6.6. TO ENABLE THE PROGRAMMER FUNCTION BLOCK

If the instrument has been supplied as a programmer it will only be necessary to complete this step if the programmer feature has subsequently been disabled.

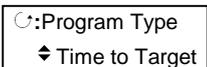
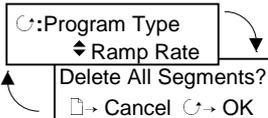
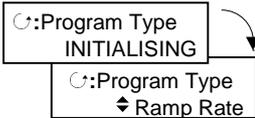
In configuration level:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Select INSTRUMENT (Options Page)		
2. Press  to select Num of Loops		1, 2 or 3 loops can be selected if the option has been supplied
3. Press  or  to select the required number of loops		
4. Press  to select Programmer 5. Press  or  to select Enabled		If the Programmer is set to Disabled the Programmer pages do not appear.

6.7. TO CONFIGURE PROGRAM TYPE

The programmer is supplied as a **Time to Target** programmer. This section describes how to configure a **Ramp Rate** type.

In configuration level:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select PROGRAM EDIT (Options Page)		
2. Press  to select Program Type		The Program Type may be:- Time to Target - Each segment is a single duration. Or Ramp Rate - Segments are Ramp, Dwell or Step. Time to Target is the default
3. Press  or  to select Time to Target or Ramp Rate	 <p>If no button is pressed for 10 seconds the display reverts to previous.</p>	<p>If programs have already been set up using the previous Program Type all segment data will be deleted and will need to be re-entered in Operation level.</p>
4. Press  to select confirm		The Program Type requires a few seconds to re-configure during which time 'INITIALISING' is displayed. The Program Type is then confirmed The following table lists further parameters in this page. Press  to select each parameter in turn. If the parameter is preceded by  , press   to change its value



6.7.1. PROGRAM EDIT Options Page

Table Number: 6.7.1.		These parameters allow you to configure Program Type and Options		PROGRAM EDIT (Options Page)
Parameter Name Press  to select	Parameter Description	Value	Default	
Program Type	Programmer type	Time to Target Ramp Rate		
Num of PSPs	Number of programmer setpoints	1, 2 or 3		
Prog Usr Val1?	Enables user value 1	No Yes	No	
<i>UVal1</i> Low Lim ⁽¹⁾	User value 1 low limit	0 to 100 limited by <i>UVal1</i> Hi Lim	Only shown if Prog Usr Val1 = Yes	
<i>UVal1</i> Hi Lim ⁽¹⁾	User value 1 high limit	0 to 100		
Usr Val1 Name ⁽¹⁾	Name from user text for programmer user value 1	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Default text	
Usr Val1 Enum ⁽¹⁾	First user string from for programmer user value 1 custom enumeration	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Default Text	
Prog Usr Val2?	Enables user value 2	No Yes	No	
<i>Uval2</i> Low Lim ⁽¹⁾	User value 2 low limit	0 to 100 limited by <i>Uval2</i> Hi Lim	Only shown if Prog Usr Val2 = Yes	
<i>Uval21</i> Hi Lim ⁽¹⁾	User value 2 high limit	0 to 100		
Usr Val2 Name ⁽¹⁾	Name from user text for programmer user value 2	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Default text	
Usr Val2 Enum ⁽¹⁾	First user string from for programmer user value 2 custom enumeration	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Default Text	
Wait Events?	Activates the Wait events option	No Yes		
Hot Start	Activates the hot start option	No Yes		
Recovery Type	Defines the power recovery strategy	Ramp Back Reset Continue	Continue	
Reset Time	Power recovery reset time (Only if 'Recovery Type' = 'Test Time')	0:00:00 to 23:59:59		
Servo Time	Power recovery servo time (Only if 'Recovery Type' =	0:00:00 to 23:59:59		

	'Test Time')		
Num of Prg DOs	Defines the number of digital event outputs used	None to 16	
PSP1 Units	Units to be displayed for PSP1	See Appendix D.2.	
PSP1 Resol	PSP1 decimal point resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX	
PSP1 Low Lim	PSP1 low limit	Display range	
PSP1 High Lim	PSP1 high limit	Display range	
PSP1 Reset Val	Safe state target setpoint	Prog SP lo lim to Prog SP hi lim	
PSP1 Name	To choose a name for PSP1 from user text	Default Text to 50:User50	Default Text
The above parameters are repeated for PSP2 and PSP3 if these have been configured using Num of PSPs			
Profile Lock	Prevents a program from being selected See also section 6.8. below	Unlocked Profile Locked Fully Locked	
Mimic Page	The program mimic page may be turned off or configured to appear in the Main Menu or in the Summary Page	Off Main Page Summary Page	

Note (1) – Parameters only available if the relevant User Value = ‘Yes’

6.8. PROFILE LOCK

Profile Lock is a configuration parameter which allows programs to be created but which prevents them from being changed in operation levels.

If more than one program was created prior to ‘Profile Lock’ being selected, then the user can select these programs (using ‘Program Number’) but cannot create any more.

The options are:-

Fully Locked No parameter or the profile can be changed in operation levels

Profile Locked The profile of the program is locked but changes can be made to certain parameters such as Target setpoints, rates, dwells or segment duration.

6.9. PROGRAMMER WIRING

6.9.1. Programmer Function Block

The programmer function block, below, shows an example of soft wiring to other functions.. The connections can be made using the copy and paste method described in section 3.1.2. with the exception of the Prg.DO1 to Prg.DO16 event outputs. These can be found by searching through the list of parameters or by entering the Modbus address directly. The Modbus addresses for these parameters are 05869 to 05883 inclusive.

The parameters which can be wired are listed in Table 6.9.2.. These parameters can be wired to any other parameter by Modbus address or using the shorter list of parameter names

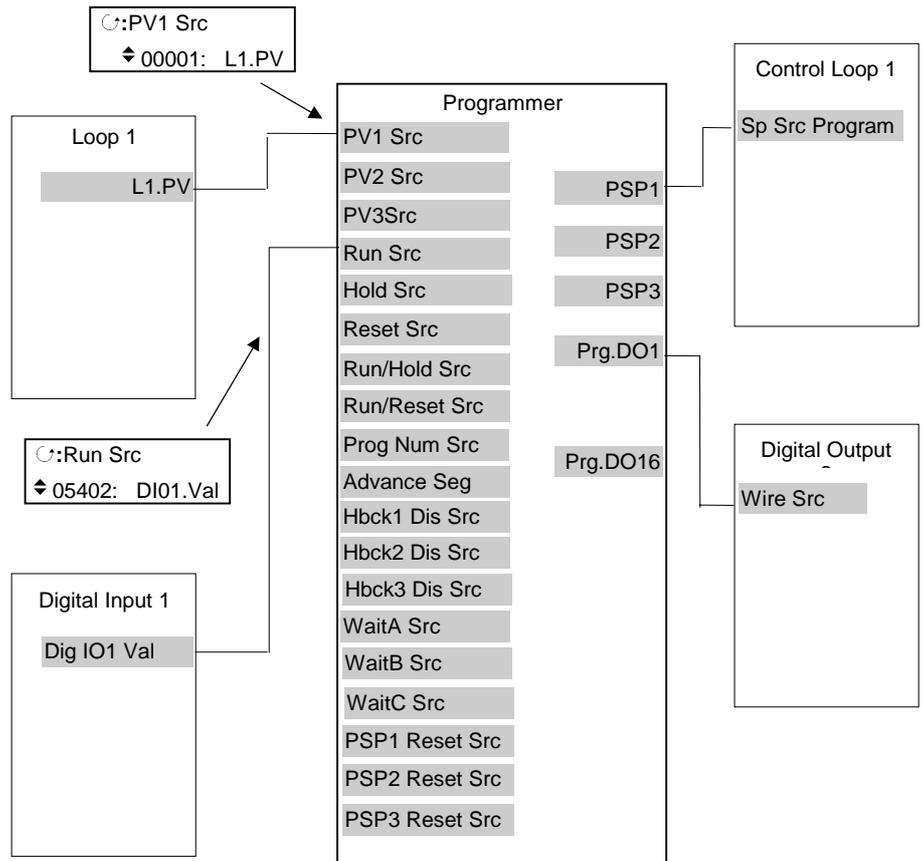


Figure 6-6: Programmer Function Block and Wiring Example

6.9.2. PROGRAM EDIT Wiring Page

Table Number: 6.9.2.		These parameters allow you to soft wire programmer functions	PROGRAM EDIT (Wiring Page)
Parameter Name Press  to select	Parameter Description	Default Wiring Value Modbus Address:Parameter Mnemonic	
PV1 Src	PV 1 source	00001:LP1 PV	
PV2 Src	PV 2 source	01025:LP2 PV	
PV3 Src	PV 3 source	02049:LP3 PV	
Prog Num Src	Program number source	Not wired by default	
Run Src	Run source	05494:DIO5	
Hold Src	Hold Source	05642:DIO6	
Reset Src	Reset Source	05690:DIO7	
Run/Hold Src	Run/Hold Source	Not wired by default	
Run/Reset S	Run/Reset Source	Not wired by default	
Advanc Prog	Advance Program source	Not wired by default	
Advanc Seg	Advance segment source	12609:DI8	
FineHbck1 Sr	Fine holdback 1 source	Not wired by default	
CorseHbck1	Course holdback 1 source	Not wired by default	
Hbck1 Dis Src	Holdback 1 disable source	Not wired by default	
FineHbck2 Sr	Fine holdback 2 source	Not wired by default	
CorseHbck2	Course holdback 2 source	Not wired by default	
Hbck2 Dis Src	Holdback 2 disable source	Not wired by default	
FineHbck3 Sr	Fine holdback 3 source	Not wired by default	
CorseHbck3	Course holdback 3 source	Not wired by default	
Hbck3 Dis Src	Holdback 3 disable source	Not wired by default	
WaitA Src	Wait A source	Not wired by default	
WaitB Src	Wait B source	Not wired by default	
WaitC Src	Wait C source	Not wired by default	
PSP1 Reset Src	PSP1 reset source ⁽¹⁾	00001:LP1 PV	
PSP2 Reset Src	PSP2 reset source ⁽¹⁾	01025:LP2 PV	
PSP3 Reset Src	PSP3 reset source ⁽¹⁾	02049:LP3 PV	

Note 1:- The PSP Reset Source defines the programmer starting conditions. To servo to setpoint, wire the relevant reset source into the SP. To servo to PV, wire the relevant reset source into the PV.

The value which is wired into the Reset Source is the value which appears at the programmer output.

6.10. TO CREATE OR EDIT A PROGRAM

A program can be created or edited in any access level (unless the list has been hidden).

1. First define the parameters associated with the overall program. These parameters will be found under the page header '**PROGRAM EDIT (Program)**'
2. Then set up the parameters which define each individual segment. These parameters will be found in the page '**PROGRAM EDIT (Segments)**'

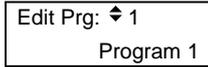
The procedure is described in the following sections and in the 2604 User Guide

Notes:-

1. A running program cannot be edited, it must be put into **Reset** or **Hold** mode.
2. Changes can be made to any segment of a currently running program as follows:-
 - To the currently running segment - use the PROGRAM RUN page. These changes are always temporary and apply to the current run only
 - To any segment - use the PROGRAM EDIT page. These changes are always permanent and will apply to subsequent runs.
3. Other programs can be created or edited when another program is running.

6.10.1. Parameters Common To A Program

To set up parameters common to a program:-

Do This	This is the Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the PROGRAM EDIT press  or  to select ' Program Page '		
2. Press  to select the first parameter ' Edit Prg:  1'		<p>The text <i>Program 1</i> may be a user defined name from User Text</p> <p>The following table lists further parameters in this page. Press  to select each parameter in tune. If the parameter is preceded by , press   to change its value</p>



6.10.2. PROGRAM EDIT Program Page

Table Number: 6.10.2		These parameters affect the overall program.		PROGRAM EDIT (Program Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Edit Prg: ↕ 1	Selects the program number to be edited. If 'Profile Lock' ≠ 'Unlocked', only those programs which were created prior to setting the 'Profile Lock' parameter can be selected.	1 to 20 or 1 to 50	<i>Program 1</i> Name may be chosen from User Text	L1	
Hbk Mode	Holdback mode None = no holdback Per prog = applied over the whole program Per seg = active in every segment	None Per Program Per Segment	None	L1	
<i>PSP1</i> Hbk Type	Holdback type for <i>PSP1</i> (per program) These are deviations between SP and PV Fine and course holdback allows two levels of holdback to be applied to different segments, see also section 6.2.10.	Off Fine Lo Fine Hi Fine Band Course Lo Course Hi Course Band	Off	L1 Only displayed if Per Program configured	
<i>PSP1</i> FineHbk	Fine holdback value for <i>PSP1</i>	Display Range	0	L3. Only shown if 'Hbk Mode' ≠ Off	
<i>PSP1</i> CourseHbk	Course holdback value for <i>PSP1</i>	Display Range	0		
The above three parameters are repeated for <i>PSP2</i> and for <i>PSP3</i> if these are configured					
Hot Start PSP	Allows hot start to be applied to each PSP. See also section 6.2.5.	None <i>PSP1</i> <i>PSP2</i> <i>PSP3</i>	None	L1	
Rate Units	Rate units for a Ramp Rate Programmer	Per Second Per Minute		L3. Only displayed if the	

		Per Hour		programmer is Ramp Rate
Program Cycles	The number of times a program repeats.	Cont. to 999	Cont.	L1
End Action	Defines the action in the end segment. Dwell - the program will dwell indefinitely at the conditions set in the end segment. Reset - the program will reset to the start conditions.	Dwell Reset		L1
Program Name	Allows a user defined name to be given to the program number	User string Each character can be set in turn		L1

6.10.3. Parameters Common To Each Segment

To set up each segment:-

Do This	This is the Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the PROGRAM EDIT press  or  to select ' Segment Page '		
2. Press  to select the first parameter ' Edit Prg: 1 '		The text <i>Program 1</i> may be a user defined name from User Text The following table lists further parameters in this page. Press  to select each parameter in tune. If the parameter is preceded by  , press   to change its value 

6.10.4. PROGRAM EDIT Segment Page

Table Number: 6.10.4.		These parameters allow you to set up each segment in the program		PROGRAM EDIT (Segment Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Edit Prg: ↕ 1 (to 20 or 50)	Selects the program number and name	1 to 20 (or 50)		L1	
Segment Number	Selects the segment number to be edited	1 to 100		L1	
Segment Type	Segment type Profile = a normal segment End Segment = the last segment in the program (press  to confirm) Go Back = repeat part of prog. Not shown for segment 1.	Profile End Segment Go Back	Profile	L1	
<i>PSP1</i> Type	Profile setpoint 1 type	Step Dwell Ramp		L1. Only shown for Ramp Rate programmer and not End	
<i>PSP1</i> Target	Profile setpoint 1 target value	SP1 lo limit to SP1 hi limit	0	L2	
<i>PSP1</i> Dwell Tm	Profile setpoint 1 dwell time	d : h : m : s		L1. Only shown for Ramp Rate programmer a Dwell segment and not End	
<i>PSP1</i> Rate	Profile setpoint 1 rate			L2. Only shown for Ramp Rate programmer a ramp segment and not End	
<i>PSP1</i> Hbk Type	Profile setpoint 1 holdback type	Off Fine Lo Fine Hi Fine Band Course Lo	Off	L2. Only shown if 'Hbk Mode' is configured per segment	

		Course Hi Course Band		
The above five parameters are repeated if <i>PSP2</i> and <i>PSP3</i> are configured				
Seg Duration	Duration for Time to Target programmer	d : h : m : s		L2. Does not appear for Ramp Rate Programmer or End segment
Wait Event	Wait if selected event is true	No wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	L2. Only shown if 'Wait Events' configured
Prog User Val 1	Allows a programmer user value to be chosen. See also section 6.3.	0 - 100	0	L1. Only shown if 'Prog User Val 1' is configured
Prog User Val 2	Allows a programmer user value to be chosen. See also section 6.3.	0 - 100	0	L1. Only shown if 'Prog User Val 2' is configured
PID Set	Selects a set of PID values	PID Set 1 to PID Set 3		L2. Only shown if 'PID sets' configured
Prog DO Values	Sets programmer event outputs on or off <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> depends on number of events configured in PROGRAM (Options Page)	<input type="checkbox"/> = Off <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> = On	<input type="checkbox"/>	L2. Only shown if 'Num of Prg DOs' is configured
Go Back Seg	Go back defines the point in the program where the repeat segments are entered.	1 to no. of segments		L2. Only shown if segment. type is 'Go Back'
Go Back Cycles	Sets up the number of times the segments are repeated	1 to 999	1	

6.10.5. Run Parameters

The Run list appears differently depending on the access level.

A program will only run when the controller is in operation levels 1, 2 or 3. If a program is running and the controller is put into Configuration level the program will reset.

The first set of tables below show the parameters which appear in levels 1, 2 or 3.

The second set of tables show the parameters when in configuration level.

Table Number: 6.10.5a.		These parameters show the overall status of a running program		PROGRAM RUN (General Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
These displays may be promoted by the user as an over-view of the program status		Program Number Segment Number Program Name		R/O	
		Digital outputs states. Only appears if digital outputs configured		L1. Can be changed in Hold	
		Program Time Remaining		R/O	
Fast Run	Allows the program to fast run (X10)	No Yes		L3. Alterable in reset or complete	
Program Status	Displays the status of the program	Reset Run Hold Complete		L1.	
Prog Time Elap	Program time elapsed	d: h: m: s		R/O	
Prog Cycle Rem	Remaining number of cycles	1 to 999		R/O	
Total Segments	Number of segments in the running program	0 to 100		R/O	
Segment Number	The currently running segment number	1 to 100		R/O	
Segment Type	Running program segment type Profile = normal segment Go Back =repeat part of prog	Profile End Segment Go Back		R/O	
Seg Time Rem	Time remaining in the current segment	d: h: m: s		L1. Read or alterable if Time To Target prog and in Hold	

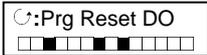
Wait Status	Wait Status	No Wait Event A Event B Event C		R/O
Wait Condition	Wait condition for the running segment	No Wait Event A Event B Event C		L1. Alterable in Hold
PID Set	PID values used in running program	PID Set 1 to PID Set 3		R/O - Only shown if configured
Goback Rem	Number of repeat cycles remaining	1 to 999		R/O
End Action	The state required in the end segment	Dwell Reset		R/O
Prog Reset DO	These are the digital events in Reset 			R/O Only shown if configured.

Table Number: 6.6.5b.		These parameters refer to Profiled Setpoint number 1 for a running program. Repeated for PSP2 and PSP3		PROGRAM RUN (PSP1 Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Seg Time Rem	Segment time remaining	h: m: s		
PSP1 Type	Running segment type for profiled setpoint 1	Step Dwell Ramp		R/O - shown in Ramp Rate prog.
PSP1 WSP	Working setpoint for profiled setpoint 1	Display range ¹		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Target	Running segment target for profiled setpoint 1	Display range ¹		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Dwell Tm	Time remaining in running segment for profiled SP 1	Display range		L1. Alterable in Hold
PSP1 Rate	Running segment rate for profiled setpoint 1	Display range ¹		L1. Not in Time To Target prog
PSP1 HBk Appl	Holdback applied for profiled setpoint 1	No Yes		R/O - shown if configured

¹: Range limited by user defined upper and lower limits

Table Number: 6.10.5c		These parameters are displayed when the controller is in configuration level		PROGRAM RUN (General Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
State of programs 1 to 50				Conf
State of digital outputs in program 1				Conf
State of program 1				Conf
Fast Run	Allows the program to fast run	No Yes	No	Conf
Program Status	Displays the status of the program	Reset Run Hold Complete		Conf
Prog Run	Programmer run status wire source	1 = running		Conf
Prog Hold	Programmer hold status wire source	1 = holding		Conf
Prog Reset	Programmer reset status wire source	1 = reset		Conf
Prog End	Programmer end status wire source	1 = end		Conf
New Seg	New segment wire source	1 = new segment for 100ms		Conf
Prog Time Elap	Program time elapsed	h: mm: ss		Conf
Prog Cycle Rem	Remaining number of cycles	1 to 999		Conf
Total Segments	Number of segments in the running program	0 to 100		Conf
Segment Number	The currently running segment number	1 to 100		Conf
Segment Type	Running program segment type Profile = normal segment End Segment = End of prog	Profile End	Profile	Conf

	Go Back =repeat part of prog	Segment Go Back		
Seg Time Rem	Time remaining in the current segment	d: h: m: s		Conf
Wait Status	Wait Status	No Wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	Conf
Wait Condition	Wait condition for the running segment	No Wait Event A Event B Event C	No Wait	Conf
Prog User Val 1	Active Programmer User Val 1			Conf
Prog User Val 2	Active Programmer User Val 2			Conf
Goback Rem	Number of repeat cycles remaining	1 to 999		Conf
End Action	The state required in the end segment	Dwell Reset		Conf
Prog Reset DO	These are the digital events in Reset □□■□□□■□■□□□□□□□□			Conf Only shown if configured.
Reset UsrVal1	Reset prog user 1 values			Conf
Reset UsrVal1	Reset prog user 1 values			Conf

Table Number: 6.10.5d		These parameters are associated with Profiled Setpoint number 1 Repeated for PSP2 and PSP3		PROGRAM RUN (PSP1 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Seg Time Rem	Segment time remaining	h: m: s		Conf R/O	
PSP1 Type	Running segment type for profiled setpoint 1	Step Dwell Ramp		Conf R/O - shown in Ramp Rate prog.	
PSP1 WSP	Working setpoint for profiled setpoint 1	Display range		Conf R/O	
PSP1 Target	Running segment target for profiled setpoint 1	Display range		Conf R/O	
PSP1 Dwell Tm	Time remaining in running segment for profiled SP 1	Display range		Conf R/O	
PSP1 Rate	Running segment rate for profiled setpoint 1	Display range		Conf R/O Not in Time To Target prog	
PSP1 HBk Appl	Holdback applied for profiled setpoint 1	No Yes		Conf R/O shown if configured	

1. Range limited by user defined upper and lower limits

6.11. PROGRAMMER WIRING EXAMPLES

6.11.1. One Profile, Three Loops

This example explains how to configure a programmer to allow one profile to generate a setpoint for three control loops.

The 2604 program block can generate up to three profiled variables, which can then be internally wired to any parameter source. In most cases the PSPs are used to allow control loop setpoints to follow a pre-determined ramp/dwell sequence, but they can also be used, for example, to retransmit a setpoint to a slave device.

In this example PSP1 is soft wired to the program setpoints of each control loop. Also, the PV of loop1 is wired to the PV1 source, to provide holdback, and the PSP1 reset source, to provide servo start. This configuration is supplied from the factory by defining the hardware code field, in the 2604 order code, for loops/programs to be '321' or '351'.

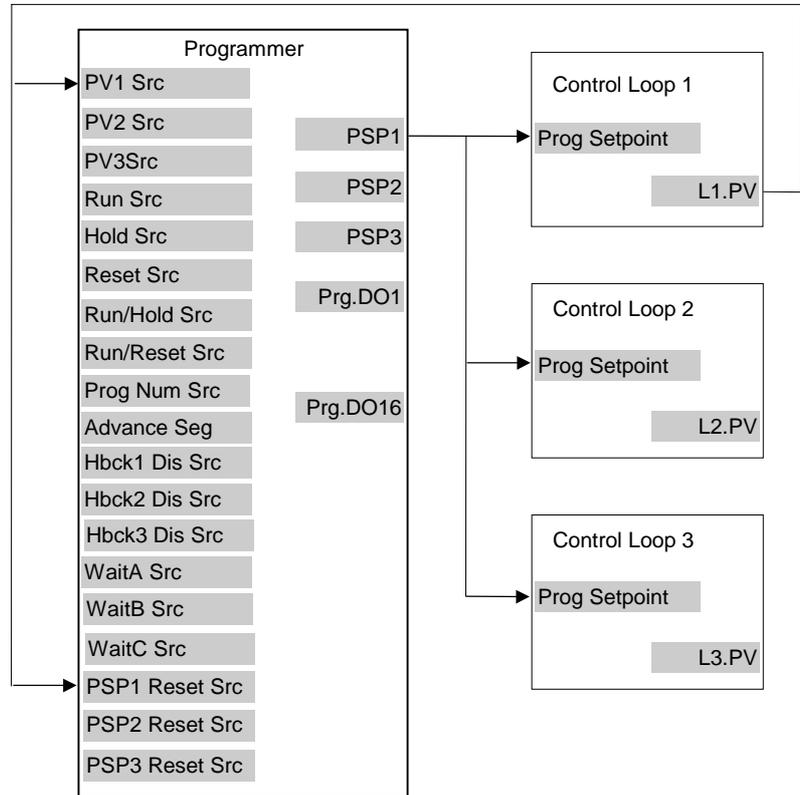


Figure 6-7: Example Programmer Wiring One Profile Three Loops

6.11.1.1.Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page
set 'Num of Loops' = 3
set 'Programmer = Enabled
2. In PROGRAM EDIT/Options Page
set 'Num of PSPs' = 1
(Note: other parameters such as number of digital event outputs, SP range and power failure recovery are also set in this page)
3. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
Set 'PV1 Src' = 00001:L1.PV
This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 1 PV to calculate holdback.
4. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
Set 'PSP1 Reset Src' = 00001:L1.PV
This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 1 PV to servo start.
5. In LP1 SETUP/Options Page
Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 1
6. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page
Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 2
7. In LP3 SETUP/Options Page
Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 3

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

© **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

6.11.2. Two Profiles, Two Loops

This example explains how to configure a 2604 programmer to generate two setpoints which are then used to profile the setpoint for two independent control loops.

In this example PSP1 and PSP2 are soft wired to the program setpoints of loop 1 and loop 2 respectively. Also, the PV of loop1 is wired to the PV1 source, to provide holdback, and the PSP1 reset source, to provide servo start. The latter is repeated for Loop 2. This configuration is supplied from the factory by defining the hardware code field, in the 2604 order code, for loops/programs to be '222' or '252'.

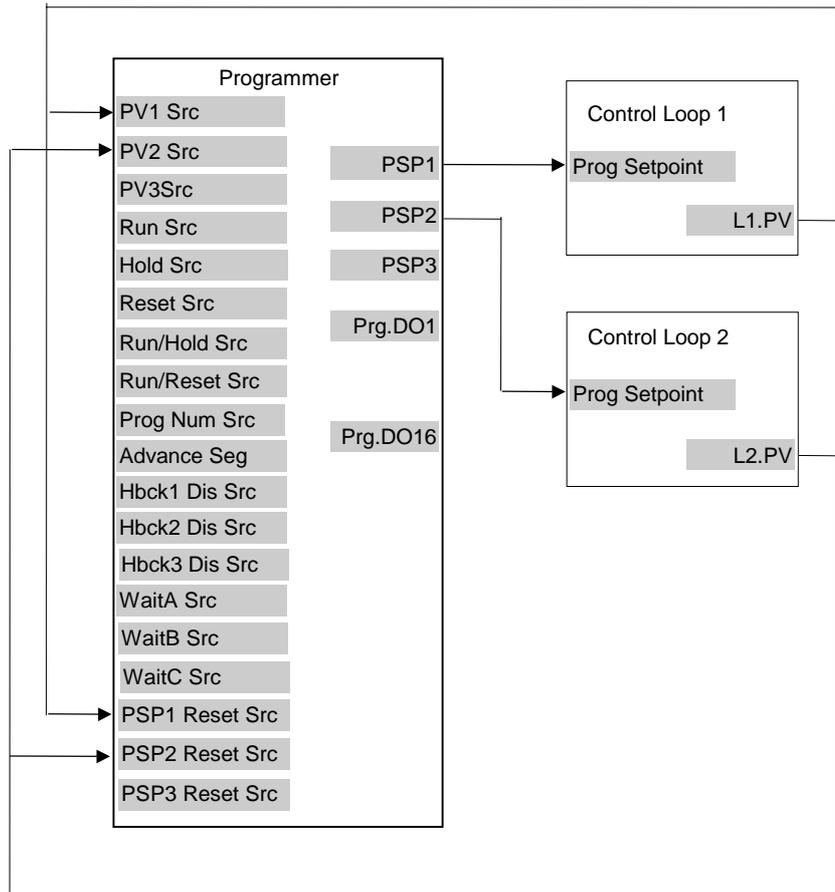


Figure 6-8: Example Programmer Wiring Two Profiles Two Loops

6.11.2.1.Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page set 'Num of Loops' = 2
set 'Programmer = Enabled
2. In PROGRAM EDIT/Options Page set 'Num of PSPs' = 2
(Note: other parameters such as number of digital event outputs, SP range and power failure recovery are also set in this page)
3. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page Set 'PV1 Src' = 00001:L1.PV
This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 1 PV to calculate holdback for PSP1.
4. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page Set 'PV2 Src' = 01025:L2.PV
This connection is required so that the programmer can use Loop 2 PV to calculate holdback for PSP2.
5. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page Set 'PSP1 Reset Src' = 00001:L1.PV
This connection is required so that PSP1 can use Loop 1 PV to servo start.
6. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page Set 'PSP2 Reset Src' = 01025:L2.PV
This connection is required so that PSP2 can use Loop 2 PV to servo start.
7. In LP1 SETUP/Options Page Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP1
Connects PSP1 to become the program SP for Loop 1
8. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page Set 'Prog Setpoint' = PSP2
Connects PSP2 to become the program SP for Loop 2

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

7	CHAPTER 7 DIGITAL PROGRAMMER	2
7.1	WHAT IS THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER?	2
7.2	TO EDIT THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER.....	3
7.2.1	Digital Program Edit Page.....	4
7.2.2	Digital Program 1 to 4 Page	5
7.3	POWER FAIL RECOVERY	5

7 Chapter 7 DIGITAL PROGRAMMER

7.1 WHAT IS THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER?

The digital programmer provides a timed control of a single digital output. It may be used during any segment of a Setpoint Programmer or it may be used independently of the Setpoint Programmer.

A sequence of eight Off and On times may be set for the output and up to four Digital Programs can be set. Figure 7-1 shows an example of a timed digital output program.

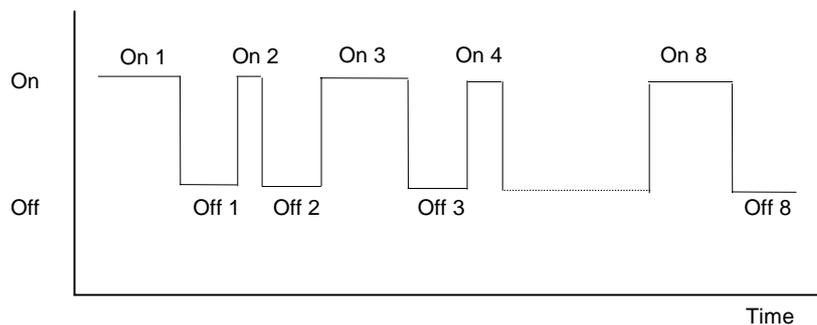


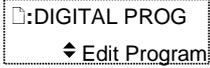
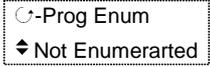
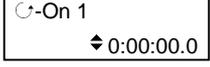
Figure 7-1: An Example of a Programmed Digital Output

Step	Time	Description
On 1	1:00:00.0	On starting the sequence the output will be ON for 1 hour
Off 1	0:30:00.0	The output switches OFF for 30 minutes
On 2	0:05:00.0	The output switches ON for 5 minutes
Off 2	0:30:00.0	The output switches OFF for 30 minutes
On 3	1:00:00.0	The output switches ON for 1 hour
Off 3	0:25:00.0	The output switches OFF for 25 minutes
On 4	0:10:00.0	The output switches ON for 10 minutes
Off 4	0:00:00.0	
On 5	0:00:00.0	
Off 5	0:00:00.0	The step is omitted for any time set to zero
On 6	0:00:00.0	
Off 7	0:00:00.0	
On 8	1:10:00.0	The output switches ON for 1 hour 10 minutes
Off 8	0:40:00.0	The output switches OFF for 40 minutes and is then reset to the start of the sequence

The sequence may be run by:

1. Setting the 'Prog Status' parameter to 'Run'
2. Wiring the 'Run/Hold Src' to:
 - a. A digital input controlled an external source such as a push-button
 - b. A programmer 'User Value'

7.2 TO EDIT THE DIGITAL PROGRAMMER

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  to select ' DIGITAL PROG '		
2. Press  or  to select ' Edit Program ' if necessary		
3. Press  to select the first parameter in the list. This is ' Prog Hi Limit '		Up to four digital programs can be chosen; 0, 1, 2, or 3
4. Press  or  to set an upper limit on the number of programs required		
5. Press  again to select ' Prog Select '		Up to four digital programs can be chosen; <i>Prog 1</i> <i>Prog 2</i> <i>Prog 3</i> <i>Prog 4</i>
6. Press  or  to change the program number if required		
7. Press  to select ' Prog Enum '		The name of the program can be chosen from User Values
8. Press  or  to choose an enumeration		
9. Press  to select ' On 1 '		Tip ☺ To enter a large time period press  and  together. This will underline the mins and hours sections independently each time the se buttons are pressed. The hours/mins can then be raised or lowered using  or  only. The full list of parameters is shown in the following table
10. Press  or  to increase or decrease the on time for the first output in the sequence		
11. Repeat for the eight On and Off periods which make up the sequence		

7.2.1 Digital Program Edit Page

Table Number: 7.2.1.	These parameters edit the digital programmer				DIGITAL PROG (Edit Program Page)
Parameter Name Press  to select	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Prog Hi Limit	Program select upper limit	0 to 3		L3	
Prog Select	Program select	Prog 1 to Prog 4		L3	
Prog Enum	User string for first custom enumeration	Not enumerated Usr01 to Usr 50	Not enumerated	L3	
On 1	On period 1	0:00:00.0 to 99:59:59.9 If this setting is exceeded HHHH is displayed. To reduce the value Press and hold ▼ button	0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 1	Off period 1		0:00:00.0	L3	
On 2	On period 2		0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 2	Off period 2		0:00:00.0	L3	
On 3	On period 3		0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 3	Off period 3		0:00:00.0	L3	
On 4	On period 4		0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 4	Off period 4		0:00:00.0	L3	
On 5	On period 5		0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 5	Off period 5		0:00:00.0	L3	
On 6	On period 6		0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 6	Off period 6		0:00:00.0	L3	
On 7	On period 7		0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 7	Off period 7		0:00:00.0	L3	
On 8	On period 8		0:00:00.0	L3	
Off 8	Off period 8		0:00:00.0	L3	

7.2.2 Digital Program 1 to 4 Page

Table Number: 7.2.2.		These parameters are associated with Digital Programs 1 to 4		DIGITAL PROG (Dig Prog x Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Reset Src	Reset wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf	
Run/Hold Src	Run/Hold (equivalent to Prog Status) wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf	
OP Enable Src	Output wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf	
Reset Disable	When Reset Disable = Off the program is in reset	Off On	Off	L3	
Prog Status	Program status	Hold Run		L3	
OP Enable	Enables the output	Off On	Off	L3	
Reset on PFail	Power fail recovery see 7.3	Off On	Off	L3	
Program Cycles	Number of cycles for the sequence	Continuous to 999	Continuous	L3	
Seg Time Rem	Segment time remaining	0:00:00.0 to 99:59:59.9		L3	
Output	Shows the current state of the output	Off On		L3	
Output (Inv)	Shows the current inverted state of the output	Off On		L3	
Prg End	Program complete Off = prog running On = prog complete	Off On		L3 R/O	

7.3 POWER FAIL RECOVERY

In the event of a power fail to the controller, the parameter, 'Reset on PFail', defines how the controller behaves on restoration of the power.

If this parameter = 'On' then 'Prog Status' = 'Hold' and 'Reset Disable' = 'Off' at power up.

If Prog Status and Reset Disable have been soft wired they override this state.

8.	CHAPTER 8 ALARM CONFIGURATION	2
8.1.	DEFINITION OF ALARMS AND EVENTS.....	2
8.1.1.	Customisable Parameter Names	2
8.2.	TYPES OF ALARM USED IN 2604 CONTROLLER.....	3
8.2.1.	Full Scale High.....	3
8.2.2.	Full Scale Low	3
8.2.3.	Deviation High Alarm.....	4
8.2.4.	Deviation Low Alarm.....	4
8.2.5.	Deviation Band	5
8.2.6.	Rate Of Change Alarm (Negative Direction)	6
8.2.7.	Rate Of Change Alarm (Positive Direction).....	6
8.3.	BLOCKING ALARMS.....	7
8.3.1.	Full Scale Low With Blocking	7
8.3.2.	Full Scale High Alarm With Blocking	7
8.3.3.	Deviation Band With Blocking	8
8.4.	LATCHING ALARMS	9
8.4.1.	Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) With Automatic Reset	9
8.4.2.	Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) With Manual Reset.....	10
8.4.3.	Grouped Alarms	10
8.5.	HOW ALARMS ARE INDICATED.....	11
8.5.1.	Alarm Delay Time.....	11
8.6.	TO CONFIGURE LOOP 1 ALARM TYPE	12
8.7.	ALARM TABLES	14
8.7.1.	ALARMS (Summary Page).....	15
8.7.2.	ALARMS <i>LPI</i> (2 or 3) Page Parameters	16
8.7.3.	ALARMS (PV Input Page) Parameters.....	17
8.7.4.	ALARMS (An Input Page) Parameters	18
8.7.5.	ALARMS (Module 1,3, 4, 5 & 6 Page) Parameters.....	18
8.7.6.	ALARMS (User 1 to 8 Page) Parameters.....	18
8.8.	ALARM WIRING EXAMPLES	20
8.8.1.	Control Loop With High and Low Alarms.....	20
8.8.2.	Loop Alarm Inhibited if Programmer not in Run	22

8. Chapter 8 Alarm Configuration

8.1. DEFINITION OF ALARMS AND EVENTS

Alarms are used to alert an operator when a pre-set level or condition has been exceeded. They are normally used to switch an output - usually a relay - to provide interlocking of the machine or plant or external audio or visual indication of the condition.

Soft Alarms are indication only within the controller and are not attached to an output (relay).

Events - can also be alarms - but are generally defined as conditions which occur as part of the normal operation of the plant. They do not generally require operator intervention. An example might be to open/close a vent during a programmer cycle. The controller does not display the alarm status on the front panel.

For the purposes of the operation of this controller, alarms and events can be considered the same.

8.1.1. Customisable Parameter Names

Throughout this chapter parameter names shown in *italics* are customisable by the user. The name of the parameter may vary, therefore, from instrument to instrument.

Typical customisable parameter names are:

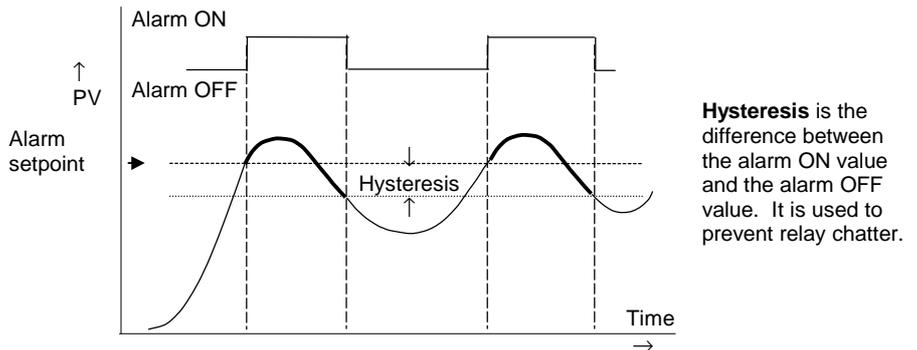
- Alarm names
- Loop names
- Module and Input names
- Custom units
- Promoted parameters

8.2. TYPES OF ALARM USED IN 2604 CONTROLLER

This section describes graphically the operation of different types of alarm used in the 2604 controller. The graphs show measured value plotted against time. The measured value may be any analogue value available in the controller.

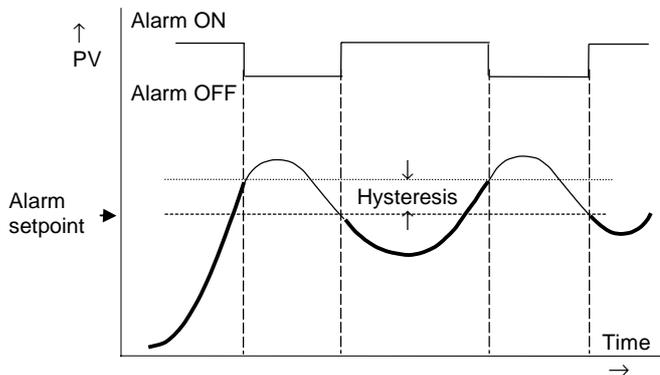
8.2.1. Full Scale High

The Process Variable (PV) exceeds a set high level



8.2.2. Full Scale Low

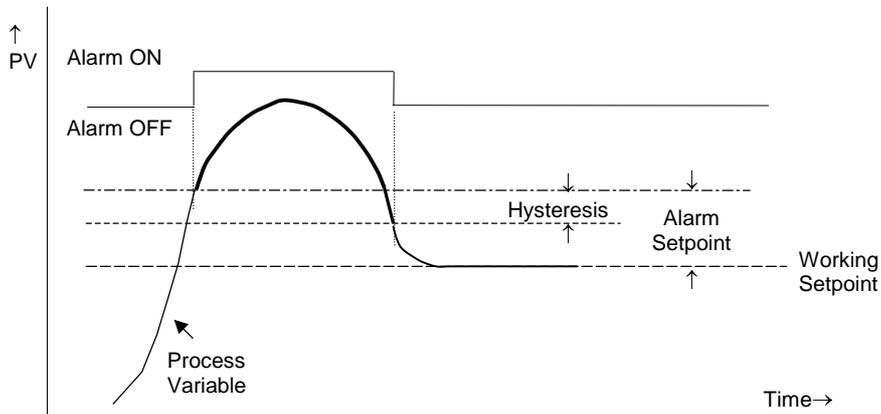
The Process Variable (PV) exceeds a set low level



8.2.3. Deviation High Alarm

The alarm occurs when the difference between the process variable and the setpoint is positive by greater than the alarm setpoint.

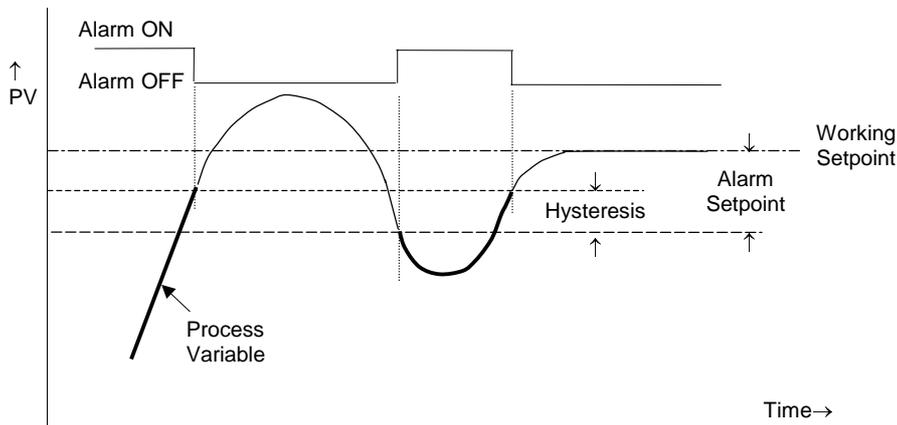
Note: For User Analogue Value the deviation is the difference between the two user wired analogue inputs.



8.2.4. Deviation Low Alarm

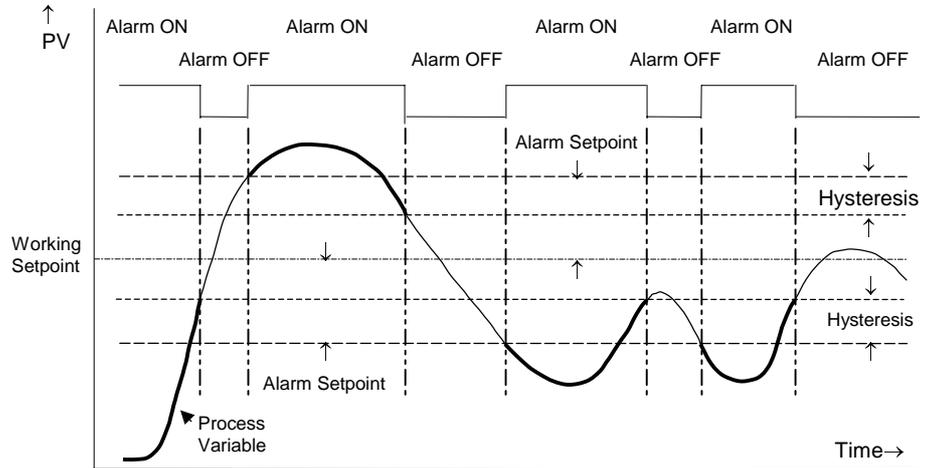
The alarm occurs when the difference between the process variable and the setpoint is negative by greater than the alarm setpoint.

Note: For User Analogue Value the deviation is the difference between the two user wired analogue inputs.



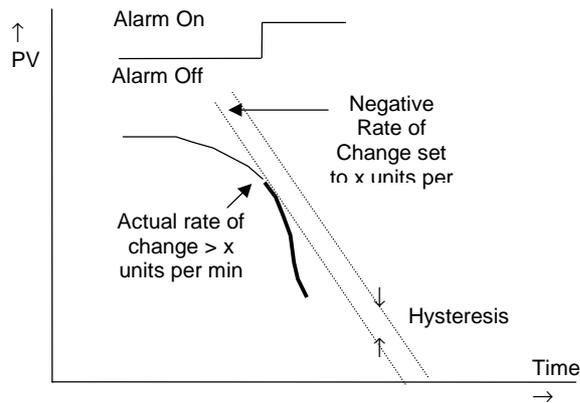
8.2.5. Deviation Band

A deviation band alarm monitors the process variable and the working setpoint and continuously compares the difference against the alarm setpoint. If the difference is either negative by less than, or positive by greater than the alarm setpoint, the alarm state will be active.



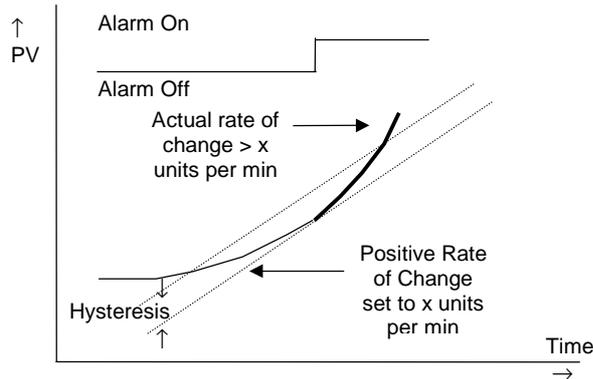
8.2.6. Rate Of Change Alarm (Negative Direction)

The Process Value falls faster than the alarm setting.



8.2.7. Rate Of Change Alarm (Positive Direction)

The Process Value rises faster than the alarm setting.



Notes:

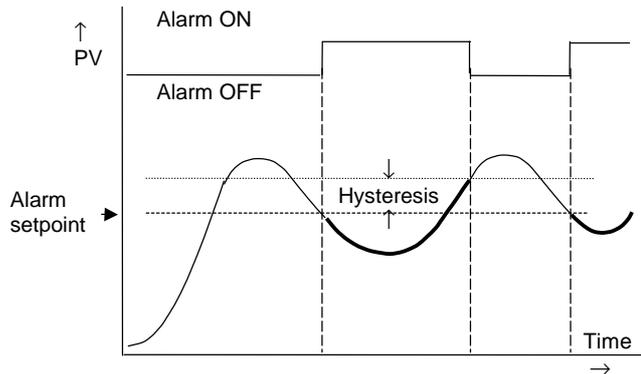
1. Separate alarms are required for positive and negative rates of change
2. An alarm is indicated during the period that the actual rate of change is greater than the set rate of change.
3. There may be a small delay before the instrument displays an alarm condition since the instrument requires several samples. This delay increases if the set value and actual value are close together
4. A hysteresis value of, say, 1 unit per second will prevent the alarm from 'chattering' if the rate of change varies by this amount

8.3. BLOCKING ALARMS

A Blocking Alarm only occurs **after** it has been through a start up phase. It is typically used to prevent alarms from being indicated until the process has settled to its normal working conditions.

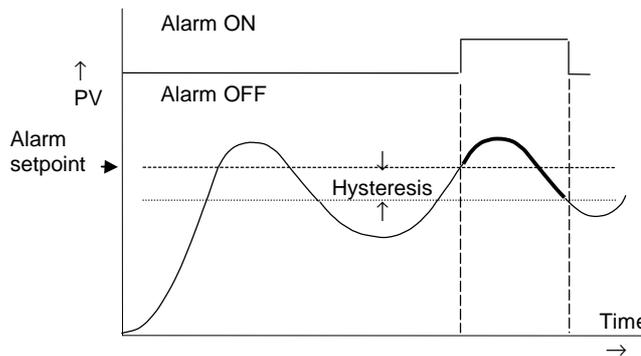
8.3.1. Full Scale Low With Blocking

The alarm only occurs **after** the start up phase when low alarm has first entered a safe state. The next time a low alarm occurs will cause the alarm to become active.



8.3.2. Full Scale High Alarm With Blocking

The alarm only occurs **after** the start up phase when high alarm has first entered a safe state. The next time a high alarm occurs will cause the alarm to become active.

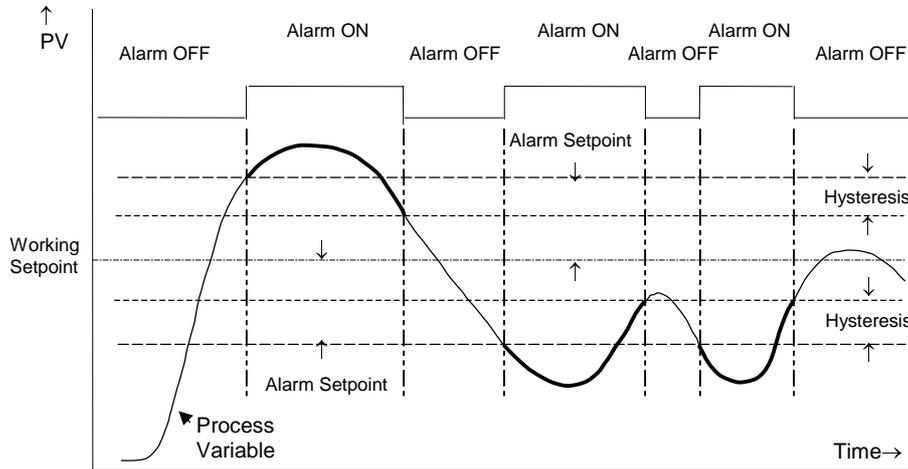


i.e. If the controller is powered up with $PV > \text{'Hi Alarm SP'}$ no alarm is indicated. The PV must reduce below the 'High Alarm SP' and increase again to $> \text{'Hi Alarm SP'}$. The alarm condition will then be indicated.

If the controller is powered up with $PV < \text{'Hi Alarm SP'}$ an alarm is indicated as soon as $PV > \text{'Hi Alarm SP'}$

8.3.3. Deviation Band With Blocking

The alarm only occurs **after** the start up phase when low deviation alarm has first entered a safe state. The next time an alarm occurs, whether high band or low band will cause the alarm to become active.



8.4. LATCHING ALARMS

The alarm is indicated until it is acknowledged by the user. Acknowledgement of an alarm can be through the controller front buttons, from an external source using a digital input to the controller or through digital communications.

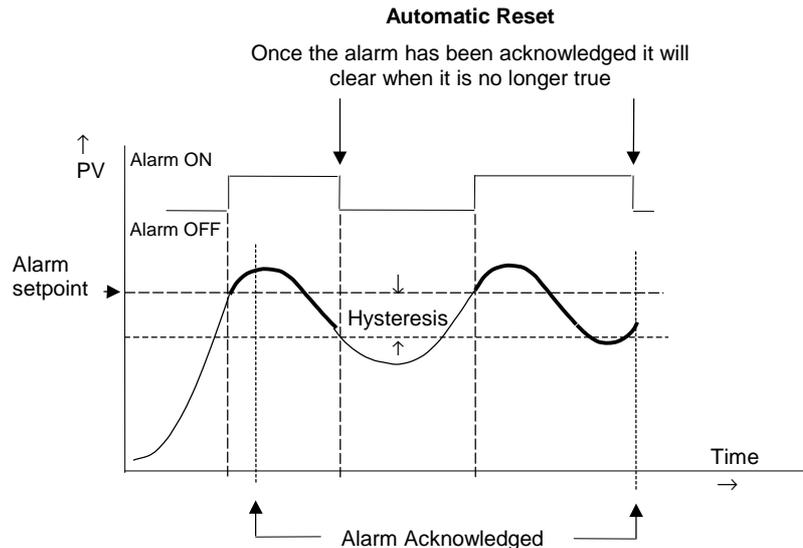
There are two ways that the alarm can be acknowledged:

1. **Automatic Reset.** The alarm continues to be active until both the alarm condition is removed AND the alarm is acknowledged. The acknowledgement can occur **BEFORE** the alarm condition is removed.
2. **Manual Reset.** The alarm continues to be active until both the alarm condition is removed AND the alarm is acknowledged. The acknowledgement can only occur **AFTER** the alarm condition is removed.

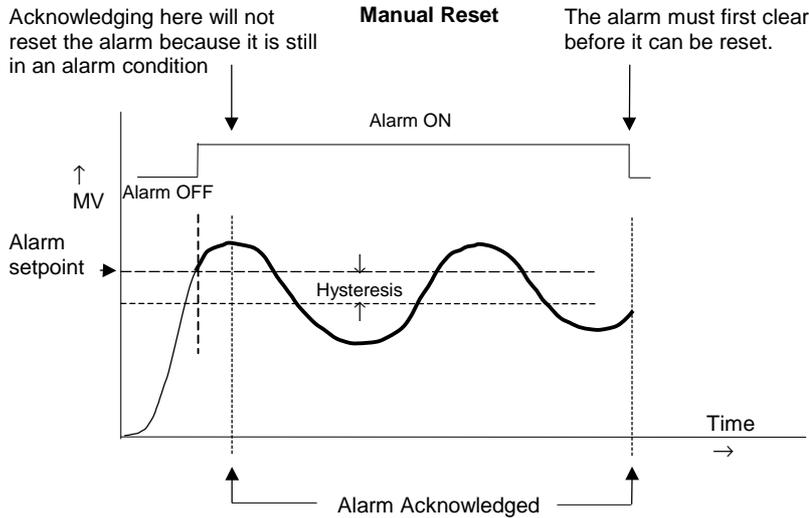
These are shown below for a Full Scale High Alarm

8.4.1. Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) With Automatic Reset

The alarm is displayed until it is acknowledged



8.4.2. Latched Alarm (Full Scale High) With Manual Reset



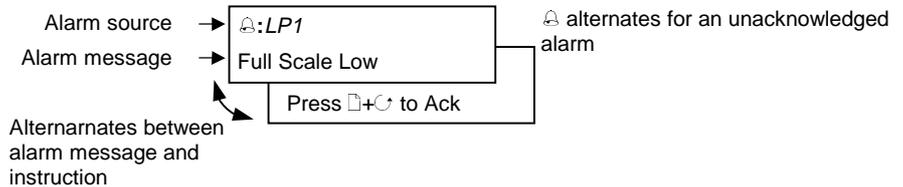
8.4.3. Grouped Alarms

Alarms can be associated with different aspects of the process. They are grouped in accordance with the functions they perform as follows:

Loop Alarms	Alarms associated with each control loop. Examples are: High, Low, Deviation and Rate of Change. Two alarms are available for each loop. On a new controller these are the only alarms which are configured - those listed below must be enabled in configuration level if they are required.
PV Input Alarms	Alarms which operate on the PV input. Examples are: High and Low. Two alarms are available with this input.
Analogue Input Alarms	Alarms which operate on the analogue input. Examples are: High and Low. Two alarms are available with this input.
Module Alarms	Alarms which operate on each plug in module. These can be input or output alarms depending upon the function of the module fitted. These alarms are associated with modules 1, 3, 4, 5, & 6, since module 2 is reserved as an extra memory module
User Alarms	Eight undedicated alarms which can be wired to any variable.

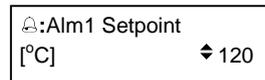
8.5. HOW ALARMS ARE INDICATED

Alarms are indicated when the controller is in normal operating level. When an alarm occurs a message will appear on the lower display which will indicate the source and the type of alarm. The format of this alarm message is:



In addition to the message the red ALM beacon will flash

When the alarm has been acknowledged the ALM beacon will illuminate permanently if the alarm condition is still present and the readout will revert to its previous display. If the alarm is no longer present when acknowledged the ALM beacon will extinguish and the message disappears.



If a relay has been connected to the output of the alarm, it will change state to allow an external beacon or audible device to be activated. By default the relay will de-energise when an alarm occurs and energise when the alarm is acknowledged, subject to the latching configuration.

8.5.1. Alarm Delay Time

A delay time can be set for each alarm between the occurrence of the alarm and the indication of the alarm in the controller. This is useful to prevent spurious alarms from being indicated in some noisy or rapidly changing processes.

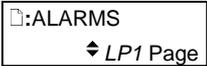
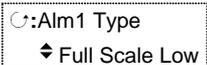
Delay time can only be set in Configuration level.

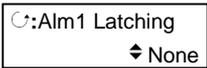
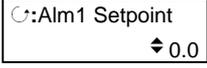
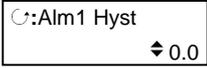
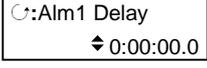
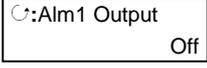
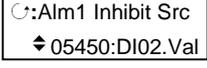
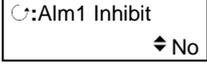
If delay time has been configured for the alarm the user may be aware that the occurrence of an alarm may not necessarily correspond with the display of the alarm

8.6. TO CONFIGURE LOOP 1 ALARM TYPE

There are two alarms associated with each loop. They are shown on the display as Alm1 and Alm2.

The procedure described below is the same for all alarms.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the 'ALARMS' page header is displayed 2. Press  or  to select 'LP1 Page'		Text shown in <i>italics</i> is user definable and will appear if:- 1. User text is enabled in INSTRUMENT page, see section 5.2.5. 2. The text has been assigned to this parameter
3. Press  to select 'Alm1 Type' 4. Press  or  to configure the alarm type		The choices are:- Off Full Scale Low Full Scale High Deviation Band Deviation High Deviation Low Rate of Change
5. Press  to select 'LP1 Ack' 6. Press  or  to select Acknowledge or No		The choices are:- No...No acknowledge Acknowledge...Alarm will need to be acknowledged in operation level. This parameter is also available in Level 1
7. Press  to select 'Alm1 Message' 8. Press  or  to select a message which will appear on the display when the alarm occurs		Default text - 'Full Scale Low', as set in 2 above, will be displayed in operation level when this alarm occurs. A choice of up to 50 messages may be substituted for the default message from the User Text 'library' configured in INSTRUMENT page, see section 5.2.5.

<p>9. Press  to select Alm1 Latching</p> <p>10. Press  or  to select the latching type</p>		<p>The choices are:- None Auto Manual Event</p>
<p>11. Press  to select Alm1 Blocking</p> <p>12. Press  or  to select the latching type</p>		<p>The choices are:- No Yes</p>
<p>13. Press  to select Alm1 Setpoint</p> <p>14. Press  or  to set the alarm threshold value</p>		<p>This parameter can also be changed in Level 1</p>
<p>15. Press  to select Alm1 Hyst</p> <p>16. Press  or  to set the alarm hysteresis</p>		<p>This parameter can also be changed in Level 3</p>
<p>17. Press  to select Alm1 Delay</p> <p>18. Press  or  to set the alarm delay time</p>		<p>The alarm will not be displayed until the time set here has been exceeded.</p>
<p>19. Press  to select Alm1 Output</p>		<p>This indicates the state of the alarm. It is also shown in Level 1.</p>
<p>20. Press  to select Alm1 Inhibit Src</p> <p>21. Press  or  to select the source</p>		<p>The alarm can be inhibited while an event is true. Here it is shown soft wired to Digital Input 02</p>
<p>22. Press  to select Alm1 Inhibit</p> <p>23. Press  or  to select No or Yes</p>		<p>No → the event is ignored Yes → the alarm waits for the event to become true.</p>

8.7. ALARM TABLES

The following alarm pages are available:-

Summary	A summary of all alarms. This table is also available in Level 3 but can be promoted to Level 1, see section 5.2.5.	
Alarms Loop 1	See section 8.6 above	} Alarms for these pages are configured as in section 8.6
Alarms Loop 2	These are the same as loop 1	
Alarms Loop 3	These are the same as loop 1	
PV Input	High and Low Alarms are available for the fixed PV Input.	
Analogue Input	High and Low Alarms are available for the fixed Analogue Input.	
Module 1, 3, 4, 5 & 6	High and Low Alarms are available each module.	
User 1 to 8	These are alarms which are user defined	

8.7.1. ALARMS (Summary Page)

Table Number:		These parameters indicate alarm status			ALARMS
8.7.1.		Alarm parameters in this table only appear if the alarm is enabled. The last three parameters in the table always appear.			(Summary Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value		Default	Access Level
<i>LP1 Ack1</i>	Loop 1 alarm 1 acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>LP1 Ack2</i>	Loop 1 alarm 2 acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>LP2 Ack1</i>	Loop 2 alarm 1 acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>LP2 Ack2</i>	Loop 2 alarm 2 acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>LP3 Ack1</i>	Loop 3 alarm 1 acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>LP3 Ack2</i>	Loop 3 alarm 2 acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>PV Alm AckH</i>	PV Input high alarm acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>PV Alm AckL</i>	PV Input low alarm acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>An Alm AckH</i>	Analogue Input high alarm acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>An Alm AckL</i>	Analogue Input low alarm acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>Module 1A 1 AckH</i>	Module 1 high alarm acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
<i>Module 1A 1 AckL</i>	Module 1 low alarm acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
The above two alarms are repeated for Module 3, 4, 5 and 6 if the modules are fitted					
User 1 Ack	User defined alarm 1 acknowledge	No	Yes		L1
The above alarm is repeated for up to eight user alarms if they have been configured					
New Alarm	Set to true on a new alarm	No	Yes		R/O
Ack All Alms?	Acknowledges all alarms (Global acknowledge)	No	Yes		L3
Ack All Src	Global Acknowledge Source	Modbus Address			Conf

8.7.2. ALARMS LP1 (2 or 3) Page Parameters

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	ALARMS
				(LP1) Page
Table Number: 8.6.2. These parameters configure the Loop 1 alarms. ALARMS (LP1) Page Alarm 1 parameters only appear if 'Alm 1 Type' ≠ 'None' Alarm 2 parameters only appear if 'Alm 2 Type' ≠ 'None'				
Alm1 Type	Alarm 1 Type	Off Full Scale Low Full Scale High Deviation Band Deviation High Deviation Low Rate of Change	As order code	Conf
LP1 Ack	Group alarm acknowledge for loop 1. Acknowledges both loop alarms.	No Acknowledge	No	L1
Alm1 Message	Alarm 1 message. Use △ or ▽ to choose from User Text library set up in section 5.2.6.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf
Alm1 Latching	Alarm 1 latching. Use △ or ▽ to choose latching type	None Auto Manual Event	None	Conf
Alm1 Blocking	Alarm 1 blocking. Use △ or ▽ to enable/disable	No Yes	No	Conf
Alm1 Setpoint	Alarm 1 Setpoint	Controller range	0.0	L1
Alm1 Hyst	Alarm 1 hysteresis	Controller range		L3
Alm1 Delay	Alarm 1 delay	0:00:00.0	0.0	Conf
Alm1 Output	Alarm 1 output	Off On	Off	R/O
Alm1 Inhibit Src	Alarm 1 inhibit source	Modbus address	None	Conf
Alm1 Inhibit	Alarm 1 inhibit	No Yes	No	L3

Alm2 parameters are the same as Alm1 when 'Alm2 Type' ≠ 'None'

8.7.3. ALARMS (PV Input Page) Parameters

Table Number: 8.7.3.		These parameters set up the alarms associated with the PV input signal. They are only displayed if enabled using the parameter FS Hi Alarm or FS Lo Alarm		ALARMS (PV Input)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
FS Hi Alarm	Full scale high alarm enable/disable	Disabled Enabled	Disabled	Conf	
<i>PV Alm Ack</i>	Group acknowledge. Acknowledges both Hi and Lo alarms	No Acknowledge		L1	
FS Hi Message	Full scale high message. Use \triangle or ∇ to choose from the User Text messages set up in section 5.2.6.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf	
FS Hi Blocking	Full scale high blocking. Use \triangle or ∇ to enable/disable	No Yes		Conf	
FS Hi Latching	Full scale high latching. Use \triangle or ∇ to choose latching type	None Auto Manual Event		Conf	
FS Hi Setpoint	Full Scale High Alarm (1) Setpoint	Controller range		L1	
FS Hi Hyst	Full Scale High alarm (1) hysteresis	Controller range		L3	
FS Hi Delay	Full Scale High alarm (1) delay	0:00:00.0		Conf	
FS Hi Output	Full Scale High alarm (1) output	Off On	Off	R/O	
FS Lo Alarm	Full scale Low alarm enable/disable	Disabled Enabled	Disabled	Conf	
FS Lo parameters are the same as FS Hi parameters if 'FS Lo Alarm' = 'Enabled'					
Inhibit Src	Alarm inhibit source	Modbus Address		Conf	
Inhibit	Alarm inhibit value	No Yes	No	L3	

8.7.4. ALARMS (An Input Page) Parameters

The parameters for the Analogue Input Alarms are identical to the PV Input Alarms

8.7.5. ALARMS (Module 1,3, 4, 5 & 6 Page) Parameters

The parameters for the Module Alarms are identical to the PV Input Alarms. Module alarm pages only appear if suitable modules are fitted.

8.7.6. ALARMS (User 1 to 8 Page) Parameters

Table Number: 8.7.6.		These parameters set up user defined alarms.		ALARMS (User 1 (to 8) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Type	Alarm Type	Off Full Scale Low Full Scale High Deviation Band Deviation High Deviation Low Rate of Change	As order code	Conf	
User 1 Ack	Group alarm acknowledge for user alarm 1	No Acknowledge	No	L1	
Src A	Alarm source A	Modbus address	None	Conf	
Src B	Alarm source B	Modbus address	None	Conf	
Name	User defined alarm name. Use \triangle or ∇ to choose from User Text library set up in section 5.2.6.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf	
Message	User defined message. Use \triangle or ∇ to choose from User Text library set up in section 5.2.5.	Default Text or User defined Text 01 to 50	Default Text	Conf	
Latching	Indicates if the alarm has been configured as latching	None Auto		R/O at L3	

		Manual Event		
Blocking	Indicates if the alarm has been configured as blocking	No Yes		R/O at L3
Setpoint	Alarm Setpoint	Controller range		L1
Hyst	Alarm hysteresis	Controller range		L3
Delay	Alarm delay	0:00:00.0		Conf
Output	Alarm output	Off On	Off	R/O at L1
Val A	Used if the user alarm is deviation. Normally internally wired to the PV	Disp min to disp max		R/O at L3 if wired to PV source
Val B	Used if the user alarm is deviation. Normally internally wired to the SP	Disp min to disp max		R/O at L3 if wired to PV source
Inhibit Src	Alarm inhibit source	Modbus address		Conf
Inhibit	Alarm inhibit	No Yes	No	L3

The above table is repeated for:

User alarm 2
User alarm 3
User alarm 4

User alarm 5
User alarm 6
User alarm 7
User alarm 8

8.8. ALARM WIRING EXAMPLES

8.8.1. Control Loop With High and Low Alarms

In this example two alarms are added to the loop wiring example shown in Section 3.1. Alarm 1 is configured as a high alarm and operates the fixed relay 'AA'. This relay is inhibited until a digital input, 'DIO1' becomes true. Alarm 2 is configured as a low alarm and operates a relay module in slot 3.

----- = Connections made in example shown in Section 3.1

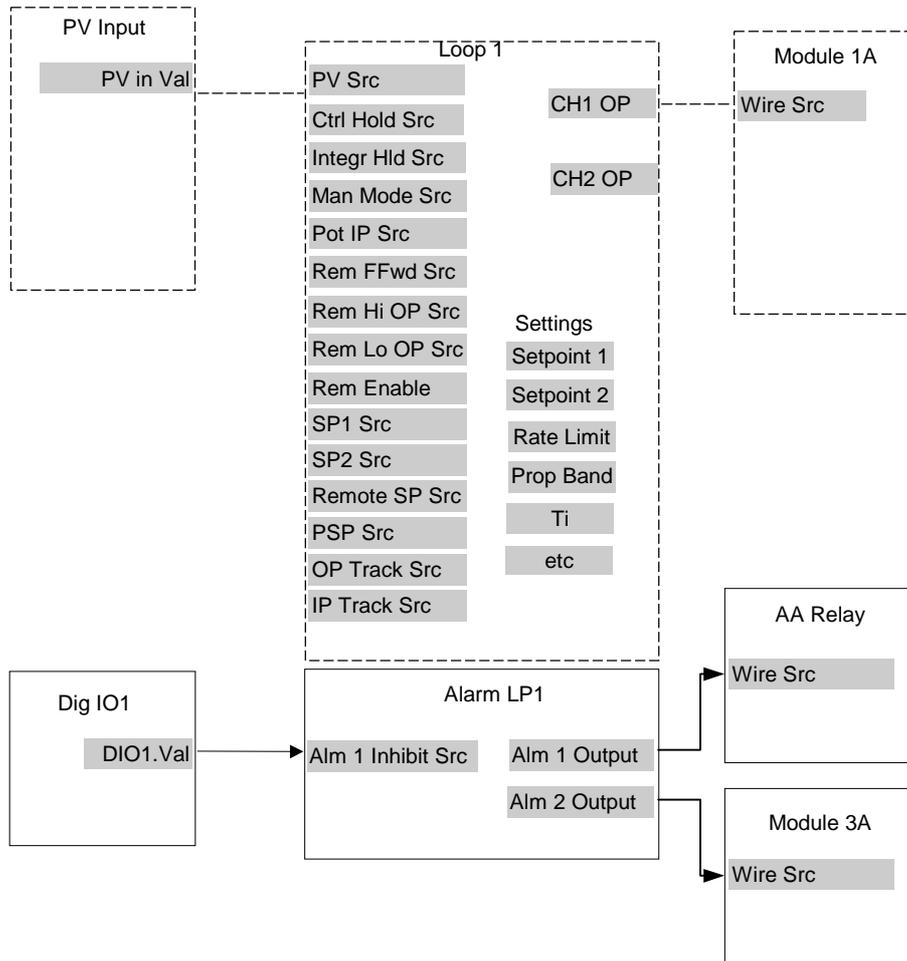


Figure 8-1: Loop Alarm Wiring

8.8.1.1. Implementation

1. In ALARMS/LP1 Page set 'Alm1 Type' = Full Scale High
2. In ALARMS/LP1 Page set 'Alm2 Type' = Full Scale Low
(Note: other parameters such as alarm message, alarm latching, alarm blocking are also set in this page)
3. In ALARMS/LP1 Page Set 'Alm1 Inhibit Src' = 05402:DO1.Val
This connects the alarm 1 inhibit to fixed digital input 1
4. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page Set 'Wire Src' = 11592:L1Alm1.OP
This connects Alarm 1 output to operate the AA relay
5. In MODULE IO/Module 3A Page Set 'Wire Src' = 11602:L1Alm2.OP
This connects Alarm 2 output to operate the relay fitted in module position 3.

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

8.8.2. Loop Alarm Inhibited if Programmer not in Run

In this example the alarm is gated as in the previous example. To determine if the programmer is in Run mode an Analogue Operator (An Oper 1) is used.

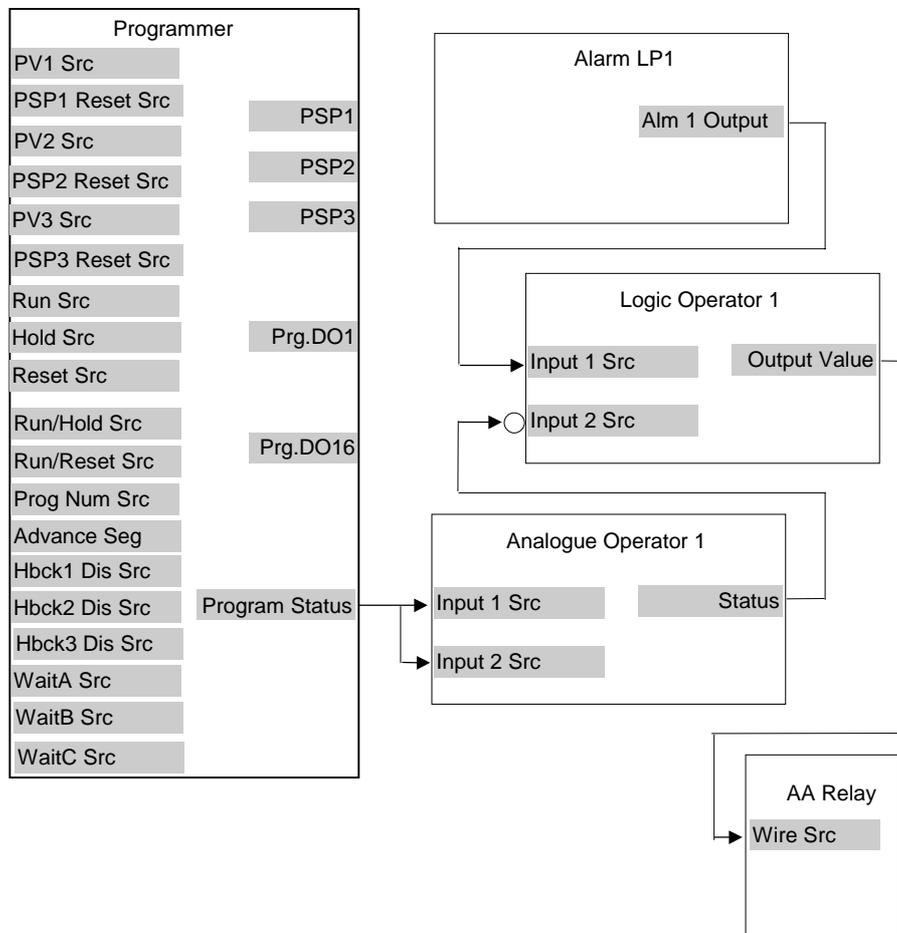


Figure 8-2: Loop Alarm Inhibited if Programmer not in Run

8.8.2.1. Implementation

1. In LOGIC OPERS/Logic 1 Page
set 'Operation' = AND
set 'Invert' = Invert Input 1
Invert input 1 is necessary because the previous operation results in 0 for a true state
Set 'Input 1 Src' = 06239:-----
This is the Status of the Logic Operator
Set 'Input 2 Src' = 11592: L1Alm1.OP
This sets the logic operator such that both inputs must be true before the output status is true
2. In ANALOGUE OPERS/Analogue 1
set 'Operation' = Select Max
set 'Input 1 Src' = 05844:-----
This is the Programmer Status
set 'Input 2 Src' = 05844
It is necessary to connect both inputs of an analogue operator
set 'Input 1 Scalar' = 1
set 'Input 1 Scalar' = 2
set 'Low Limit' = +1
set 'High Limit' = +1
(Note: when Programmer Status = Run the result of the calculation is 0)
3. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page
Set 'Wire Src' = 07176:LgOp1.OP
This connects Logic Operator 1 output to operate the AA relay

9.	CHAPTER 9 LOOP SET UP	3
9.1.	WHAT IS LOOP SET UP.....	3
9.1.1.	LOOP SET UP (Options page)	4
9.2.	SINGLE LOOP CONTROL.....	8
9.2.1.	LOOP SET UP (Wiring page) SINGLE LOOP	8
9.3.	SETPOINT DEFINITION.....	10
9.3.1.	Setpoint Function Block.....	10
9.3.2.	Setpoint Parameters.....	11
9.3.3.	<i>LPI</i> SETUP (SP Aux) Page	12
9.4.	PID CONTROL	13
9.4.1.	Proportional Term.....	13
9.4.2.	Integral Term.....	13
9.4.3.	Derivative Term	14
9.4.4.	High and Low Cutback.....	14
9.4.5.	PID Block Diagram.....	15
9.4.6.	Remote (External) OP Feedback	16
9.4.7.	Analogue Value.....	16
9.5.	GAIN SCHEDULING.....	17
9.5.1.	To Configure Gain Scheduling:-	18
9.5.2.	PID Parameters	19
9.5.3.	PID (Aux) Parameters	21
9.6.	OUTPUT PARAMETERS.....	22
9.6.1.	Table of Output Parameters.....	22
9.7.	MOTORISED VALVE CONTROL	24
9.7.1.	Motor Parameters.....	24
9.8.	DIAGNOSTICS	26
9.8.1.	Diagnostic Page.....	26
9.9.	DISPLAY	27
9.9.1.	Display Page	27
9.10.	CASCADE CONTROL.....	28
9.10.1.	Overview.....	28
9.10.2.	Full Scale Cascade Mode.....	28
9.10.3.	Trim Mode.....	29
9.10.4.	Auto/Manual Operation in Cascade	30
9.10.5.	Cascade Controller Block Diagrams.....	31
9.10.6.	LOOP SETUP (Wiring page) for Cascade Loop.....	32
9.10.7.	Cascade Parameters	34
9.10.8.	Cascade Wiring Example.....	35
9.11.	RATIO CONTROL.....	37
9.11.1.	Overview.....	37
9.11.2.	Basic Ratio Control.....	37

9.11.3.	Controller Configured For Ratio	38
9.11.4.	Ratio Parameters.....	39
9.11.5.	Ratio Wiring Example	40
9.12.	OVERIDE CONTROL	42
9.12.1.	Overview	42
9.12.2.	Simple Override.....	42
9.12.3.	Controller Configured For Override.....	43
9.12.4.	Override Parameters	45
9.12.5.	Override Wiring Example.....	46
9.13.	LOOP2 SET UP.....	48
9.14.	LOOP3 SET UP.....	48

9. Chapter 9 Loop Set Up

In the controller LOOP SET UP appears after AUTOTUNE in the operator display. In this manual, however, an explanation of how to set up each loop is given before the tuning procedure. Also the order in which each sub-header appears in this chapter is not necessarily the same as the order in which they appear in the controller because single loop control is explained before dual loops.

9.1. WHAT IS LOOP SET UP

The 2604 controller can have up to three control loops. Each loop operates independently and can be configured for On/Off, PID or Valve Positioning control. Additionally, each loop can have an auxiliary loop associated with it, and this allows other control strategies to be implemented such as cascade, ratio and override control. The LOOP SETUP pages allow you to configure the type of control most suited to your process. The pages are divided into a number of sub-headers - briefly described below:-

LP1 (2 or 3) SETUP ▸	SP Page	Allows you to configure the setpoint parameters for a particular loop
Note: Text shown in <i>italics</i> is user definable in configuration mode and may be different from that shown	(SP(Aux))Page	Allows you to configure the setpoint parameters for an auxiliary loop
	Cascade Page	These parameters only appear if the control loop is configured for cascade control.
	Ratio Page	These parameters only appear if the control loop is configured for ratio control.
	Override Page	These parameters only appear if the control loop is configured for override control.
	PID Page	These parameters allow you to set up the three term or PID values for the selected loop. See also Chapter 11 'Controller Applications'
	PID (Aux) Page	These parameters allow you to set up the three term or PID values for the selected auxiliary loop. See also Chapter 10 'Tuning'
	Motor Page	Allows you to set up the values for a valve positioning output when the selected loop is configured for motorised valve control. See also Chapter 11 'Controller Applications'
	Output Page	Allows you to set up the values for the output when the selected loop is configured for analogue or digital control outputs.
	Diagnostic Page	These parameters are for diagnostic purposes on the selected loop.
	(Diag Aux) Page	These parameters are for diagnostic purposes on the selected auxiliary loop.

9.1.1. LOOP SET UP (Options page)

Table Number: 9.1.1.		This page determines the control action (x) See notes for further parameter descriptions		LP1 SETUP Options Page	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Loop Type	To configure loop type	Single Cascade Override Ratio	As order code	Conf	
Control Type ⁽¹⁾	Control type	See note 1	As order code	Conf	
Control Action ⁽²⁾	Control action	Reverse Direct	Reverse	Conf	
Aux Ctl Action ⁽²⁾	Control action of the auxiliary loop	Reverse Direct	Reverse	Conf	
Cool Type ⁽³⁾	Cooling action	Linear Oil Water Fan Proportional		Conf	
Prog Setpoint ⁽⁴⁾	Loop 1 PSP select	PSP1 PSP2 PSP3 None		Conf	
Deriv Type ⁽⁵⁾	Derivative type	PV Error	PV	Conf	
FF Type ⁽⁶⁾	Feedforward type	None Remote FeedFwd SP Feedforward PV Feedforward		Conf	
Force Man Mode ⁽⁷⁾	Forced manual output mode.	Off Track Step		Conf	
Rate Lim Units ⁽⁸⁾	Rate limit units	Per Second Per Minute Per Hour	Per minute	Conf	
Bumpless PD	Initialises the manual reset on Auto/Manual transfer	Yes No	Yes	Conf	
Ti/Td Units	Integral and Derivative time units	sec min	sec	Conf	
OnOff SBk Type	Sensor break action.	-100		Conf	

	Only appears if On Off control is configured	0 100		
Prop Bnd Units	Proportional band units	Eng Units and %		R/O
Enable Pwr Fbk	Power feedback enable	Off On		Conf
Rem SP Config	Remote setpoint configuration	SP Only LSP Trim RSP Trim	SP Only	Conf
SBrk Type	Sensor break type	Output Hold		Conf
Manual Track ⁽⁹⁾	Manual track	Off Track		Conf
Remote Track ⁽¹⁰⁾	Remote tracking	Off Track		Conf
Program Track ⁽¹¹⁾	Programmer track	Off Track		Conf
Start SRL Mode ⁽¹²⁾	Defines Setpoint Rate Limit action on power up.	None Hold Clear Hold	None	Conf
Start Rem Mode ⁽¹³⁾	Defines Local/Remote action on power up.	No Change Local Remote	No Change	Conf
Startup Mode ⁽¹⁴⁾	Manual mode on power up	Continue SBrk Output	Continue	Conf
Start WSP Mode ⁽¹⁵⁾	Defines the Working SP action on power up.	None PV Target SP		Conf

Notes

1. Control Types

PID-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 PID only. Use for single channel control only
OnOff-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 On/Off. Use for On/Off control.
VP-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 Motorised valve position output - boundless mode.
VPB-Ch1 Only	Channel 1 Motorised valve position output - bounded mode.
PID-Ch1 PID-Ch2	Both output channels PID. Use for heat/cool type applications
PID-Ch1 OnOff-Ch2	Channel 1 PID control, channel 2 On/Off. Use for single channel PID control plus On/Off Control
OnOff-Ch1&2	Both output channels On/Off. Use for On/Off control

2. Control Action

Direct The output will increase positively if the $PV > SP$.

Reverse The output will increase positively if $PV < SP$.

3. Cool Type

Linear The control output follows linearly the PID output signal, i.e. 0% PID demand = 0 power output, 50% PID demand = 50% power output, 100% PID demand = 100% power output.

Oil, Water, Fan The control output is characterised to compensate for the non-linear effect of the cooling medium - oil, water and blown air. Typically used in extrusion processes.

Proportional The control output is proportional to the error

4. Prog Setpoint

When the programmer is running, this parameter determines from which setpoint profile the loop obtains its setpoint. If None is selected this parameter can be soft wired.

5. Deriv Type

Derivative on PV defines that derivative action responds to changes to PV only

Derivative on Error defines that derivative action responds to changes to differences between SP and PV.

6. FF Type

Feedforward control is used typically to overcome time delays or to compensate for the effect of external influences such as control signals from other loops in the process. This is added directly to the output of the PID algorithm, before output limiting and dual output conversions are performed. Trim Limit applied to the PID calculated output is possible when Feedforward is enabled.

7. Force Manual Mode

Force Manual Mode allows you to select how the loop behaves on auto/ manual transfer.

Off Transfer between auto/manual/auto takes place bumplessly

Track Transfer from auto to manual, the output reverts to the previous manual value.
Transfer from manual to auto takes place bumplessly

Step Transfer from auto to manual, the output goes to a pre-set value. This value is set by the parameter 'Forced OP' in LP_x SETUP/Output Page, section 9.6.

Transfer from manual to auto takes place bumplessly

8. Rate Limit Units

Rate limit can be applied to the SP, such that the change in PV takes place at a controlled rate. It is used where a full programmer is not justified and is typically used to protect the process from sudden changes in the PV.

9. Manual Track

When the controller is switched into Manual mode the working setpoint tracks the value of the PV so that on return to Auto mode is bumpless.

10. Remote Track

When the controller is switched into Remote SP mode the local setpoint tracks the value of the remote SP so that the return to Local SP is bumpless.

11. Program Track

When the controller is running a program the local setpoint tracks the value of the program setpoint. If the controller is switched to Local SP the transfer takes place bumplessly.

12. Start SRL Mode

Defines Setpoint Rate Limit action on power up.

None = No Change. Setpoint Rate Limit starts up in the same mode as power off

Hold = Setpoint Rate Limit is in hold mode on power up

Clear Hold = Setpoint Rate Limit is active on power up

13. Start Rem Mode

Defines Local/Remote action on power up.

No Change = The controller powers up in the same mode as power off

Local = The controller starts up in Local setpoint mode

Remote = The controller starts up in Remote setpoint mode

14. Manual Mode on Power up

This parameter provides the choice between 'Continue' and 'SBrk Output' as the start up control mode. Selecting Continue ensures that on power up the loop control action will remain at its last state. Selecting 'SBrk Output' forces the relevant loop into the manual mode with 'SBrk OP' (Loopx → SETUP → Output) applied to the output.

15. Start WSP Mode

Defines the Working SP action on power up.

None = No Change. The controller powers up in the same mode as power off

PV = The controller servos to PV on power up

Target SP = The controller servos to the target setpoint on power up

9.2. SINGLE LOOP CONTROL

Single loop control is configured when 'Loop Type' (Options Page) = 'Single'. A block diagram of a simple single loop, single output controller is shown below:

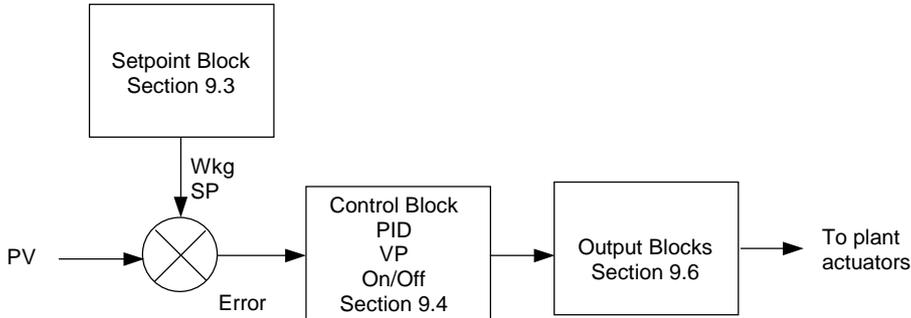


Figure 9-1: Single Loop Controller

9.2.1. LOOP SET UP (Wiring page) SINGLE LOOP

Table Number: 9.2.1.	These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		LP1 SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim Src	OP rate limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Integr Hld Src	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Man Mode Src	Auto/manual select source	Modbus address		Conf
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem FFwd Src	Remote feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote high power limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Lo OP Src	Remote low power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (Table 9.1.1.) = On/Off				

Rem SP Ena Src	Remote setpoint enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Remote SP Src	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
SP Select Src	Internal setpoint select src	Modbus address		Conf
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable src	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Src	SP rate limit src	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf
PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
RemSchedIP	Remote scheduling input source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab Src ⁽¹⁾	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track output source	Modbus address		Conf
Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
Prop Band S	Proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Integral Src	Integral term source	Modbus address		Conf
Derivative Src	Derivative term source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Prop Sr	Auxiliary loop proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Integral	Auxiliary loop integral term source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Derivative	Auxiliary loop derivative term source	Modbus address		Conf

9.3. SETPOINT DEFINITION

The controller setpoint is the **Working Setpoint (WSP)** which may be sourced from a number of alternatives. This is the value ultimately used to control the process variable in a loop.

LSP derives from a parameter called the local setpoint which is the value the operator can alter. This local SP may be derived from one of two setpoints, **Setpoint 1 (SP1)** or **Setpoint 2 (SP2)**. Either of these setpoints may be selected by a parameter in the controller or soft wired to a digital input.

In remote mode, the working setpoint is modified by the **Remote SP + Local Trim**, when 'Enable Rem SP' is set to 'Yes'. When 'Remote Track' (*LPI SETUP/Options Page*) is set to 'Track' the transition to the 'Active Local SP' (SP1 or SP2) takes place bumplessly and the Active Local SP tracks the value of the Remote SP.

In a controller/programmer the Working SP is derived from the output of the programmer function block. In this case the setpoint varies in accordance with fixed rates of change stored within a program.

9.3.1. Setpoint Function Block

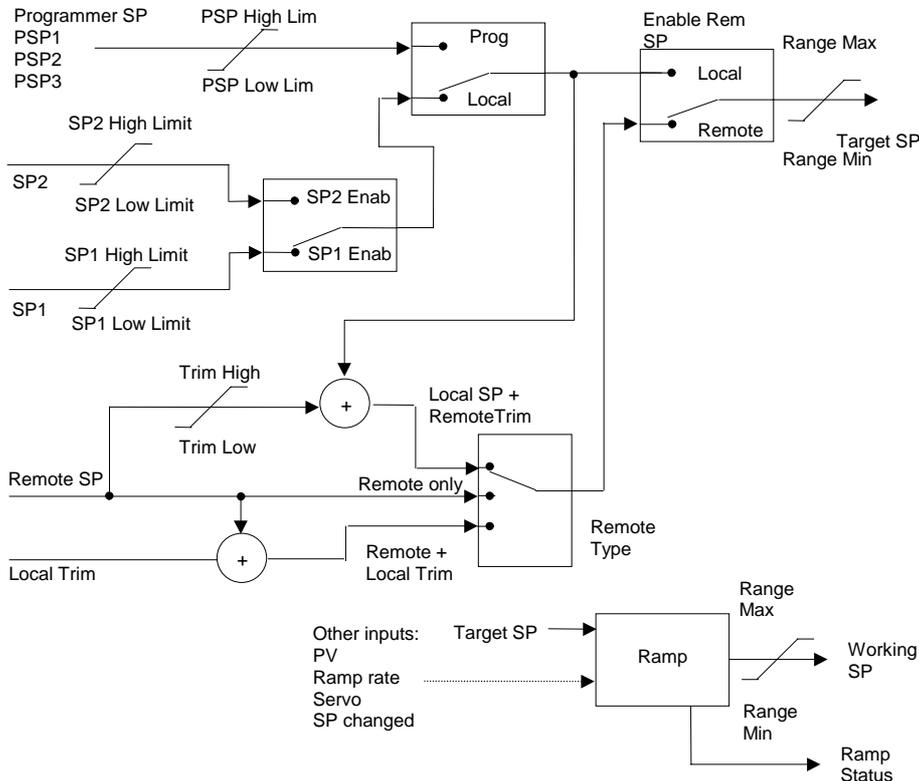


Figure 9-2: Setpoint Function Block

9.3.2. Setpoint Parameters

Table Number: 9.3.2.		This list allows you to configure SP parameters Other parameters are available in operation levels		LP1 SETUP (SP Page)		
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level		
Range Min	PV low limit	Min to max	-200 *	Conf		
Range Max	PV high limit	disp. limit	1372 *	Conf		
SP Select	Internal setpoint select	Setpoint 1 Setpoint 2		L1		
SP1 Low Limit	Setpoint 1 low limit	Range units	-200 *	L3		
SP1 High Limit	Setpoint 1 high limit		1372 *	L3		
Setpoint 1	Setpoint 1 value			L1		
SP2 Low Limit	Setpoint 2 low limit		-200 *	L3		
SP2 High Limit	Setpoint 2 high limit		1372 *	L3		
Setpoint 2	Setpoint 2 value			L1		
Disable Rt Lim	Setpoint Rate limit disable		No Yes		L3	
Rt Lim Hold	SP rate limit hold		No Yes	No	L3	
Rate Limit Val	Rate of change of setpoint	Off to range		L3		
Trim Lo Lim	Local setpoint trim low limit	Range units		L3		
Trim Hi Lim	Local setpoint trim high limit	Range		L3		
Local SP Trim	Applies a trim value to the remote setpoint	units		L1		
Enable Rem SP	Remote setpoint enable	No Yes		L1		
Remote SP	Remote setpoint value	Range units		L1		
HBk Type	SP rate limit holdback type	Off Low High Band		L3		
HBk Value	SP rate limit holdback value	Display range		R/O		
HBk Status	SP rate limit holdback status	Off Holdback		L3		

* If temp units = °C

9.3.3. LP1 SETUP (SP Aux) Page

Table Number: 9.3.3		This list allows you to configure auxiliary loop setpoint limits. It only appears if cascade or override control is configured, see sections 9.10. and 9.12. Other parameters are available in operation levels.		LP1 SETUP (SP Aux) Page		
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level		
Range Min	Auxiliary PV low limit	Min to max display limit	-200 *	Conf		
Range Max	Auxiliary PV high limit		1372 *	Conf		
SP Low Limit	Auxiliary setpoint 1 low limit	Range units	-200 *	L3		
SP High Limit	Auxiliary setpoint 1 high limit		1372 *	L3		
OVR SP Trim	Override loop setpoint trim				L3. Only appears when Override control is configured	
Local SP	The setpoint which the controller reverts to when not in cascade, ratio or override				L1	
Working SP	The current value of the setpoint in use				L1	
* If temp units = °C						

This table does not appear if the Loop Type is Ratio or Single.

9.4. PID CONTROL

PID control, also referred to as 'Three Term Control', is a technique used to achieve stable straight line control at the required setpoint. The three terms are:

- P Proportional band
- I Integral time
- D Derivative time

The output from the controller is the sum of the contributions from these three terms. The combined output is a function of the magnitude and duration of the error signal, and the rate of change of the process value. It is possible to set P, PI, PD or PID control.

9.4.1. Proportional Term

The proportional term delivers an output which is proportional to the size of the error signal. An example of this is shown in Figure 9.3, for a temperature control loop, where the proportional band is 10°C and an error of 3°C will produce an output of 30%.

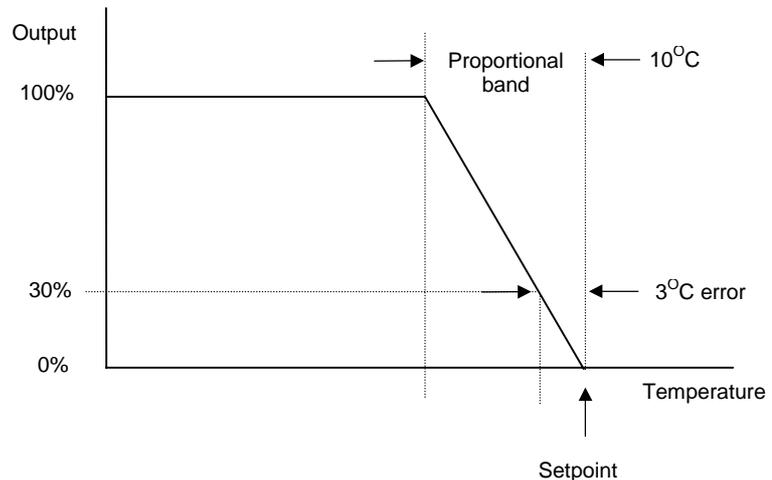


Figure 9-3: Proportional Action

Proportional only controllers will, in general, provide stable straight line control, but with an offset corresponding to the point at which the output power equals the heat loss from the system.

9.4.2. Integral Term

The integral term removes steady state control offset by ramping the output up or down in proportion to the amplitude and duration of the error signal. The ramp rate (reset rate) is the integral time constant, and must be longer than the time constant of the process to avoid oscillations.

9.4.3. Derivative Term

The derivative term is proportional to the rate of change of the temperature or process value. It is used to prevent overshoot and undershoot of the setpoint by introducing an anticipatory action. The derivative term has another beneficial effect. If the process value falls rapidly, due, for example, an oven door being opened during operation, and a wide proportional band is set the response of a PI controller can be quite slow. The derivative term modifies the proportional band according to this rate of change having the effect of narrowing the proportional band. Derivative action, therefore, improves the recovery time of a process automatically when the process value changes rapidly.

Derivative can be calculated on change of PV or change of Error. For applications such as furnace control, it is common practice to select Derivative on PV to prevent thermal shock caused by a sudden change of output following a change in setpoint.

9.4.4. High and Low Cutback

While the PID parameters are optimised for steady state control at or near the setpoint, high and low cutback parameters are used to reduce overshoot and undershoot for large step changes in the process. They respectively set the number of degrees above and below setpoint at which the controller will start to increase or cutback the output power.

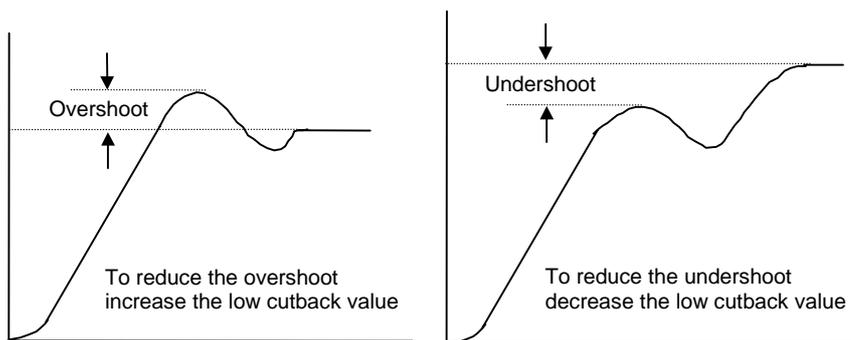
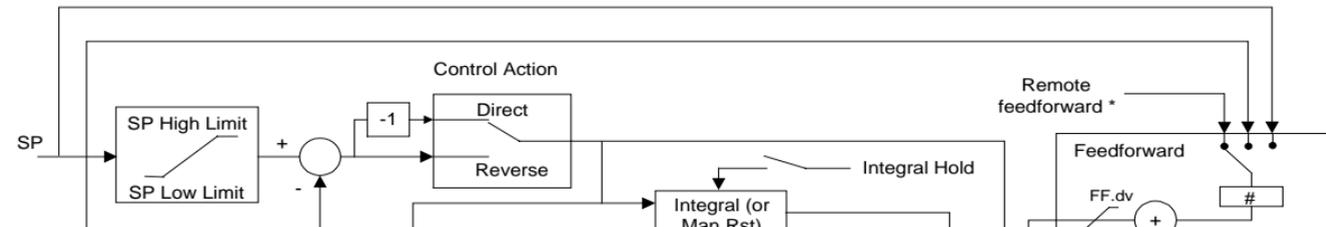


Figure 9-4: High and Low Cutback

9.4.5. PID Block Diagram



9.4.6. Remote (External) OP Feedback

The Remote OP Feedback shown in the PID block diagram, allows an external source of output to stop integral wind up in some applications such as cascade control. The integral will calculate a PID output to match the external value when manual to auto bumpless transfer is activated.

If 'Ena OP Track' (*LPI SETUP/Output*) = 'Yes', the output will be replaced by the 'OP Track Value'. The feedback signal is used for the integral de-saturation. When the 'Remote OP Feedback' is wired the feedback signal is forced to a remote output feedback. When not wired the default internal OP is used for the integral calculation.

9.4.7. Analogue Value

The Analogue Value is a customisable parameter available in the PID (and PID Aux) pages which provides the user with additional flexibility when designing a control strategy. This parameter is called **Analogue Value (An Value 1 to 3)**. It is available for each PID set if Gain Scheduling has been configured and for each loop configured. It can be 'soft wired' in configuration mode to perform a specific function relevant to the particular process being controlled. Examples include: Output Power Limit, SP Feedforward Trim, etc.,.

9.5. GAIN SCHEDULING

Gain scheduling is the automatic transfer of control between one set of PID values and another. Gain scheduling may be used in very non-linear systems where the control process exhibits large changes in response time or sensitivity, see Figure 9-5 below. This may occur, for example, over a wide range of PV, or between heating or cooling where the rates of response may be significantly different. The number of sets depends on the non-linearity of the system. Each PID set is chosen to operate over a limited (approximately linear) range. In the case of the 2604 controller, this is done at a presettable strategy defined by the parameter 'Schedule Type' found in the *Loop SETUP/PID* page in configuration level. The choices are:

PV	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the PV
SP	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the SP
Error	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the error
OP	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value of the OP demand
Set	The PID set can be selected manually
Rem Sched	The transfer between one set and the next depends on the value from a remote source for example, a digital input
IP	
Soft Wired	To a parameter chosen by the user.

The 2604 controller has six sets of PID values – the maximum number which you may wish to use is set up in *Loop SETUP/PID* 'Num of Sets' parameter. You can select the active set from:

1. A digital input
2. A parameter in the *Loop Setup(PID)* page
3. Or you can transfer automatically in gain scheduling mode.

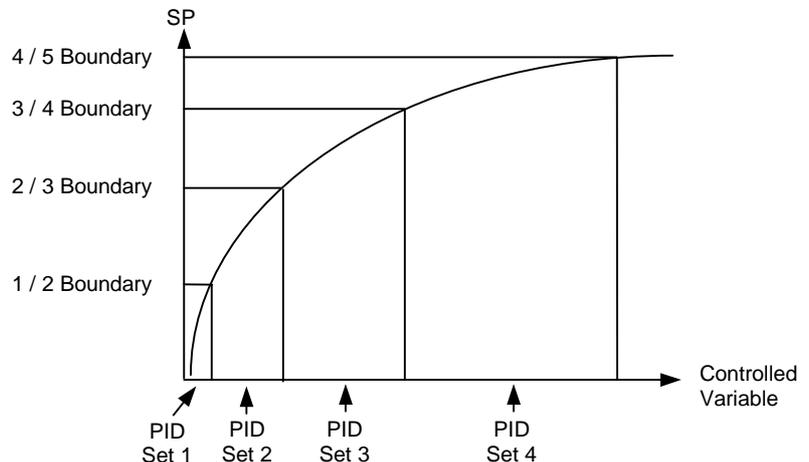
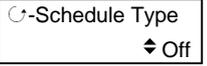


Figure 9-5: Gain Scheduling in a Non-Linear System

9.5.1. To Configure Gain Scheduling:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' LP1 SETUP ' 2. Press  or  to ' PID Page '		Alternatives are <i>LP 2</i> and <i>LP 3</i> . These only appear in the list if configured
3. Press  as many times as necessary to select ' Schedule Type '. 4. Press  or  to select the gain scheduling type to use		The choices are shown in the table in 9.4 The following table lists further parameters in this page. Press  to select each parameter in turn. If the parameter is preceded by  , press  or  to change its value 

Gain scheduling is uni-directional acting on the magnitude of the scheduling variables.

The PID, Cutback Low and High, Manual Reset, Cool Gain, Analogue Value, Output High and Low values must now be set up for each gain scheduling set.

Tuning the PID parameters when using gain scheduling is described further in Chapter 10.

9.5.2. PID Parameters

Table Number: 9.5.2.		These parameters allow you to configure PID sets		LP1 SETUP (PID Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
FF Offset	Feedforward offset value			R/O L3
FF Prop Band	Feedforward proportional band			R/O L3
FF Trim Lim	Feedforward trim limit			R/O L3
Remote FFwd	Remote feedforward	±100		L3
The above four parameters are only shown if FF Type (LP1 SETUP/Options) = Remote, SP or PV FF				
Rem Sched IP	Remote input Only shown if Schedule Type (below) = Rem Sched IP	Display range		L3
Loop Brk Time	Loop break time	Off On		L3
AutoDroop Comp Note 1	Manual reset when Integral turned off	Manual Calc		L3
Control Hold	Control hold flag. Freezes the control output	No Yes		L3
Integral Hold	Integral hold flag	No Yes		L3
Schedule Type	Scheduling type	Off Set SP PV Error OP Rem Sched IP Wired	Off	Conf
Num of Sets	Number of PID sets to use	1 to 6	1	Conf
Active PID Set	The PID set in current use	PID Set 1 to 6		R/O L1
Active An Val	Displays the current analogue value being used			R/O L1
1/2 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 1 changes to PID set 2	Range units		L3
2/3 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 2 changes to PID set 3	Range units		L3

3/4 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 3 changes to PID set 4	Range units		L3
4/5 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 4 changes to PID set 5	Range units		L3
5/6 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 5 changes to PID set 6	Range units		L3
The boundary parameters do not appear if 'Schedule Type' = 'Set'				
Prop Band 1	Proportional Band Set 1	1 to 9999.9 eng units	20	L1
Integral 1	Integral Time Set 1	Off to 999.9 secs or mins	360	L1
Derivative 1	Derivative Time Set 1		60	L1
Cutback Low 1	Cutback Low Set 1	Auto to		L1
Cutback High 1	Cutback High Set 1	display range		L1
Manual Reset 1 Note 1	Manual Reset Set 1 (only applies to a PD controller)	Off, -100.0 to +100.0		L1
Cool Gain 1	Relative cool gain set 1	0.1 to 10	1	L1
Only present if ch 1 and ch 2 are configured in the same loop				
An Value 1	Analogue value (set 1)			L3
OP Hi Limit 1	Output high limit 1	± 100		
OP Lo Limit 1	Output low limit 1	± 100		
The above ten parameters are repeated for sets 2 to 6 if the number of PID sets has been configured to 2 to 6 respectively.				

Note 1: **Autodroop Compensation** is used when the integral term is set to 'Off'. Under these conditions the controller will reach a steady state but is likely to control with an error. When 'Autodroop Compensation' = 'Manual' the 'Manual Reset' parameter can be adjusted to compensate. The effect is to add or subtract a small amount of power manually into the load or actuator.

When 'Autodroop Compensation' = 'Calc' a value is calculated for the 'Manual Reset' which automatically sets the power level. Note that this is a 'snapshot' taken at a particular control point. If the SP is changed, however, the 'Manual Reset' will re-calculate.

Autodroop Compensation may be used in systems which have a very long time of response where it may not be possible to set a long enough integral time constant. Such systems usually operate at a fixed set of conditions so that a once only calculation or manual setting of the 'Manual Reset' can be acceptable.



Manual Reset should be set to 0 when the integral term is set to a value.

9.5.3. PID (Aux) Parameters

Table Number: 9.5.3.		These parameters allow you to set up the PID sets.(Override & Cascade only)		LP1 SETUP PID(Aux) Page	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Rem Sched IP	Remote input Only shown if Schedule Type = Rem Sched IP	Display range		L3	
Control Hold	Aux. Control hold flag. Freezes the control output	No Yes		L3	
Integral Hold	Aux. Integral hold flag	No Yes		L3	
Schedule Type	Scheduling type	As main loop	Off	Conf	
Num of Sets	Number of PID sets to use	1 to 3	1	Conf	
Active PID Set	The PID set in current use	PID set 1 - 3		L1	
Active An Val	Active analogue value			R/O L3	
1/2 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 1 changes to PID set 2	Range units		L3	
2/3 Boundary	Sets the level at which PID set 2 changes to PID set 3	Range units		L3	
The boundary parameters do not appear if 'Schedule Type' = 'Set'					
Prop Band 1	Proportional Band Set 1	1 to 9999.9 eng units	20	L1	
Integral 1	Integral Time Set 1	Off to 999.9 secs or mins	360	L1	
Derivative 1	Derivative Time Set 1		60	L1	
Cutback Low 1	Cutback Low Set 1	Auto to display limit		L1	
Cutback High 1	Cutback High Set 1			L1	
Manual Reset 1	Manual Reset Set 1 (only applies to a PD controller)	Off, -100.0 to +100.0		L1	
Cool Gain 1	Relative cool gain set 1	0.1 to 10	1	L1	
Only present if ch 1 and ch 2 are configured in the same loop					
An Value 1	Analogue value Set 1	Disp range		L3	
OP Hi Limit 1	Output high limit 1	± 100			
OP Lo Limit 1	Output low limit 1	± 100			
The above ten parameters are repeated for set 2 and again for set 3 if the number of PID sets has been configured to 2 or 3 respectively.					

This table does not appear if the Loop Type is Single or Ratio.

These tables are repeated for *Loop 2* and *Loop 3* if these have been configured

9.6. OUTPUT PARAMETERS

Typically the output(s) of the PID function block are wired to:

- The standard relay or logic outputs, configured for on/off or time proportioning pulses
- Relay, triac or logic output module, configured for on/off or time proportioning pulses
- Analogue output module, configured for Volts or mA

9.6.1. Table of Output Parameters

Table Number: 9.6.1		This list allows you to set up the parameters which control the output to the plant		LP1 SETUP (Output Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Loop Mode	Allows the controller to be switched into manual	Auto Manual		
OP Low Limit	Sets a low limit on an analogue output signal	-100% to 100%		L3
OP High Limit	Sets a high limit on an analogue output signal	-100% to 100%	100	L3
OP Rate Limit	Sets the rate at which the output value changes	Off to 99.99 %/sec		L3
OP Rate Lim En	Output rate limit enable	Off On	Off	L3
Forced OP	Sets the output value when the controller is in manual - alternative to bumpless transfer	-100% to 100%		L3
SBrk OP	Sets the level of the output in sensor break	-100% to 100%		L3
CH1 OP	Reads the current value of channel 1 output	-100% to 100%		R/O
Ch1 Hysteresis	Only shown if the output relay 1 is configured as on/off. It sets the difference between relay on and relay off.	Off to 9999.9		L3
Ch1 Min Pulse	Output minimum on time (on/off control)			L3
The above three parameters are repeated for channel 2				
Deadband On/Off control only	Deadband between ch1 and ch2. Only applies if both ch1 and ch2 are configured	Off to 100.0		L3

Target OP	Target output power	-100 to 100%		L1
Rem Lo OP Lim	Remote low power limit	-100% to 100%		L3
Rem Hi OP Lim	Remote high power limit	-100% to 100%		L3
Power FF Val	Current value of power feedforward			L3
Ena OP Track	Output track enable	No Yes		L3
OP Track Value	Track input			L3
Ena Aux OP Trk	Auxiliary Output track enable	No Yes		L3
Aux OP Track	Auxiliary Track input	Display range		L3

9.7. MOTORISED VALVE CONTROL

The 2604 controller can be used for motorised valve control as an alternative to the standard PID control algorithm. This algorithm is designed specifically for positioning motorised valves. It operates in boundless or bounded mode as configured by the 'Control Type' parameter in Table 9.1.1. Boundless VP control does not require a position feedback potentiometer for control purposes. Bounded VP control requires a feedback potentiometer as part of the control algorithm. Note, however that a potentiometer may be used with boundless mode but it is used solely for indication of the valve position and is not used as part of the control algorithm. The control is performed by delivering a 'raise' pulse, a 'lower' pulse or no pulse at all in response to the control demand signal via raise and lower relay or triac outputs.

9.7.1. Motor Parameters

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Travel Time	This parameter is set to match the time taken for the motor to travel from fully closed to fully open	0:00:00.1	0:01:00:0	L3
Inertia	This parameter is set to match the inertia (if any) of the motor	Off to 0:00:00.1	0:00:20:0	L3
Backlash	This parameter compensates for any backlash which may exist in the linkages	Off to 0:00:00.1	0:00:20:0	L3
Min Pulse Time	Sets the minimum on time of the signal which drives the motor	Auto to 0:00:00.1	Auto = 0:00:00:2	L3
VP Pot Lo Lim ⁽¹⁾	Adjusts the valve position low limit in bounded mode set by the potentiometer	0 to 100%	0%	L3
VP Pot Hi Lim ⁽¹⁾	Adjusts the valve position high limit in bounded mode set by the potentiometer	0 to 100%	100%	L3
VP SBrk OP	Sets the action of the valve in boundless mode Only appears in boundless mode, i.e. 'Control Type' = VP-Ch1 Only	VP Pos Lo to VP Pos Hi		L3

VP SBrk Action	Sets the action of the valve if the potentiometer becomes disconnected in bounded mode	Rest Up Down		L3
Valve Position	Indicates the position of the valve	0 to 100%		R/O
Enable Pot Cal ⁽¹⁾	Pot input calibration enable	Off On	Off	L3

Note 1

These three parameters are only displayed if the potentiometer is soft wired, i.e. 'Pot IP Src' is wired to a parameter.

9.8. DIAGNOSTICS

Diagnostic parameters are available at all levels, are read only and provide information on the current operating conditions of the controller.

9.8.1. Diagnostic Page

Table Number: 9.8.1.		This list allows you to interrogate operating conditions of the loop		LP 1 SETUP (Diagnostic Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
LP1 PV	Process Variable	Display range		L1	
LP1A PV	Auxiliary Process Variable			L1	
Working SP	The value of the working setpoint			L1	
Working OP	The value of the working output	-100 to 100		L1	
Error	Value of main loop error (PV - SP)	Display range		L1	
Aux Error	Value of the auxiliary loop error (PV - SP)	-9999 to 9999		R/O	
P OP	Proportional component of the output	-999 to 9999		R/O	
Aux P OP	Proportional component of the auxiliary loop output	-999 to 9999		R/O	
I OP	Integral component of the output	-999 to 9999		R/O	
Aux I OP	Integral component of the auxiliary loop output	-999 to 9999		R/O	
D OP	Derivative component of the output	-999 to 9999		R/O	
Aux D OP	Derivative component of the auxiliary loop output	-999 to 9999		R/O	
FF OP	Feedforward component of output	-9999 to 9999		R/O	
SRL Complete	Setpoint rate limit complete			R/O	
VP Velocity	VP output velocity	-100 to 100		R/O	
Loop Brk Stat	Loop break status flag	No Yes		R/O	
Ext FBack	External Feedback			R/O	
Aux Ext FBack	Auxiliary External Feedback			R/O	

9.9. DISPLAY

In operator levels the LOOP button (section 1.4.3) allows the operator to choose an overview of *LP1*, *LP2* or *LP3* (if these loops have been enabled). Pressing the  button when the loop overview is being displayed will scroll through a list of up to 10 parameters which may be in common use for the particular application. This section shows how to 'promote' these parameters.

9.9.1. Display Page

Table Number: 9.9.1.		This list configures which parameters will be shown in operator level when the  button is pressed		LP 1 SETUP (Display Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Loop Name	Loop name chosen from User Text, see Section 5.2.6.	Default Text or 01 to 50 User Text	Default Text	Conf	
Param Promote	Selects the parameter which is to be promoted to the Loop Summary.	1 to 10		Conf	
Param Address	The modbus address of the parameter selected by 'Param Promote'. See Appendix D.1.	Modbus address		Conf	
Param Name	A name can be selected from User Text (see 5.2.6.) and replaces the number of the 'Param Promote' parameter.	Default Text or 01 to 50 User Text		Conf	
Param Access	Sets the read/write access level of the 'Param Promote' parameter.	Lev 1 Read Only Lev 1 Alterable Lev 2 Read Only Lev 2 Alterable		Conf	
Parameters which have been promoted using 'Param Promote' are listed at the end of this table as a preview of those which will appear in the Summary page in operation levels. For example:- If 'Param Address' = '10247:Sum.PrNam' the following will be displayed:-					
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> Prg:  Reset <i>Program 1</i> </div>					

9.10. CASCADE CONTROL

9.10.1. Overview

Cascade control is classified as an advanced control technique used, for example, to enable processes with long time constants to be controlled with the fastest possible response to process disturbances, including setpoint changes, whilst still minimising the potential for overshoot. It is a combination of two PID controllers, where the output signal from one (the master) forms the setpoint for the other (the slave). For cascade control to be effective the slave loop should be more responsive than the master.

9.10.2. Full Scale Cascade Mode

An example of Full Scale Cascade Mode is shown in Figure 9-6. A controller, the slave, regulates the fuel flow to a furnace. A second controller, the master, measures the temperature but, instead of regulating the valve, it regulates the setpoint of the flow controller. In full scale mode the scaling is such that the master is allowed to adjust the slave by 0-100%.

Remote feedforward is a user defined, wireable parameter. It may be used if there is a requirement for some additional parameter, for example an analogue input, to trim the master PID output value before the slave setpoint is applied. An application may be a liquid temperature control system using cascade control of heater temperature where variations in control rate can be directly fed forward into the slave loop, modifying heater temperature and giving rapid compensation

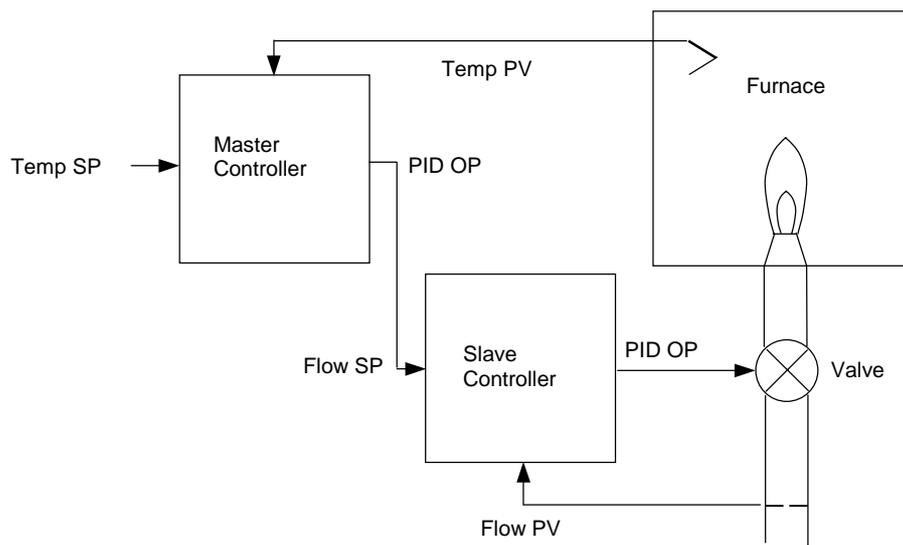


Figure 9-6: Full Scale Cascade Control

9.10.3. Trim Mode

In this example the slave controls the temperature within a furnace. The master is measuring the temperature of the workpiece and controlling the temperature of the slave. In this case the master trims the setpoint of the slave rather than controlling it directly. By limiting the amount of trim the temperature of the furnace will remain within bounds.

Feedforward allows either the master PV, master SP or a user defined variable (CSD FFwd Src) to be fed forward so that it directly influences the slave setpoint.

A typical application for SP feedforward could be in a heat treatment furnace, where it can be used to extend the life of heating elements by limiting their maximum operating temperature.

An application using PV feedforward could be in autoclaves or reactor vessels where it is sometimes required to protect the product from excessive temperature gradients (also referred to as Delta T Control). The effect of this is to limit the furnace temperature to a band around the target temperature.

Feedforward can also be a user defined variable in trim mode in the same way as full scale mode

The implementation of cascade control in the 2604 is available as a standard option. ie it is not necessary to order a dual loop controller to perform cascade control.

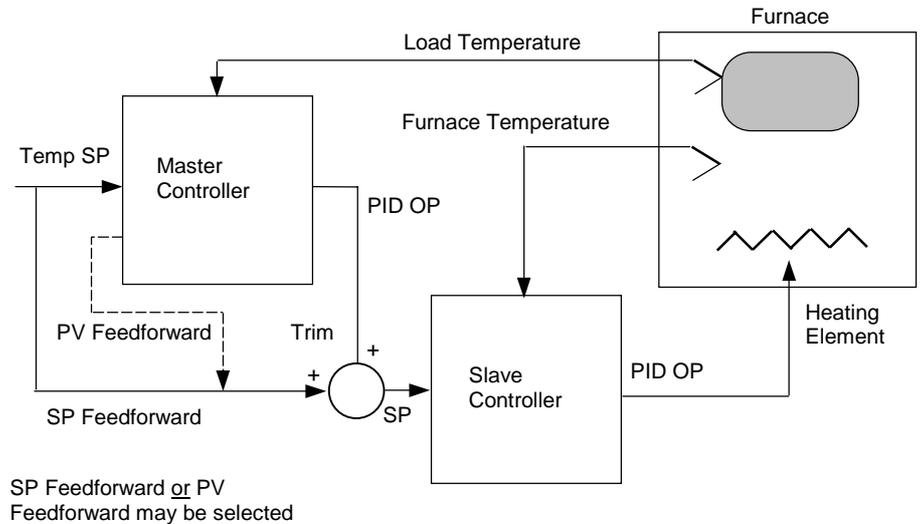


Figure 9-7: Cascade Trim Control

9.10.4. Auto/Manual Operation in Cascade

Auto/Manual operates on both master and slave loops.

When the controller is placed in manual the slave working setpoint will track the value of the slave process value continually, therefore ensuring bumpless transfer.

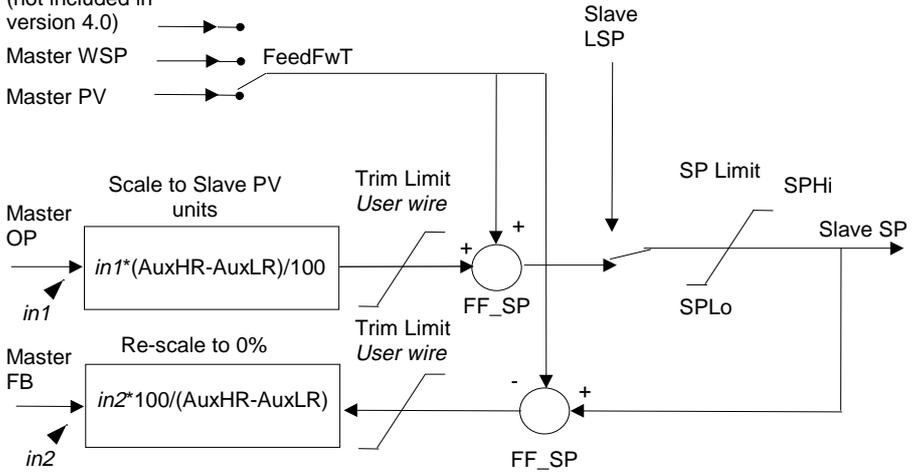
When cascade is deactivated the master loop will monitor the setpoint of the slave loop and provide a smooth transition of output power when the loop moves back to cascade mode.

9.10.5. Cascade Controller Block Diagrams

CSD FFwd Src
(not included in
version 4.0)

Master WSP

Master PV



Note:

This diagram applies to controllers with software version 4.0 or greater
For earlier versions, see Appendix E

Figure 9-8: Cascade Controller in Trim Mode

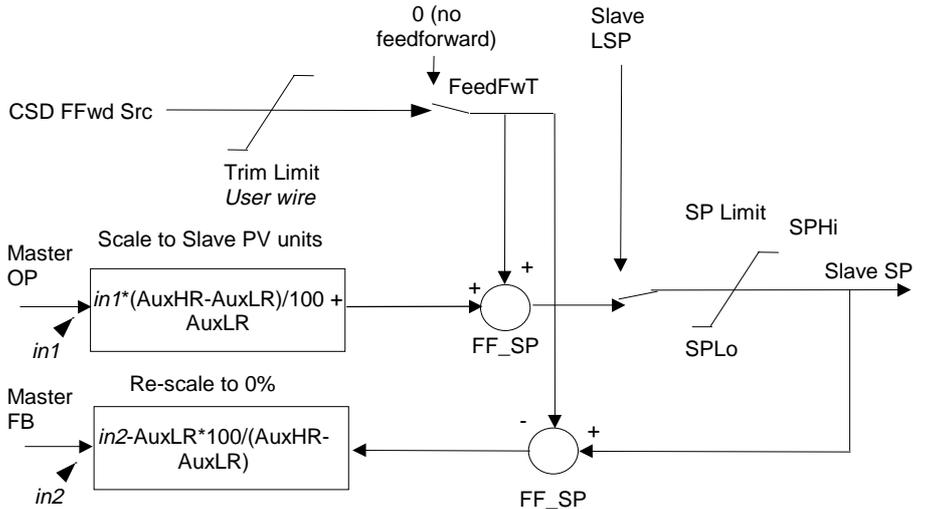


Figure 9-9: Cascade Controller in Full Scale Mode

9.10.6. LOOP SETUP (Wiring page) for Cascade Loop

A controller is configured for cascade operation if 'Loop Type' = 'Cascade' in 'LOOP SETUP(Options)' page, (Table 9.1.1.).

Table Number: 9.10.6.	These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		LP1 SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf
Aux PV Src	Auxiliary PV source	Modbus address		Conf
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux LSP Src	Auxiliary local SP source	Modbus address		Conf
Casc Disable S	Cascade disable source	Modbus address		Conf
Casc FFwd Src	Casc. feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
The above parameter does not appear if FF Type (Table 9.1.1.) = None				
Casc TrimHi Src	Casc. FF trim high limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Casc TrimLo Src	Casc. FF trim low limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf
AuxCtrlHold Src	Aux. freeze control flag src	Modbus address		Conf
Integr Hld Src	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux I Hold Src	Aux. Integral hold flag src	Modbus address		Conf
Man Mode Src	Auto/manual select source	Modbus address		Conf
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem FFwd Src	Remote feedforward src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote hi power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Lo OP Sr	Remote lo power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (Table 9.1.1.) = On/Off				
Rem SP Ena S	Remote SP enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Remote SP Sr	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
SP Select Sr	Internal SP select source	Modbus address		Conf
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf

Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable source	Modbus address		Conf
RtLim Src	SP rate limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf
PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux PID Set Src	Auxiliary PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab Src	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track output source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Trk En S	Aux. OP track enable src	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Trk Src	Aux. track output source	Modbus address		Conf
Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
AuxExtFBck Src	Auxiliary external feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
Prop Band Src	Proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Integral Src	Integral source	Modbus address		Conf
Derivative Src	Derivative source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Prop Src	Auxiliary loop proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Integral Src	Auxiliary loop integral source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Derivative Src	Auxiliary loop derivative source	Modbus address		Conf

9.10.7. Cascade Parameters

Table Number: 9.10.7.		This list only appears if cascade is configured, (see section 9.1) and allows you to set up parameters specific to cascade controllers.			LP1 SETUP (Cascade Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Cascade Mode	Cascade mode	Full Scale FF Full Scale Trim PV FF Trim SP FF		Conf	
Disable CSD	Cascade disable status. (It is sometimes useful to disable cascade when starting a process. This also returns the controller to single loop control using the local SP.)	Off On		L1.	
CSD TrimLo	Cascade low trim limit				
CSD TrimHi	Cascade high trim limit				
CSD FF Value	Cascade feedforward value i.e. The value being fed forward	Range of signal being fed forward		L3	
Work FF Value	Working feedforward value			R/O	
Master FB	Cascade master PID feedback value	Range of slave loop		R/O	

9.10.8. Cascade Wiring Example

This example shows how to configure Loop 1 to be a simple cascade controller. The master PV is connected to the Main PV input and the slave PV is connected to a PV Input module fitted in Slot 3. The control output is a 4-20mA signal which uses a DC control module fitted in Slot 1.

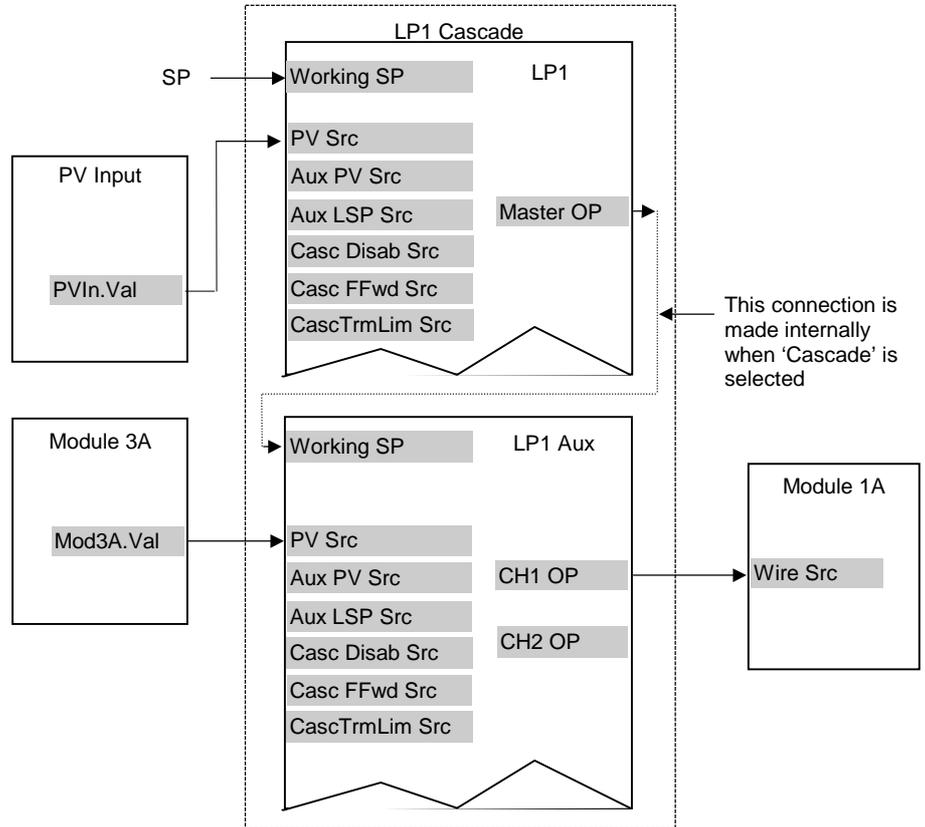


Figure 9-10: Wiring for Simple Cascade Control Loop

9.10.8.1.Implementation

1. In LP1 SETUP / Options set 'Loop Type' = Cascade
2. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring set 'PV Src' = 05108: PVIn.Val
(Appendix D)
This connects the PV input to the master PV of the cascade loop
3. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page set 'Aux PV Src' = 04468: Mod3A.Val
(Appendix D)
This connects the PV input from Module 3 to the slave PV of the cascade loop
4. In MODULE IO / Module 1 A Page set 'Wire Src = 00013: L1.Ch1.OP
(Appendix D)
This connects channel 1(heat) control to the DC output module

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

9.11. RATIO CONTROL

9.11.1. Overview

Ratio Control is a technique used to control a process variable at a setpoint which is calculated as a proportion of a second (lead) input. The ratio setpoint determines the proportion of the lead value that is to be used as the actual control setpoint. The ratio setpoint can be applied as either a multiplier or as a divisor to the second input.

A typical application is in gas fired furnaces where in order to achieve efficient combustion, the gas and air flow supplied to the burners needs to be maintained at a constant ratio.

9.11.2. Basic Ratio Control

The 2604 contains a ratio control function block which can be used in any control loop. Figure 9.11 shows a block diagram of a simple ratio controller. The lead PV is multiplied or divided by the ratio setpoint to calculate the desired control setpoint. Prior to the setpoint calculation, the ratio setpoint can be offset by the ratio trim value and must obey the overall ratio setpoint operating limits. Another useful feature is the automatic calculation of the actual measured ratio which is then available to be displayed on the controller front panel.

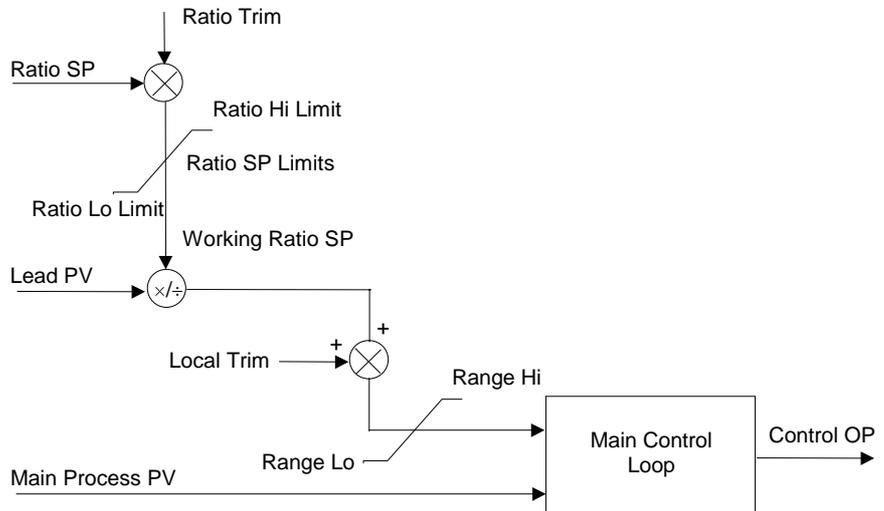


Figure 9-11: Simple Ratio Control Block Diagram

The measured ratio is calculated from the Lead PV and the Process PV. It is also possible to enable 'Ratio Track'. If 'Enable Ratio' is set to 'Off' and Ratio Track is set to 'On', then the Ratio SP will track the measured ratio. This feature allows the user to set the Ratio SP according to the condition of the process.

9.11.3. Controller Configured For Ratio

A controller is configured for ratio operation if 'Loop Type' = 'Ratio' in 'LOOP SETUP(Options)' page.

Table Number: 9.11.3.	These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		LP1 SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable src	Modbus address		Conf
Lead PV Src	Lead PV source	Modbus address		Conf
Ratio SP Src	Ratio setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
Ratio Trim Src	Ratio trim source	Modbus address		Conf
Ratio Enab Src	Ratio enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Integr Hld Src	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf
Man Mode Src	Auto/manual select source	Modbus address		Conf
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf
Rem FFwd Sr	Remote feedforward src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote high power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
Rem Lo OP Src	Remote low power limit src	Modbus address		Conf
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (Table 9.1.1.) = On/Off				
Rem SP Ena S	Remote SP enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Remote SP Sr	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf
SP Select Sr	Internal SP select source	Modbus address		Conf
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable src	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Src	Rate limit source	Modbus address		Conf
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf
PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab Src	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track output source	Modbus address		Conf

Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
Prop Band Src	Proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Integral Src	Integral source	Modbus address		Conf
Derivative Src	Derivative source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Prop Src	Auxiliary loop proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Integral Src	Auxiliary loop integral source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Derivative Src	Auxiliary loop derivative source	Modbus address		Conf

9.11.4. Ratio Parameters

Table Number: 9.11.4.		This list only appears if ratio is configured (see section 9.1.1.) and allows you to set up parameters specific to ratio controllers.			LP1 SETUP (Ratio Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Ratio Resol	Ratio display resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX		Conf	
Ratio Type	Ratio type	Divide Multiply		Conf	
Lead PV	The value of the lead process variable			L1	
Measured Ratio	Measured Ratio			R/O	
Work Ratio SP	Ratio working setpoint			R/O	
Ratio Lo Lim	Ratio setpoint low limit			L3	
Ratio Hi Lim	Ratio setpoint high limit			L3	
Ratio SP	Ratio setpoint			L1	
Ratio Trim	Ratio trim value			L1	
Enable Ratio	Ratio enable	Off On		L1	
Ratio Track	Ratio track mode	Off On		Conf	

9.11.5. Ratio Wiring Example

This example shows how to configure Loop 1 to be a simple ratio controller. The main PV is connected to the PV Input (rear terminals V+ & V-) and the lead PV is connected to the Analogue Input (rear terminals BA & BB). The control output is a valve position signal which uses a dual triac control module fitted in Slot 1.

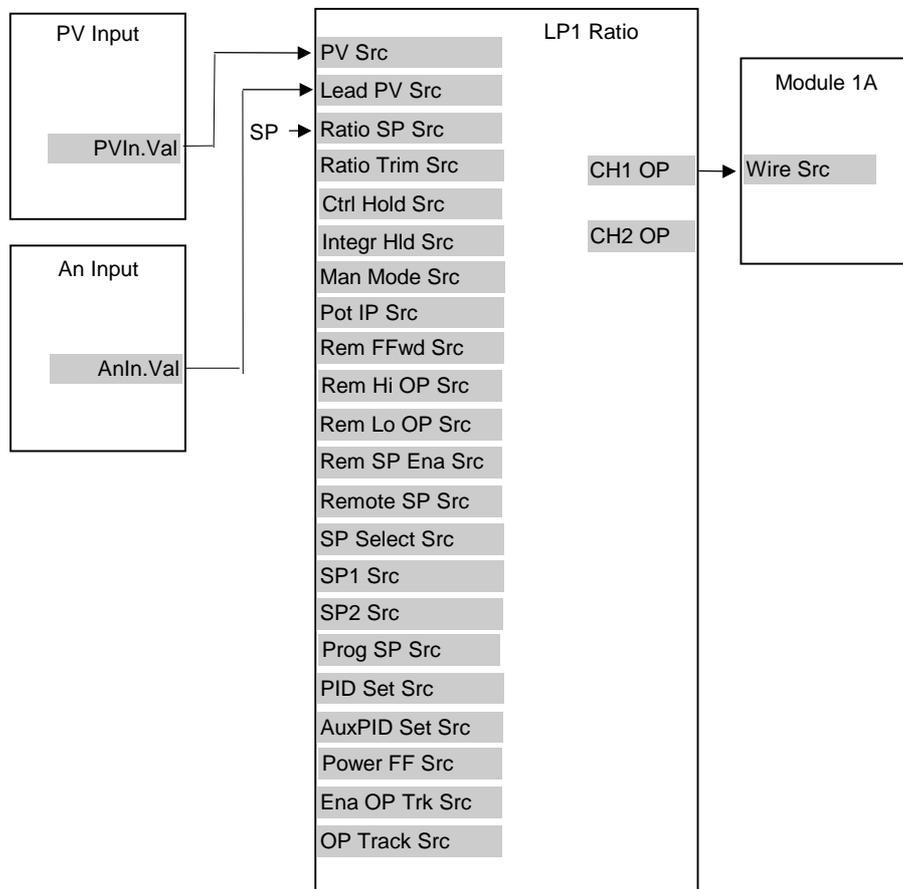


Figure 9-12: Wiring for Simple Ratio Control Loop

9.11.5.1. Implementation

1. In LP1 SETUP / Options set 'Loop Type' = Ratio
2. In LP1 SETUP / Ratio Page set 'Enable Ratio' = On
Set other parameters as required
3. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring set 'PV Src' = 05108: PVIn.Val
(Appendix D)
This connects the PV input to the main PV of the ratio loop
4. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page set 'Lead PV Src' = 05268: AnIn.Val
(Appendix D)
This connects the lead PV input of the ratio loop from Analogue Input
5. In MODULE IO / Module 1 A Page set 'Wire Src = 00013: L1.Ch1.OP
(Appendix D)
This connects channel 1(heat) control to the Dual Triac output module

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

9.12. OVERRIDE CONTROL

9.12.1. Overview

Override Control allows a secondary control loop to override the main control output in order to prevent an undesirable operating condition. The override function can be configured to operate in either minimum, maximum or select mode.

A typical example can be implemented in a heat treatment furnace with one thermocouple attached to the workpiece, and another situated close to the heating elements. Control of the furnace during the heating up period is regulated by the override (heating element) temperature controller which provides a safeguard against overheating. Control of the furnace will switch over to the workpiece temperature controller at some point when the temperature is near to its target setpoint. The exact point of switchover is determined automatically by the controller, and will be dependent on the selected PID terms.

9.12.2. Simple Override

Override control is available with analogue, time proportioning and ON/OFF control outputs. It is not available with valve position outputs. Figure 9.13 shows a simple override control loop. The main and override controller outputs are fed to a low signal selector. The override controller setpoint is set to a value somewhere above the normal operating setpoint, but below any safety interlocks.

There is only one Auto Manual switch for both loops. In manual mode the control outputs of both loops track the actual output, ensuring bumpless transfer when auto is selected. The transfer between main and override PID control is also bumpless.

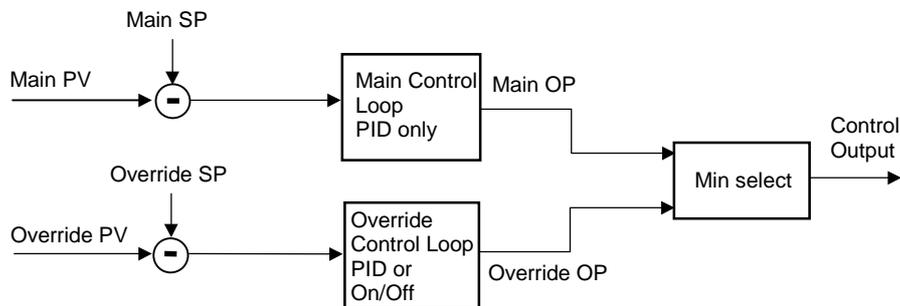


Figure 9-13: Simple Override Control (Select Minimum)

9.12.3. Controller Configured For Override

A controller is configured for override operation if 'Loop Type' = 'Override' in 'LOOP SETUP(Options)' page, (Table 9.1.1.).

Table Number: 9.12.3.		These parameters allow you to soft wire between function blocks.		LP1 SETUP Wiring Page	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
PV Src	Process variable source	Modbus address	05108: PVIn.Val	Conf	
Aux PV Src	Auxiliary PV source	Modbus address		Conf	
Manual OP Sr	Target OP power source	Modbus address		Conf	
OPRtLim En S	OP rate limit enable src	Modbus address		Conf	
OPRtLim Src	OP rate limit src	Modbus address		Conf	
Aux LSP Src	Auxiliary local SP source	Modbus address		Conf	
Ctrl Hold Src	Freeze control flag source	Modbus address		Conf	
AuxCtrlHold Sr	Aux freeze control flag src	Modbus address		Conf	
Integr Hld Sr	Integral hold flag source	Modbus address		Conf	
Aux I Hold Sr	Aux. Integral hold flag src	Modbus address		Conf	
Man Mode Sr	Manual mode source	Modbus address		Conf	
Active Lp Sr	Active loop source	Modbus address		Conf	
OVR Disab Sr	Override disable source	Modbus address		Conf	
OVR Trim Src	Override trim source	Modbus address		Conf	
Pot IP Src	Pot position source	Modbus address		Conf	
Rem FFwd Sr	Remote feedforward src	Modbus address		Conf	
Rem Hi OP Src	Remote hi power limit src	Modbus address		Conf	
Rem Lo OP Sr	Remote lo power limit src	Modbus address		Conf	
The above two parameters do not appear if Control Type (Table 9.1.1.) = On/Off					
Rem SP Ena Src	Remote SP enable source	Modbus address		Conf	
Remote SP Src	Remote setpoint source	Modbus address		Conf	
SP Select Src	Internal SP select source	Modbus address		Conf	
SP1 Src	Setpoint 1 source	Modbus address		Conf	
SP2 Src	Setpoint 2 source	Modbus address		Conf	
Rt Lim Dis Src	SP rate limit disable src	Modbus address		Conf	
RtLim Src	SP rate limit src	Modbus address		Conf	
Rt Lim Hld Src	SP rate limit hold source	Modbus address		Conf	
Prog SP Src	LP1 PSP wire source	Modbus address		Conf	

PID Set Src	PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux PID Set Src	Auxiliary PID Set Source	Modbus address		Conf
Power FF Src	Power feedforward source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Enab Src	OP track enable source	Modbus address		Conf
Track Src	Track input source	Modbus address		Conf
Ext FBack Src	External feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
AuxExtFBck Src	Auxiliary external feedback source	Modbus address		Conf
Prop Band Src	Proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Integral Src	Integral source	Modbus address		Conf
Derivative Src	Derivative source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Prop Src	Auxiliary loop proportional band source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Integral Src	Auxiliary loop integral source	Modbus address		Conf
Aux Derivative Src	Auxiliary loop derivative source	Modbus address		Conf

9.12.4. Override Parameters

Table Number: 9.12.4.		This list only appears if override is configured (see section 9.1.1.) and allows you to set up parameters specific to override controllers			LP1 SETUP (Override Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Override Type	Override type See Note 1	Minimum Maximum Select		Conf	
OVR Target SP	Override target setpoint	Display range			
Disable OVR	Disable override control. See Note 2.	No Yes		L1	
Active Loop	Displays the loop which is controlling at any time			L1	
OVR SP Trim	Override loop setpoint trim	Range limit		L1	
Main OP	Override main output	-100 to 100		R/O	
Override OP	Override output	-100 to 100		R/O	

Note 1:-

Minimum selects the lowest output power from the two loops to be the control output.

Maximum selects the highest output power from the two loops to be the control output.

Select allows either the main output or the override output to be used as the control output depending on the state of a digital input or via digital communications.

Note 2:-

The main control loop is active when Override control is disabled.

9.12.5. Override Wiring Example

This example shows how to configure Loop 1 to be a simple override furnace temperature controller. The main PV is connected to the PV Input (rear terminals V+ & V-) and the override PV is connected to a PV Input module fitted in slot 3 (rear terminals 3C & 3D). The control output is an analogue control module fitted in Slot 1.

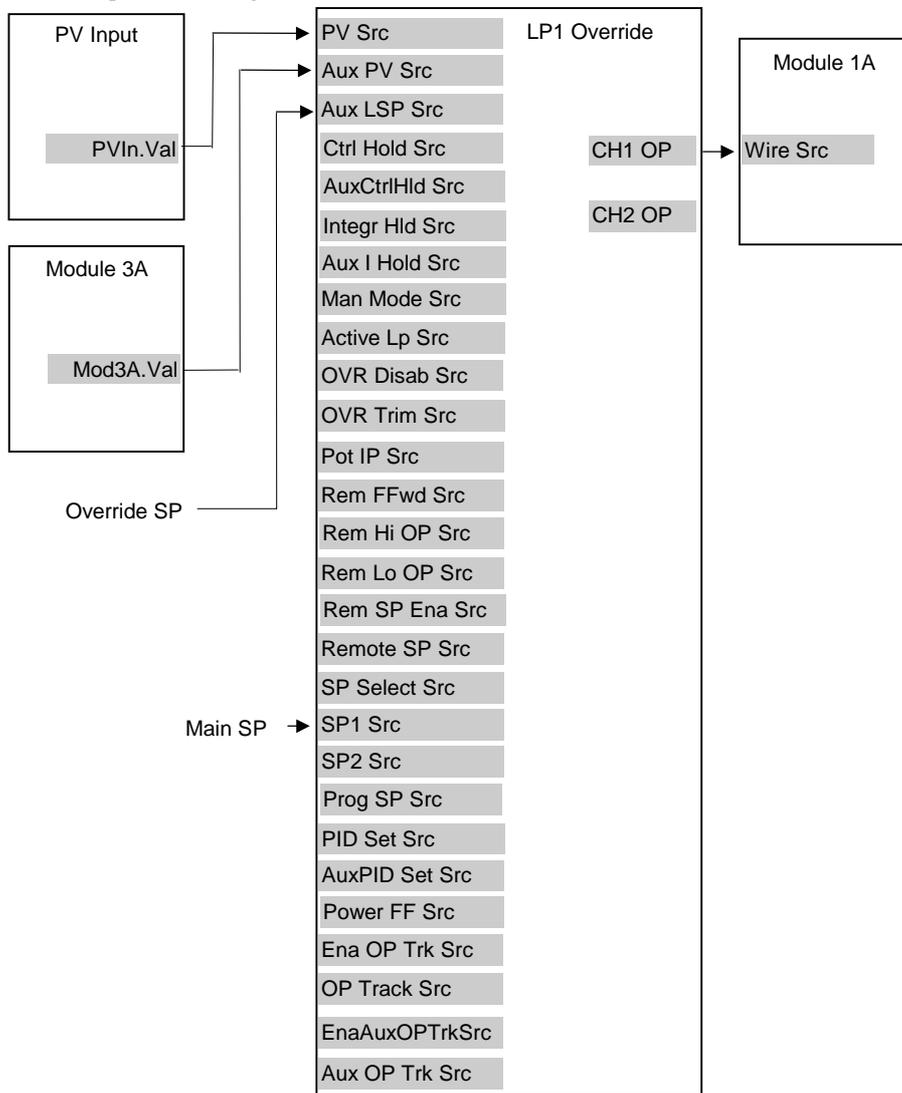


Figure 9-14: Wiring for Simple Override Control Loop

9.12.5.1. Implementation

1. In LP1 SETUP / Options Page
set 'Loop Type' = Override
This action also connects the main SP and override SP to SP1 and SP2 respectively.
2. In LP1 SETUP / Override Page
set 'Override Type' = Minimum
Set other parameters as required
3. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring
set 'PV Src' = 05108: PVIn.Val
(Appendix D)
This connects the PV input to the main PV of the override loop
4. In LP1 SETUP / Wiring Page
set 'Aux PV Src' = 04468: Mod3A.Val
(Appendix D)
This connects the override PV input of the override loop from Analogue Input
5. In MODULE IO / Module 1 A Page
set 'Wire Src = 00013: L1.Ch1.OP
(Appendix D)
This connects channel I(heat) control to the Analogue output module

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

9.13. LOOP2 SET UP

All pages listed in the previous sections are repeated for Loop 2.

9.14. LOOP3 SET UP

All pages listed in the previous sections are repeated for Loop 3.

10.	CHAPTER 10 TUNING	2
10.1.	WHAT IS TUNING.....	2
10.2.	AUTOMATIC TUNING.....	3
10.2.1.	One-shot Tuning	3
10.3.	TO AUTOTUNE CONTROL LOOP <i>LPI</i>	4
10.3.1.	Carbon Potential Control	5
10.3.2.	AutotuneParameters	6
10.3.3.	How Tuning State is Displayed.....	7
MANUAL TUNING		8
10.3.4.	Setting the cutback values.....	9
10.3.5.	Integral action and manual reset	10
10.3.6.	Valve Position Control.....	10
10.4.	TUNING WHEN GAIN SCHEDULING IS USED	11
10.4.1.	Tuning Procedure.....	11
10.5.	CASCADE TUNING.....	12
10.5.1.	To Tune a Full Scale Cascade Loop	12
10.5.2.	To Tune a Trim mode Cascade Loop	15

10. Chapter 10 Tuning

This chapter describes how to tune your controller to match the characteristics of the process under control.

There are five topics:

- WHAT IS TUNING?
- AUTOMATIC TUNING
- MANUAL TUNING
- GAIN SCHEDULING
- TUNING OF CASCADE LOOPS

This chapter should be read in conjunction with Chapter 9, Loop Set Up.

10.1. WHAT IS TUNING

In tuning, you match the characteristics of the controller to those of the process being controlled in order to obtain good control. Good control means:

- Stable, 'straight-line' control of the PV at setpoint without fluctuation
- No overshoot, or undershoot, of the PV setpoint
- Quick response to deviations from the setpoint caused by external disturbances, thereby rapidly restoring the PV to the setpoint value.

Tuning involves calculating and setting the value of the parameters listed in Table 10-1.

These parameters appear in the *Loop Setup* (PID) list, see Chapter 9.

Parameter	Meaning or Function
Proportional band	The bandwidth, in display units or %, over which the output power is proportioned between minimum and maximum.
Integral time	Determines the time taken by the controller to remove steady-state error signals.
Derivative time	Determines how strongly the controller will react to the rate-of-change of the measured value.
High Cutback	The number of display units, above setpoint, at which the controller will increase the output power, in order to prevent undershoot on cool down.
Low cutback	The number of display units, below setpoint, at which the controller will cutback the output power, in order to prevent overshoot on heat up.
Cool gain	Only present if cooling has been configured and a module is fitted. Sets the cooling proportional band, which equals the proportional band value divided by the cool gain value.

Table 10-1: Tuning Parameters

10.2. AUTOMATIC TUNING

The 2604 controller uses a one-shot tuner which automatically sets up the initial values of the parameters listed in Table 10-1 on the previous page.

10.2.1. One-shot Tuning

The 'one-shot' tuner works by switching the output on and off to induce an oscillation in the measured value. From the amplitude and period of the oscillation, it calculates the tuning parameter values.

If the process cannot tolerate full heating or cooling being applied during tuning, then the levels can be restricted by setting the autotune high power limit ('Tune OH') and autotune low power limit ('Tune OL') in the AUTOTUNE parameters page (Table 10.3.2.). These limits are only applied during the autotune process. However, the measured value *must* oscillate to some degree for the tuner to be able to calculate values.

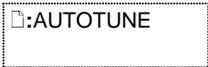
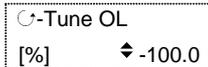
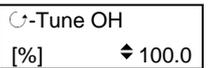
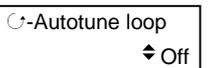
Under normal control the output power limits may be set by 'OP Low Limit' and 'OP High Limit' found in *LPx* SETUP/Output lists. If these limits are set to a lower value than the autotune limits, then the autotune high and low power limits will be clipped to the output limits as soon as Autotune is run.

A One-shot Tune can be performed at any time, but normally it is performed only once during the initial commissioning of the process. However, if the process under control subsequently becomes unstable (because its characteristics have changed), you can re-tune again for the new conditions.

It is best to start tuning with the process at ambient conditions and with the SP close to the normal operating level. This allows the tuner to calculate more accurately the low cutback and high cutback values which restrict the amount of overshoot, or undershoot.

10.3. TO AUTOTUNE CONTROL LOOP LP1

In most cases it will only be necessary to carry out the Autotune procedure when commissioning your controller.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
Set the setpoint to the value at which you will normally operate the process .		
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select 'AUTOTUNE'		Autotune page is at Level 3 by default, but can be promoted to L1 or L2. See 5.2.5.
2. Press  to select 'Tune OL'. 3. Press  or  to select the minimum power limit during tuning		
4. Repeat 2 and 3 for 'Tune OH'		
3. Press  to select 'Autotune Loop' 5. Press  or  to choose the loop to tune		The choices are:- <i>LP1</i> <i>LP1A</i> <i>LP1 Cascade</i> These are repeated for Loops 2 and 3

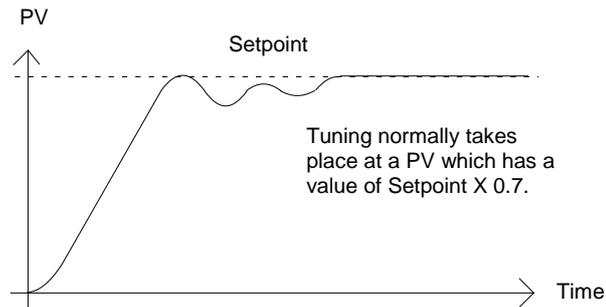
The following now takes place:-

1. The controller induces an oscillation in the PV by first turning the output (power) on, and then off. The power is limited by 'Tune OL' and 'Tune OH'. These two parameters are defaulted to 0 and should be set to values which do not overload the process during tuning. These values are limited by the overall 'OP Low Limit' and 'OP High Limit' set in the Output Page. The first cycle is not complete until the measured value has reached the required setpoint.
2. After two cycles of oscillation the tuning is completed and the tuner switches itself off.
3. When the controller is autotuning the status of autotune is shown periodically on the relevant loop summary
4. The parameter 'Tune SP' is the setpoint value which the controller uses to tune. In a cascade loop this may be derived from the master or slave loops.

5. The parameter 'Stage Time' shows the time spent in any individual stage of the tuning process. If the time in any stage exceeds two hours the auto tune is aborted.
6. The controller then calculates the tuning parameters listed in Table 10-1 and resumes normal control action.

If you want 'Proportional only', 'PD', or 'PI' control, you should set the Integral time parameter or derivative time parameter to OFF before commencing the tuning cycle. These parameters are found in the *Loop Setup (PID)* pages, see Chapter 9. The tuner will leave them off and will not calculate a value for them.

Typical automatic tuning cycle



Calculation of the cutback values

Low cutback and *High cutback* are values that restrict the amount of overshoot, or undershoot, that occurs during large step changes in PV (for example, under start-up conditions). If either low cutback, or high cutback, is set to 'Auto' the values are fixed at three times the proportional band, and are not changed during automatic tuning.

10.3.1. Carbon Potential Control

If the loop is configured for carbon potential control it is necessary to set the proportional band from 'Engineering Units' to 'Percentage' before initiating self tune. This is because the controller requires an error of at least one unit to be able to tune. In the case of carbon potential this signal is very often <1.

To set Proportional Band in Percentage:-

In *LPx SET UP/Options* Page

Scroll to 'Prop Bnd Units'

Press or button to select 'Percentage'

For further information see Chapter 9.

10.3.2. AutotuneParameters

Table Number: 10.3.2.	These parameters allow you to autotune the loop		AUTOTUNE	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Tune OL	Auto tune low power limit. Sets a minimum output limit during tuning	-100 to 100%	0	L1
Tune OH	Auto tune high power limit Sets a maximum output limit during tuning	-100 to 100%	0	L1
Autotune Loop	Selects the loop number to tune	<i>LP1</i> <i>LP1A</i> <i>LP1 (CSD)</i> Repeated for <i>LP2 & LP3</i>		L1
Autotune State	Shows the current state of autotune	Not Tuning Measuring Noise Tuning at SP Tuning to SP Finding Minimum Finding Maximum Storing Time End Calculating PID ABORTED	Not Tuning	L1 R/O
Tune OP	Tune output	-100 to 100		R/O L1
CSD Tune State	Cascade tuning state	Off Initialising Tuning Slave Waiting Waiting Again Tuning Master	Off	L1
Tune SP	The SP selected by the controller at which to tune	Display range		R/O L3
Stage Time	Time spent in an individual stage	0:00:00.0		R/O L3

10.3.3. How Tuning State is Displayed

The loop can only be tuned in operator level. When it is tuning the middle readout cycles between:-

- the parameter it is set up to display (normally SP)
- tune and
- the loop name, as follows:-

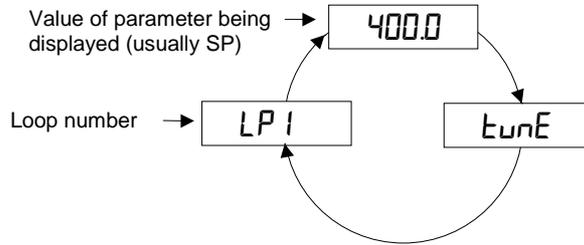


Figure 10-1: Display of Tuning State (Middle Display)

When the Loop View is selected the lower readout cycles between the power output bar graph and the current Tuning State message, as shown below:-

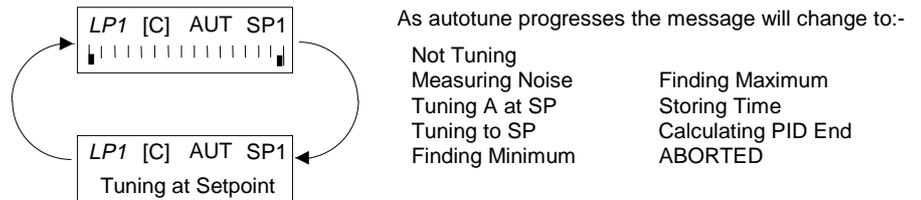
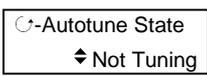


Figure 10-2: Display of Tuning State (Lower Display)

Its state is also displayed in the AUTOTUNE page as the parameter ‘Autotune State’. To display this parameter:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the AUTOTUNE page header, press  until 'Autotune State' is displayed		This parameter displays the state of Autotuning. The choices are: Not Tuning Measuring Noise Tuning A at SP Tuning to SP Finding Minimum Finding Maximum Storing Time Calculating PID End ABORTED

MANUAL TUNING

If for any reason automatic tuning gives unsatisfactory results, you can tune the controller manually. There are a number of standard methods for manual tuning. The one described here is the Ziegler-Nichols method.

With the process at its normal running conditions:

1. Set the Integral Time and the Derivative Time to OFF.
2. Set High Cutback and Low Cutback to 'Auto'.
3. Ignore the fact that the PV may not settle precisely at the setpoint.
4. If the PV is stable, reduce the proportional band so that the PV just starts to oscillate. If PV is already oscillating, increase the proportional band until it just stops oscillating. Allow enough time between each adjustment for the loop to stabilise. Make a note of the proportional band value 'B' and the period of oscillation 'T'.
5. Set the proportional band, integral time and derivative time parameter values according to the calculations given in Table 10-2.

Type of control	Proportional band (P)	Integral time (I)	Derivative time (D)
Proportional only	2xB	OFF	OFF
P + I control	2.2xB	0.8xT	OFF
P + I + D control	1.7xB	0.5xT	0.12xT

Table 10-2: Tuning Values

Note:-

The parameters listed in the above table will be found under the heading **LPx SETUP** where x = 1, 2 or 3 and LPx can be a user defined name.

10.3.4. Setting the cutback values

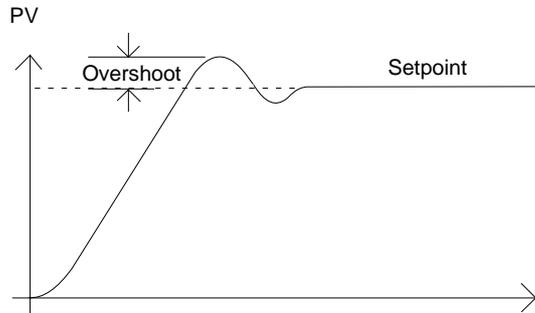
The above procedure sets up the parameters for optimum steady state control. If unacceptable levels of overshoot or undershoot occur during start-up, or for large step changes in PV, then manually set the cutback parameters.

Proceed as follows:

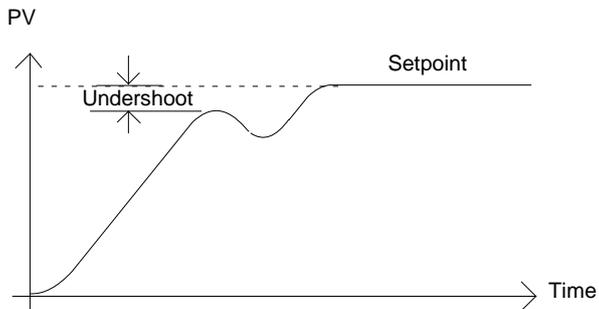
1. Set the low and high cutback values to three proportional bandwidths (that is to say, $Lcb = Hcb = 3 \times P$).
2. Note the level of overshoot, or undershoot, that occurs for large PV changes (see the diagrams below).

In example (a) increase Low Cutback by the overshoot value. In example (b) reduce Low Cutback by the undershoot value.

Example (a)



Example (b)



Where the PV approaches setpoint from above, you can set High Cutback in a similar manner.

10.3.5. Integral action and manual reset

In a full three-term controller (that is, a PID controller), the integral term automatically removes steady state errors from the setpoint. If the controller is set up to work in two-term mode (that is PD mode), the integral term will be set to 'OFF'. Under these conditions the measured value may not settle precisely at setpoint. The parameter 'Manual Reset' in the *Loop Setup* (PID) page is used to compensate for no integral term by providing a small output bleed, and must be set manually in order to remove the steady state error.

10.3.6. Valve Position Control

See section 9.7 'MOTORISED VALVE CONTROL', for an explanation of the additional parameters required for motorised valves and how to set the values of these parameters.

10.4. TUNING WHEN GAIN SCHEDULING IS USED

Gain scheduling is described in section 9.5. It is the automatic transfer of control between one set of control values and another set in non-linear control systems. Up to six sets can be configured and each set is configured to operate over a selected input range where the control operates over a reduced and approximately linear range.

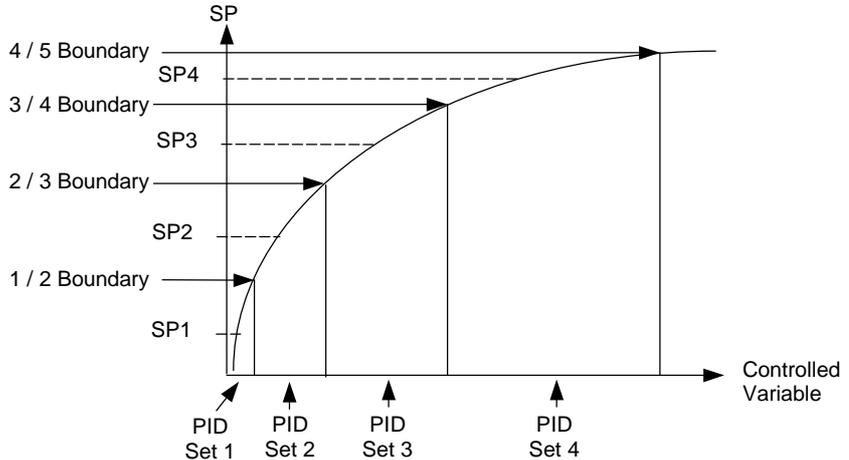


Figure 10-3: Gain Scheduling

10.4.1. Tuning Procedure

In normal operating mode 'Schedule type' will be set to PV, SP, OP, Error, Rem Sched IP or Soft Wired as dictated by the requirements of the process.

1. Select the number of PID sets required from 1 to 6.
2. Set the Boundaries over which each PID set is required to operate
3. Go to Configuration level (if not already selected)
4. Set 'Schedule Type' (*LPx SETUP/PID* page) = 'Set'
5. Go to Level 3
6. Select 'Active PID Set' = 'PID Set 1'
7. Set the Setpoint to control at a point approximately midway between 0 and 1/2 Boundary
8. Select Autotune as described in section 10.3. At the end of tune the values will be automatically stored into PID Set 1. It is possible to limit the output power in each set.
9. Repeat the above for all PID sets. For each set, adjust the SP approximately midway between the two boundaries (Figure 10-1)
10. When all PID sets have been determined, go back to configuration level and re-set 'Schedule Type' to the type required for the process

Note: It is possible to tune each set when Gain Scheduling is selected, but this is not recommended since it is possible that, at the end of tune, the values could be stored into the incorrect PID set. This might occur, for example, if the system is highly oscillatory and the values for, say, PID set 2 are stored when the excursion is in PID set 1.

10.5. CASCADE TUNING

Cascade control uses a combination of two PID controllers, where the output of one (the master) provides the setpoint for the second (the slave). Cascade control was described in more detail in section 9.10. Figure 10.1 shows a cascade controller applied to the control of a furnace load.

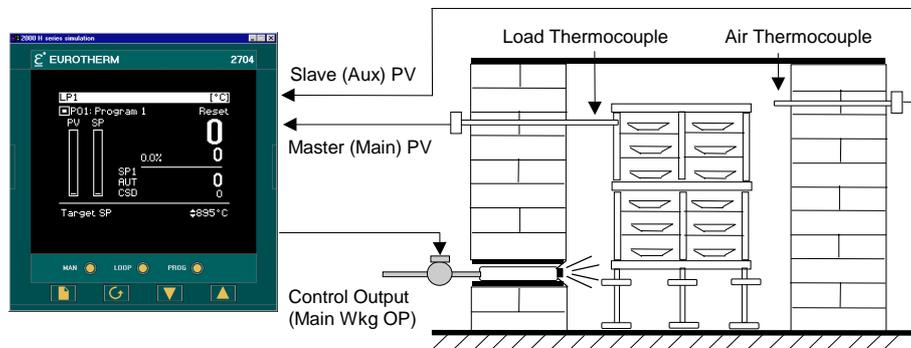


Figure 10-4: Cascade Control of a Furnace Load

When tuning a cascade loop it is necessary that both master and slave loops are tuned. It is recommended that each loop is tuned independently using the procedure below.

Because the slave loop is used by the master loop it must be tuned first.

10.5.1. To Tune a Full Scale Cascade Loop

Step 1. Configure the loop as cascade full scale as follows:-

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| In <i>LPI SETUP/Options</i> | Set 'Loop Type' = Cascade |
| In <i>LPI SETUP/Cascade</i> | Set 'Cascade Mode' = Full Scale |
| | Set 'Disable CSD' = Yes |
| In <i>LPI SETUP/SP</i> | Set 'Setpoint 1' = the normal operating setpoint value for the main loop |
| In <i>LPI SETUP/SP(Aux)</i> | Set 'Local SP' = the normal operating setpoint value for the slave loop (when cascade is disabled) |

Step 2. Start the controller in Level 3 as follows:

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| In <i>ACCESS</i> | Select Level 3 |
|------------------|----------------|

master will be ± 1 engineering unit. For a temperature loop, therefore, the master must be disturbed by at least 1 degree.

Tune OL and Tune OH are set in %. Although it is the master which is being tuned, it is the slave working SP which has to be modified in order to achieve a change in the output and hence measure a disturbance in the master PV. Therefore, Tune OL and Tune OH relate to a percentage of the slave range by which the slave working SP will be changed.

For example, if the slave has a range of -200 to $+1372$ the slave range is 1572 and Tune OL and Tune OH are 1%, then the slave working setpoint will be modified by ± 15.72 degrees.

In AUTOTUNE

Set 'Autotune Loop' to *LP1*

In LP1 SETUP/Cascade

Set 'Disable CSD' to 'No'

This is to re-enable cascade mode and must be done before the time out period of 1 min

Step 8: Return to control

The slave and master loops should now be tuned. Try changing the main setpoint and observe the response. If the master PV response is oscillatory then you may not have restricted the disturbance of the slave enough. Try decreasing the values of 'Tune OL' and 'Tune OH' and retune the master.

10.5.2. To Tune a Trim mode Cascade Loop

This example uses SP feedforward where the value of the MasterWSP is 50, the slave range is 0-200 and the Trim limits are 25%.

The slave setpoint calculation is shown in the diagram below which has been reproduced from the previous chapter.

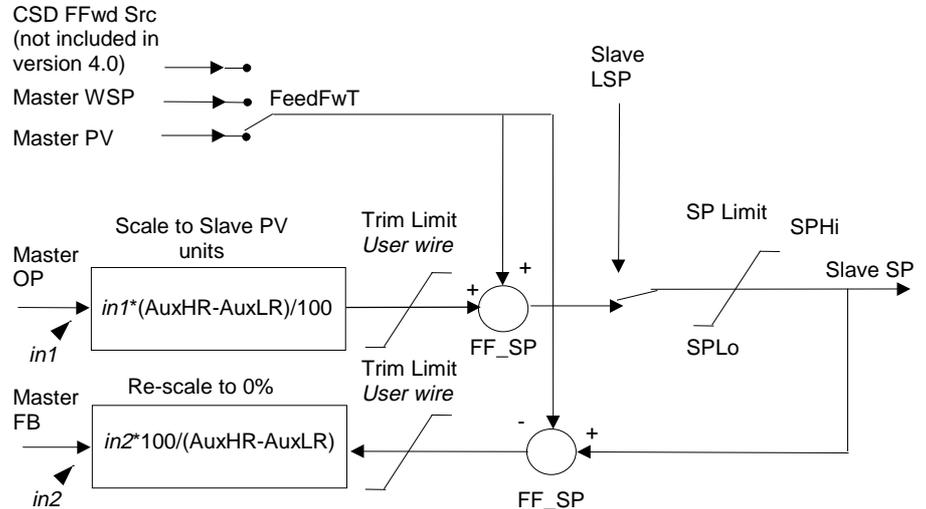


Figure 10-5: Cascade Controller in Trim Mode

The formula in the box "Scale to Slave PV units" simply normalises the masterOP to the slave range, for example, here a masterOP of 0% will produce a trim value of 0 units and an output of 100% a trim value of 200 units. A 50% master OP will produce 100. So if masterOP is 10% this will provide a trim value of 20 that will be added to the fed forward SP providing a working slave setpoint of 70.

It should also be noted if masterOP is 20% this should provide a trim value of 40, but because the trim limit is set a 25, instead of the slave setpoint going to 90 it will be limited to 75.

The feedback path via the parameter MasterFB ensures that the master loop will not go into integral saturation whilst the slave setpoint is being limited.

10.5.2.1. Tuning the Loop

Details of configuration

Master(LP1) loop range	= 0-100
Slave loop(LP1A) range	= 0-200
Cascade mode	= Trim SPFF(Setpoint feedforward)
CSDTrim lo	= -50(slave SP trim lo limit)
CSDTrim hi	= +50(slave SP trim hi limit)

Step 1. Tune slave

Disable cascade and tune the slave at a setpoint that you expect the slave to be operating at. In this case it is done at 70.

After tune is complete you must allow the slave to settle at its setpoint with no oscillations. This is very important.

Step 2 Tune Master

The master OP is normalised to the slave range. So in this configuration, if the master OP is 0%, the slave SP is also 0. If the master OP is 50% the SP is 100 and if the OP is 100% the setpoint is 200.

You need to inspect the value of the slave proportional band calculated by the slave autotune. In this case it was 36 (eng units).

To tune the master loop the autotune limits need to be set so that the slave SP is allowed to alter by half its proportional band. In this case, ± 18 units. To achieve this 'Tune OP low' is set to -9% and 'Tune OP high' to 9%. With a master SP of 70 this allows the slave to go to a high value of 88 and a low value of 52. Please note, during autotune the 9% is applied in addition to the Slave PV, not the slave setpoint when the master loop tune starts, therefore it is important that the slave has settled at its local SP.

After you have set the tune limits start the master(LP1) autotune and only after that enable cascade mode. When complete the controller can be operated in cascade mode.

Step 3 Normal Operation

Adjust the master SP to the required process value and observe control response.

11.	CHAPTER 11 CONTROLLER APPLICATIONS.....	2
11.1.	ZIRCONIA - CARBON POTENTIAL CONTROL.....	3
11.1.1.	Temperature Control.....	3
11.1.2.	Carbon Potential Control	3
11.1.3.	Sooting Alarm.....	3
11.1.4.	Automatic Probe Cleaning	3
11.1.5.	Endothermic Gas Correction.....	3
11.1.6.	Example of Carbon Potential Controller Connections	4
11.2.	TO VIEW AND ADJUST ZIRCONIA PARAMETERS	5
11.2.1.	Zirconia Parameters	6
11.2.2.	Wiring Page	8
11.3.	ZIRCONIA WIRING EXAMPLE	8
11.3.1.	The Zirconia Function Block.....	8
11.3.2.	Configuration of a Carbon Potential Control Loop.....	9
11.3.3.	Probe Impedance	12
11.4.	HUMIDITY CONTROL.....	13
11.4.1.	Overview.....	13
11.4.2.	Example Of Humidity Controller Connections	13
11.4.3.	Temperature Control Of An Environmental Chamber	14
11.4.4.	Humidity Control Of An Environmental Chamber	14
11.5.	TO VIEW AND ADJUST HUMIDITY PARAMETERS	15
11.5.1.	Humidity Options Parameters	16
11.5.2.	Wiring Page	16
11.6.	HUMIDITY WIRING EXAMPLE	17
11.6.1.	The Humidity Function Block	17
11.6.2.	Configuration of a Humidity Control Loop	17

11. Chapter 11 Controller Applications

The 2604 controller contains control blocks specifically designed to suit a number of different applications.

Examples are:-

Carbon Potential, Oxygen or Dew Point control using Zirconia probes

Humidity control using wet and dry platinum resistance thermometers

About this chapter

This chapter gives general descriptions (which are not intended to be of a particular installation) of the use of the 2604 controller in the above applications.

- ◇ Brief description and terminology applications using zirconia probes
- ◇ An example wiring diagram for carbon potential control
- ◇ Viewing and adjusting the parameters for a carbon potential controller
- ◇ An example of soft wiring for a carbon potential control loop
- ◇ Brief description of humidity control
- ◇ An example wiring diagram for humidity control
- ◇ Viewing and adjusting the parameters for a humidity controller
- ◇ An example of soft wiring for a humidity control loop

11.1. ZIRCONIA - CARBON POTENTIAL CONTROL

A dual loop 2604 controller is required to control temperature of the process on one loop and carbon potential on the other. The controller is often a programmer which generates temperature and carbon potential profiles synchronised to a common timebase. In this section it is assumed that a programmer is used.

11.1.1. Temperature Control

The sensor input of the temperature loop may come from the zirconia probe but it is common for a separate thermocouple to be used. The controller provides a heating output which may be connected to gas burners or thyristors to control electrical heating elements. In some applications a cooling output may also be connected to a circulation fan or exhaust damper.

11.1.2. Carbon Potential Control

The zirconia probe generates a millivolt signal based on the ratio of oxygen concentrations on the reference side of the probe (outside the furnace) to the amount of oxygen in the furnace. The controller uses the temperature and carbon potential signals to calculate the actual percentage of carbon in the furnace. This second loop generally has two outputs. One output is connected to a valve which controls the amount of an enrichment gas is supplied to the furnace. The second output controls the level of dilution air.

11.1.3. Sooting Alarm

In addition to other alarms which may be detected by the controller (see also Chapter 8 'Alarm Configuration'), the 2604 can trigger an alarm when the atmospheric conditions are such that carbon will be deposited as soot on all surfaces inside the furnace.

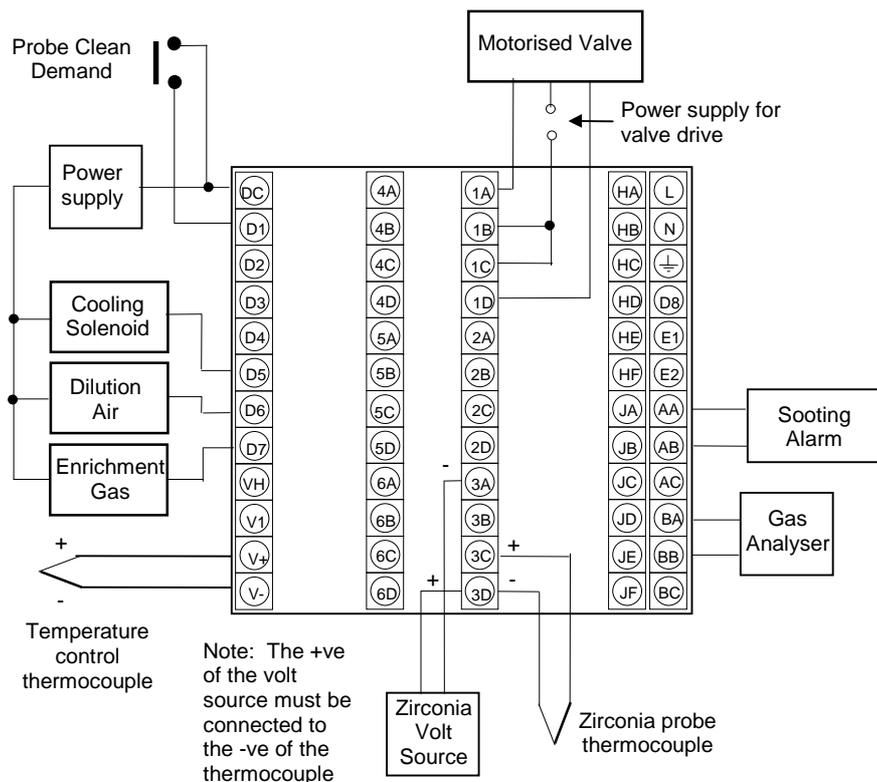
11.1.4. Automatic Probe Cleaning

The 2604 has a probe clean and recovery strategy that can be programmed to occur between batches or manually requested. A short blast of compressed air is used to remove any soot and other particles that may have accumulated on the probe. Once the cleaning has been completed the time taken for the probe to recover is measured. If the recovery time is too long this indicates that the probe is ageing and replacement or refurbishment is due. During the cleaning and recovery cycle, the %C reading is frozen thereby ensuring continuous furnace operation.

11.1.5. Endothermic Gas Correction

A gas analyser may be used to determine the CO concentration of the endothermic gas. If a 4-20mA output is available from the analyser, it can be fed into the 2604 to automatically adjust the calculated % carbon reading. Alternatively, this value can be entered manually.

11.1.6. Example of Carbon Potential Controller Connections

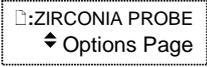
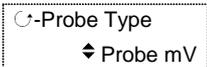


The above diagram is a generalised connection diagram, for further information refer to Appendix F 'Installation', and to the instructions supplied by the probe manufacturer. In the above example the following modules are fitted. This will change from installation to installation:

Module 1	Dual triac or relay to drive motorised valve
Module 3	Dual PV Input Module
Standard Digital I/O	Used as logic input for manual probe clean and outputs for solenoid valve drives
Standard PV Input	For the temperature control thermocouple input
Standard Analogue Input	For gas analyser
Standard Relay Output	For sooting alarm

Figure 11-1: An Example of 2604 Wiring for Carbon Potential Control

11.2. TO VIEW AND ADJUST ZIRCONIA PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p>1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select 'ZIRCONIA PROBE'</p> <p>2. Press  to if necessary select 'Options Page'.</p>		<p>This page is only available if 'Zirconia' is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page</p> <p>The page choices are:-</p> <p>Options Configure and adjust zirconia parameters.</p> <p>Wiring Soft wires zirconia parameters</p>
<p>3. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to the required parameter in the list</p> <p>4. If the parameter is preceded by  it is alterable. Press  or  to change its value</p>		<p>The first parameter is Zirconia Value. This is read only and is the value derived from the temperature and remote gas inputs</p>
		<p>The next parameter allows you to choose the type of probe which is to be used with the controller</p>

The full list of parameters available under these list headers is shown in the following tables. They are selected and altered as described above



11.2.1. Zirconia Parameters

Table Number: 11.2.1.		This table allows you to view or adjust zirconia probe parameters		ZIRCONIA PROBE (Options Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Zirconia Value	Zirconia control process value The O2 or dew point value derived from temperature and remote gas ref inputs	Range units		R/O	
Probe Type	Zirconia probe equation	See note 1 for types supported		Conf	
Units	Zirconia display units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf	
Resolution	Zirconia display resolution	XXXXX to XX.XXX		Conf	
Oxygen Exp (Note 2)	Oxygen units Only available for 'Probe Type' = 'Log Oxygen'	0 to 19		Conf	
The following 10 parameters are not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'					
H-CO Reference	Gas reference	0.0 to 999.0	20.0	L3	
Rem Gas Ref IP	Remote gas reference	0.0 to 999.0		L3	
Enable Rem H-CO	Remote gas enable. This can be an internal value from the user interface or remote from an external source.	Internal Remote	Internal	L3	
Working H-CO	Working gas reference or process factor	0.0 to 999.0		L3 R/O	
Process Factor	Process Factor is used in some zirconia probes to provide compensation for the varying abilities of different alloys to absorb carbon. Applies to MMI probes only	0.0 to 999.0		L3	
Clean Mode	Clean probe input	Off On	Off	L3	
Clean Freq	Zirconia probe cleaning interval	Off to 99:54:00.0	4:00:00: 0	L3	

Clean Duration	Sets the cleaning time	0:00:06.0 to 1:39:54.0	0:10:00:0	L3
Max Recvy Time	Maximum recovery time after purging	0:00:06.0 to 1:39:54.0	0:10:00:0	L3
Min Recvy Time	Minimum recovery time after purging	0:00:06.0 to 1:39:54.0	0:10:00:0	L3
Min Cal Temp	Minimum calculation temp.	-999.0		L3
Probe Offset	Zirconia mV offset	to	0.0	L3
Temp Offset	Sets the temperature offset for the probe	2000.0	0.0	L3
The following 4 parameters are not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'				
Next Clean	Time to next cleaning. (counts down to 0:00:00.0)	0:00:00.1		R/O L1
Clean State	The burn off state of the zirconia probe	Inactive Cleaning Recovering		R/O L1
Clean Output	Clean valve output	Off/On	Off	R/O L3
Probe Status	Probe requires cleaning	Good/Bad		R/O L1
Probe SBrk	Probe sensor break	No/Yes		R/O L1
The following parameter is not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'				
Sooting Alarm	Probe sooting alarm output	Good/Bad		R/O L1
SootVal Scalar	Sooting value scalar	0.0 to 100.0	1.0	L3
Probe IP	Zirconia probe mV input	-100 to 2000		R/O
Temp IP	Zirconia probe temp input val	Temp range		R/O L3
PV Invalid	PV Invalid	No/Yes		L3
This is a boolean which is true when the temperature is below that set by 'Min Cal Temp'. It may have been wired in configuration mode, for example, to disable the gas valve				
The following parameter is not relevant to 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen'				
PV Frozen	PV Frozen	No/Yes		L3
This is a boolean which freezes the PV during a purging cycle. It may have been wired in configuration mode, for example, to disable control output during purging				

Note 1 Probe types supported: Probe mV, Bosch Carbon, Barber-Colman, MMI Carbon, MMI Dewpoint, AACC, Drayton, Accucarb, SSI, MacDhui, Oxygen, Log Oxygen, Bosch Oxygen, Dewpoint.

Note 2 To configure Oxygen in ppm, select 'Probe Type' = 'Oxygen' and 'Oxygen Exp' = '4'

11.2.2. Wiring Page

Table Number: 11.2.2.		These parameters configure zirconia probe block wiring.		ZIRCONIA PROBE (Wiring Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
mV Src	Zirconia probe mV input source	Modbus address		Conf	
Temp Src	Zirconia probe temperature input source	Modbus address		Conf	
Clean Src	Zirconia clean probe input source Not available for Oxygen Probe Types	Modbus address		Conf	
Rem Gas Src	Remote gas reference/Process factor source Not available for Oxygen Probe Types	Modbus address		Conf.	

11.3. ZIRCONIA WIRING EXAMPLE

11.3.1. The Zirconia Function Block

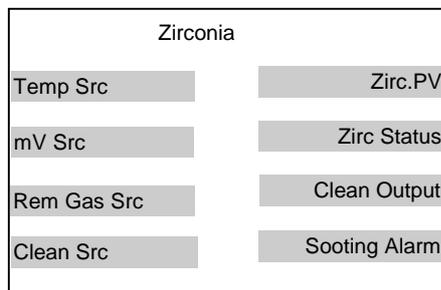


Figure 11-2: Zirconia Function Block

11.3.1.1. Main Features

Calculation of PV: The Process Variable can be carbon potential, Dewpoint or Oxygen concentration. The PV is derived from the probe temperature input, the probe mV input and remote gas reference input values. Various probe makes are supported.

Endothermic Gas Correction: This enables the user to set the percentage of carbon monoxide (%CO) present in the Endothermic Gas. This value can be measured via a gas analyser and fed into the controller as an analogue value.

Probe Clean: As these sensors are used in furnace environments they require regular cleaning. Cleaning (Burn Off) is performed by forcing compressed air through the probe. Cleaning can be initiated either manually or automatically using a timed period. During cleaning the PV output is frozen.

Health Alarm (Zirconia Probe Status): After cleaning an alarm output is generated if the PV does not return to 95% of its value within a specified time. This indicates that the probe is deteriorating and should be replaced.

Sooting Alarm: An output is generated which indicates that the furnace is about to soot.

11.3.2. Configuration of a Carbon Potential Control Loop

This example assumes that the probe temperature (Type K) input is connected to module 3 and the milli-volt input to module 6. Loop 1 normally controls temperature, so the carbon loop will be Loop 2. Carbon control and alarm outputs are relays and configured as On/Off.

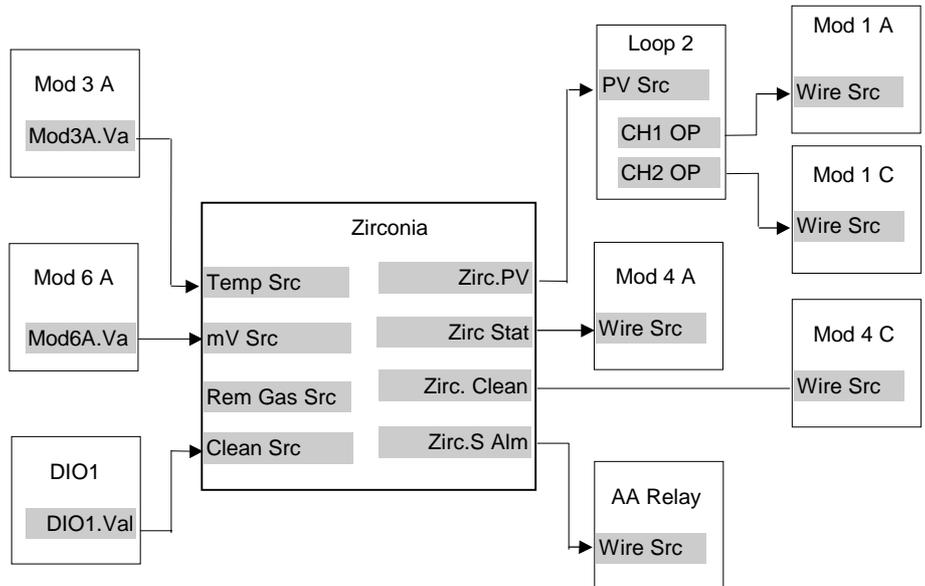


Figure 11-3: Zirconia Wiring for Carbon Potential

11.3.2.1.Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page
set 'Num of Loops' = 2
set 'Zirconia' = Enabled

2. In MODULE IO/Module 3A Page
set 'Channel Type' = Thermocouple
set 'Linearisation' = K-Type
set 'Units' = °C/°F/°K
set 'Resolution' = XXXXX
set 'SBrk Impedance' = Low
set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
set 'CJC Type' = Internal
This configures Module 3 to measure temperature.

3. In MODULE IO/Module 6A Page
set 'Channel Type' = HZVolts
set 'Linearisation' = Linear
set 'Units' = mV
set 'Resolution' = XXXXX
set 'SBrk Impedance' = Off
set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
set 'Electrical Lo' = 0.00
set 'Electrical Hi' = 2.00
set 'Eng Val Lo' = 0.00
set 'Eng Val Hi' = 2000
This configures Module 6 to measure probe mV.

4. In STANDARD IO/Dig IO1 Page
set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
This configures DIO1 to be a digital input.

5. In ZIRCONIA PROBE/Options Page
set 'Probe Type' = *Type of probe in use*
set 'Units' = %CP
set 'Resolution' = XXX.XX
set 'H-CO Reference' = *Required Value*
This value defines the % carbon monoxide (%CO) in the gas used for carburising
This configures the zirconia probe

6. In ZIRCONIA PROBE/Wiring Page
set 'Clean Src' = 05402:DI01.Val
set 'mV Src' = 04948:Mod6A
set 'Temp Src' = 04468:Mod3A
This connects inputs to the Zirconia block

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 7. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page | set 'Loop Type' = Single
set 'Control Type' = OnOff→Ch1&2 |
| 8. In LP2 SETUP/Wiring Page | set 'PV Src' = 11059:Zirc.PV
This connects the PV to Loop 2 PV |
| 9. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page | set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
set 'Wire Src' = 01037:L2.Ch1OP
This connects LP2 Ch1 output to module 1 |
| 10. In MODULE IO/Module 1C Page | set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
set 'Wire Src' = 01038:L2.Ch2OP
This connects LP2 Ch2 output to module 1 |
| 11. In MODULE IO/Module 4A Page | set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
set 'Wire Src' = 11066:Zirc.Stat
This connects the health (probe status) to module 4A |
| 12. In MODULE IO/Module 4C Page | set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
set 'Wire Src' = 11067: Zirc.Clean
This connects the clean outputs to module 4C |
| 13. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page | set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
set 'Wire Src' = 11068: Zirc.SAlm
This connects the sooting alarm to the fixed relay output |

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

11.3.3. Probe Impedance

Probe impedance can be read by the parameter 'SBrk Trip Imp'. This parameter is found in the Standard IO or Module IO, PV or Analogue Inputs. It is, however, normal to use the Dual PV Input module for use with a Zirconia probe, so the 'SBrk Trip Imp' parameter will be found in MODULE IO/Module 3 or 6 page.

The units for this parameter is % and depends upon the setting of the 'SBrk Impedance' parameter found in the same page, as follows:-

If 'SBrk Impedance' = 'Low' then a 'SBrk Trip Imp' reading of 100% is approximately 100K Ω

If 'SBrk Impedance' = 'High' then a 'SBrk Trip Imp' reading of 100% is approximately 500K Ω

For a Zirconia probe the normal setting for 'SBrk Impedance' = 'High'

The wiring example in section 20.5.3. 'Zirconia Probe Impedance Measurement' shows how this may be implemented.

11.4. HUMIDITY CONTROL

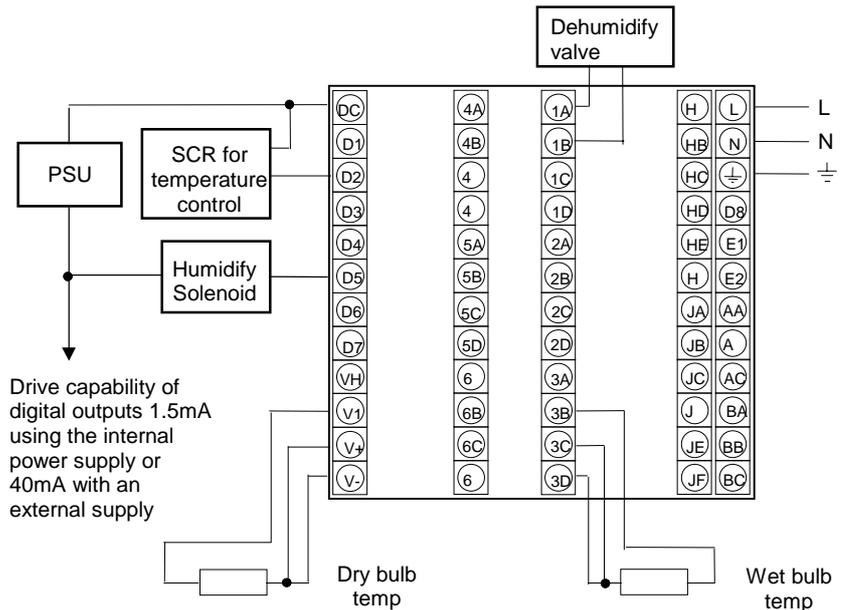
11.4.1. Overview

Humidity (and altitude) control is a standard feature of the 2604 controller. In these applications the controller may be configured to generate a setpoint profile (see Chapter 6 'Programmer Configuration').

The controller may be configured to measure humidity using either the traditional Wet/Dry bulb method (figure 11.4) or it may be interfaced to a solid state sensor.

The controller output may be configured to turn a refrigeration compressor on and off, operate a bypass valve, and possibly operate two stages of heating and/or cooling

11.4.2. Example Of Humidity Controller Connections



In the above example the following modules are fitted. This will change from installation to installation:

Module 1	Analogue or relay to drive dehumidify valve
Module 3	PV input module for wet bulb temperature RTD
Standard Digital I/O	Used as logic outputs for humidify solenoid valve and temperature control SCR
Standard PV Input	For the dry bulb RTD used for the temperature control and humidity calculation

Figure 11-4: Example of Humidity Controller Connections

11.4.3. Temperature Control Of An Environmental Chamber

The temperature of an environmental chamber is controlled as a single loop with two control outputs. The heating output time proportions electric heaters, usually via a solid state relay. The cooling output operates a refrigerant valve which introduces cooling into the chamber. The controller automatically calculates when heating or cooling is required.

11.4.4. Humidity Control Of An Environmental Chamber

Humidity in a chamber is controlled by adding or removing water vapour. Like the temperature control loop two control outputs are required, i.e. Humidify and Dehumidify. To humidify the chamber water vapour may be added by a boiler, an evaporating pan or by direct injection of atomised water.

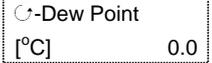
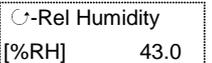
If a boiler is being used adding steam increases the humidity level. The humidify output from the controller regulates the amount of steam from the boiler that is allowed into the chamber.

An evaporating pan is a pan of water warmed by a heater. The humidify output from the controller humidity regulates the temperature of the water.

An atomisation system uses compressed air to spray water vapour directly into the chamber. The humidify output of the controller turns on or off a solenoid valve.

Dehumidification may be accomplished by using the same compressor used for cooling the chamber. The dehumidify output from the controller may control a separate control valve connected to a set of heat exchanger coils.

11.5. TO VIEW AND ADJUST HUMIDITY PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes				
<p>1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select 'HUMIDITY'</p> <p>2. Press  to if necessary select 'Options Page'.</p>		<p>This page is only available if 'Humidity' is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page.</p> <p>Page choices are:-</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Options</td> <td>Configure and adjust humidity parameters.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wiring</td> <td>Soft wires humidity parameters</td> </tr> </table>	Options	Configure and adjust humidity parameters.	Wiring	Soft wires humidity parameters
Options	Configure and adjust humidity parameters.					
Wiring	Soft wires humidity parameters					
<p>3. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to the required parameter in the list</p> <p>4. If the parameter is preceded by  it is alterable. Press  or  to change its value</p>		<p>The first parameter is read only and indicates the measured value of dew point</p>				
		<p>The next parameter is also read only and is the measurement of relative humidity</p>				

The full list of parameters available under these list headers is shown in the following tables. They are selected and altered as described above



11.5.1. Humidity Options Parameters

Table Number: 11.5.1.		These parameters allow you to view or adjust the parameters for humidity control		HUMIDITY	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Dew Point	Wet/Dry temperature measurement of dew point	-999.9 to 999.9		L1 R/O	
Rel Humidity	Relative Humidity	0.0 to 100.0		L1 R/O	
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX		L3	
Atm Pressure	Atmospheric Pressure	0.0 to 2000.0	1013 mbar	L3	
PMetric Const	Psychrometric Constant	0.0 to 10.0	6.66	L3	
Wet Bulb Offs	Wet bulb temperature correction	-100.0 to 100.0	0.0	L3	
Humidity SBrk	Sensor break action for humidity control	No Yes		L1 R/O	
Dry Bulb Temp	Dry Bulb Temperature	Range units		L1 R/O	
Wet Bulb Temp	Wet Bulb Temperature	Range units		L1 R/O	

11.5.2. Wiring Page

Table Number: 11.5.2.		These parameters configure humidity block wiring.		HUMIDITY (Wiring Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Dry Bulb Src	Dry bulb temperature source	Modbus address.		Conf	
Wet Bulb Src	Wet bulb temperature source			Conf	
Atm Press Src	Atmospheric pressure source			Conf	
PMetric Cst Src	Psychrometric Constant source		6.66	Conf	

11.6. HUMIDITY WIRING EXAMPLE

11.6.1. The Humidity Function Block

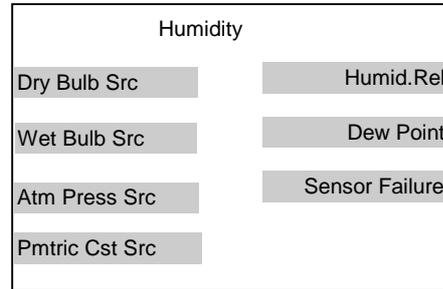


Figure 11-5: Humidity Function Block

11.6.1.1. Main Features

Calculation of PV: The Process Variable can be Relative Humidity or Dewpoint. The PV is derived from the wet and dry bulb inputs and atmospheric pressure.

Pressure Compensation: This value can be measured via a transmitter and fed into the controller as an analogue value. Alternatively, it can be set as a fixed parameter.

11.6.2. Configuration of a Humidity Control Loop

This example assumes that the dry temperature (Pt100) input is connected to the main PV and the wet input (Pt100) to module 3. Loop 1 normally controls temperature, so the humidity loop will be Loop 2. Humidity control outputs are relays and configured as time proportioning.

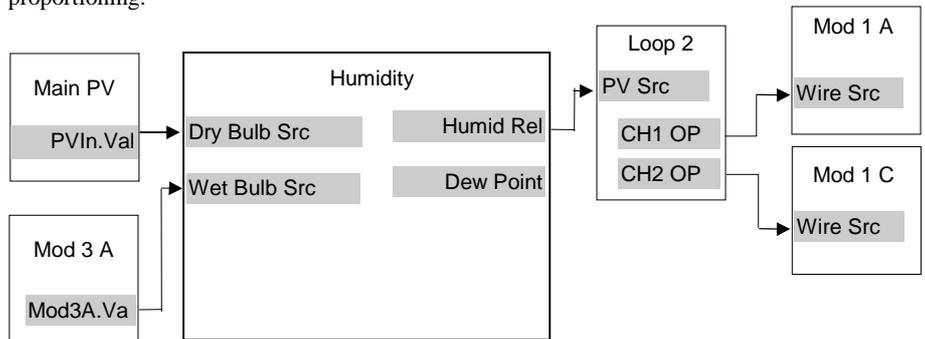


Figure 11-6: Humidity Control Loop

11.6.2.1.Implementation

1. In INSTRUMENT/Options Page
 - set 'Num of Loops' = 2
 - set 'Humidity' = Enabled
2. In STANDARD IO/PV Input Page
 - set 'Channel Type' = RTD
 - set 'Linearisation' = PT100
 - set 'Units' = °C/°F/°K
 - set 'Resolution' = XXXX.X
 - set 'SBrk Impedance' = Low
 - set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
 - This configures the PV Input to measure dry temperature
3. In MODULE IO/Module 3A Page
 - set 'Channel Type' = RTD
 - set 'Linearisation' = PT100
 - set 'Units' = °C/°F/°K
 - set 'Resolution' = XXXX.X
 - set 'SBrk Impedance' = Off
 - set 'SBrk Fallback' = Up Scale
 - This configures Module 3 to measure wet temperature
4. In HUMIDITY/Options Page
 - set 'Atm Pressure' = 1013.0 (for sea level)
5. In HUMIDITY/Wiring Page
 - set 'Dry Bulb Src = 05108:PVIn.Val
 - set 'Wet Bulb Src = 04468:Mod3A.Val
 - This connects the sensors to the humidity block
6. In LP2 SETUP/Options Page
 - set 'Control Type' = PID→Ch1 PID→Ch2
7. In LP2 SETUP/Wiring Page
 - set 'PV Src' = 11105:Humid.Rel
 - Note: For Dewpoint select 11106
 - This connects the %RH output to Loop 2 PV
8. In LP2 SETUP/Output Page
 - set 'OP Low Limit' = -100.0
 - set 'OP High Limit' = 100.0
9. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page
 - set 'Channel Type' = Time Proportion
 - set 'Wire Src' = 01037:L2.Ch1OP
 - This connects LP2Ch1 output to Module 1A
10. In MODULE IO/Module 1C Page
 - set 'Channel Type' = Time Proportion
 - set 'Wire Src' = 01038:L2.Ch2OP
 - This connects L21Ch2 output to Module 1C

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

☺ **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

12.	CHAPTER 12 INPUT OPERATORS	2
12.1.	WHAT ARE INPUT OPERATORS	2
12.2.	CUSTOM LINEARISATION	3
12.2.1.	Compensation for Sensor Non-Linearities	4
12.2.2.	To Create a Linearised Input	5
12.2.3.	Input Operators Custom Linearisation Parameters	6
12.3.	THERMOCOUPLE/PYROMETER SWITCHING	7
12.3.1.	To Set Up Thermocouple/Pyrometer Switching Points	8
12.3.2.	Input Operators Switch Over Parameters.....	9
12.4.	THE MONITOR BLOCK	10
12.4.1.	Input Operators Monitor Parameters	10
12.5.	BCD INPUT	11
12.5.1.	Main Features	11
12.5.2.	BCD Parameters	12
12.6.	INPUT OPERATORS WIRING EXAMPLES	13
12.6.1.	Switch Over Loop With Custom Linearised Input.....	13
12.6.2.	Configuring the BCD Input to Select a Program	15
12.6.3.	Holdback Duration Timer.....	17

12. Chapter 12 Input Operators

12.1. WHAT ARE INPUT OPERATORS

The 2604 controller can have three control loops. Each loop can be independently configured to the process to be controlled. This has been described in Chapters 10 and 11 for PID, Cascade, Ratio, Override, Humidity Control, etc. It is also possible to apply custom linearisation to the inputs of each loop. This is a 16 point straight line linearisation and the parameters can be made available at Levels 1, 2 and 3 so that scaling can be carried out during commissioning. There are three Custom linearisation pages.

Also included in this section are parameters which allow you to switch inputs between different measuring transducers when the process is required to operate over a range which is too great for a single transducer. A typical application may be to switch between a thermocouple and pyrometer or between two different thermocouple types in a high temperature furnace.

The page headers are:

INPUT OPERS ▶	Cust Lin 1 Page	These parameters set up the custom linearisation for input 1
	Cust Lin 2 Page	These parameters set up the custom linearisation for input 2
	Cust Lin 3 Page	These parameters set up the custom linearisation for input 3
	Switch 1 Page	These parameters provide switch over between thermocouple types or pyrometer
	Monitor 1 Page	Logs maximum and minimum, counts time above threshold
	BCD Input Page	Monitors the Digital Inputs when configured for BCD switch

The Input Operators page is only available if Input Operators has been enabled in configuration level.

Note:

In addition to linearising the controller inputs channels, it is equally valid to customise other sources such as Output Channels. This allows you, for example, to compensate for non linear control valve characteristics.

12.2. CUSTOM LINEARISATION

The linearisation uses a 16 point straight line fit.

Figure 12.1 shows an example of a curve to be linearised and is used to illustrate the terminology used for the parameters found in the **INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin/ Page)**.

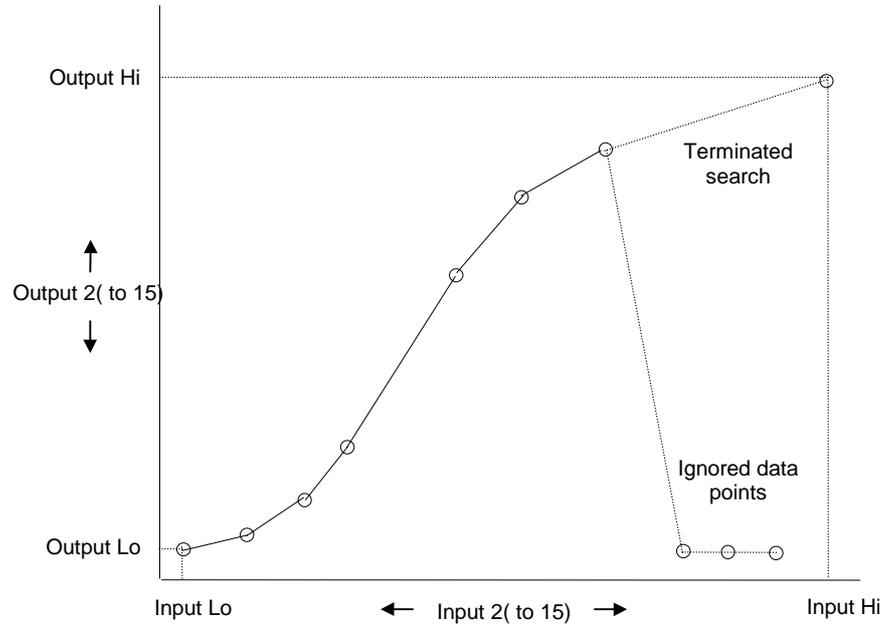


Figure 12-1: Linearisation Example

Notes:

1. The linearisation block works on rising inputs/rising outputs or rising inputs/falling outputs. It is not suitable for outputs which rise and fall on the same curve.
2. Input Lo/Output Lo and Input Hi/Output Hi are entered first to define the low and high points of the curve. It is not necessary to define all 15 intermediate points if the accuracy is not required. Points not defined will be ignored and a straight line fit will apply between the last point defined and the Input Hi/Output Hi point.

12.2.1. Compensation for Sensor Non-Linearities

The custom linearisation feature can also be used to compensate for errors in the sensor or measurement system. The intermediate points are, therefore, available in Level 1 so that known discontinuities in the curve can be calibrated out. Figure 12.2 shows an example of the type of discontinuity which can occur in the linearisation of a temperature sensor.

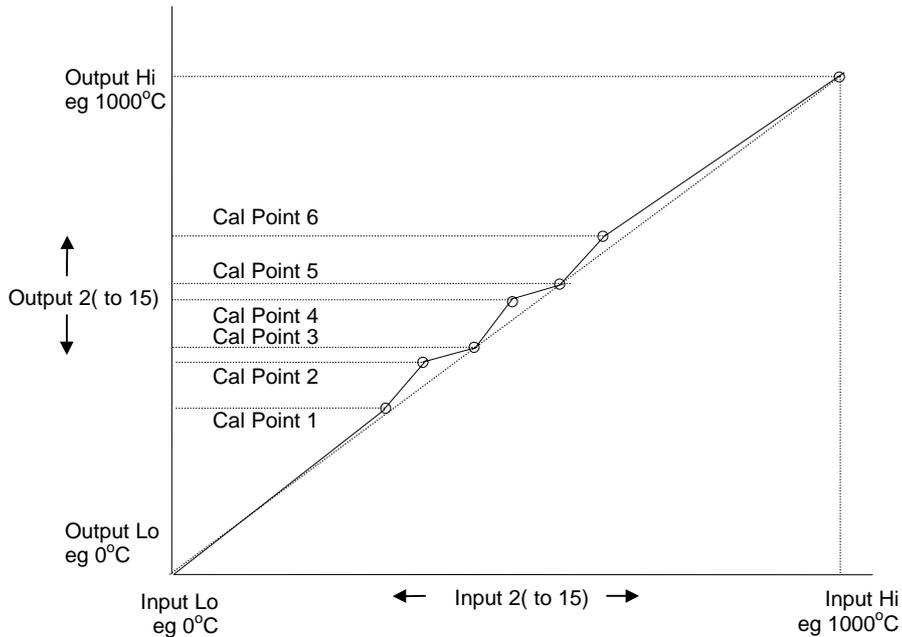
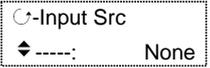
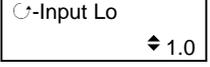
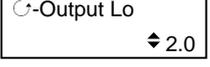


Figure 12-2: Compensation for Sensor Discontinuities

The calibration of the sensor uses the same procedure as described above. Adjust the output (displayed) value against the corresponding input value to compensate for any errors in the standard linearisation of the sensor.

12.2.2. To Create a Linearised Input

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' INPUT OPERS ' 2. Press  or  to choose a Custom Linearisation page		This page is only available if 'Input Opers' is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page. Three Custom Linearisation pages are available. Each can be soft wired to operate on a particular physical input. See section 12.7 for an example
3. Press  to show the first parameter ' Enable ' 4. Press  or  to ' On '		
5. Press  to ' Input Src ' 6. Press  or  to choose the modbus address of the input source		This parameter allows you to soft wire the custom linearisation block to an input source using the modbus address of that source. The address can be chosen by its numerical value or press  again to choose it by its mnemonic (Appendix D)
7. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to ' Input Lo ' 8. Press  or  to adjust the value		Intermediate parameters are shown in the following table. Input Lo is shown in Figure 12-1 and defines the lowest point which you wish to set
9. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to ' Output Lo ' 10. Press  or  to adjust the value		'Output Lo' is the output value from the block corresponding to 'Input Lo'. The resolution of this parameter is set by the parameter 'Output Resol'

Now set up the high calibration point followed by up to 15 intermediate points.

The full list of parameters is shown in the following table



12.2.3. Input Operators Custom Linearisation Parameters

Table Number: 12.2.3.	This page allows you to set up a customised linearisation curve	INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin 1)		
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Enable	To enable custom linearisation	Off On	Off	L3
Input Src	Custom linearisation input source	Modbus address		Conf
Output Units	Custom linearisation output units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Output Resol	Custom linearisation output resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX		Conf
Input Value	The current value of the input	Range		R/O L1
Output Value	The current value of the output	Range		R/O L1
Output Status	The conditions are OK The conditions are bad or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1
Input Lo	Adjust to the low input value	Range		L3
Output Lo	Adjust to correspond to the low input value	Range		L3
Input Hi	Adjust to the high input value	Range		L3
Output Hi	Adjust to correspond to the high input value	Range		L3
Input 2	Adjust to the first break point	Range		L1
Output 2	Adjust to correspond to input 2	Range		L1
The above two parameters are repeated for all intermediate break points, ie 3 to 14				
Input 15	Adjust to the last break point	Range		L1
Output 15	Adjust to correspond to input 15	Range		L1

The above table is repeated for:

- INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin 2 Page)
- INPUT OPERS (Cust Lin 3 Page)

12.3. THERMOCOUPLE/PYROMETER SWITCHING

This facility is commonly used in wide range temperature applications where it is necessary to control accurately over the range. A thermocouple may be used to control at lower temperatures and a pyrometer then controls at very high temperatures. Alternatively two thermocouples of different types may be used.

Figure 12-3 shows a process heating over time with boundaries which define the switching points between the two devices. The higher boundary (Switch Hi) is normally set towards the top end of the thermocouple range and the lower boundary (Switch Lo) set towards the lower end of the pyrometer (or second thermocouple) range. The controller calculates a smooth transition between the two devices.

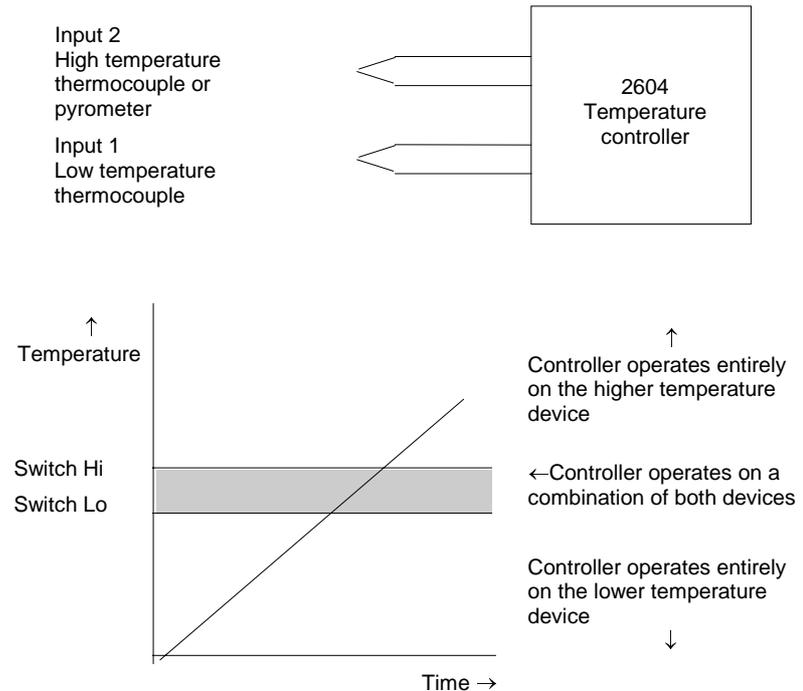
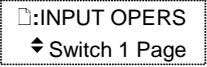
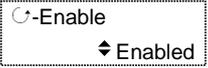
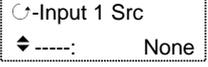


Figure 12-3: Thermocouple to Pyrometer Switching

12.3.1. To Set Up Thermocouple/Pyrometer Switching Points

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
11. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select 'INPUT OPERS'		This page is only available if 'Input Opers' is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page. One 'Switch' page is available
12. Press  or  to choose 'Switch 1 Page'		
13. Press  to the first parameter 'Enable'		
14. Press  or  to 'Enabled'		
15. Press  to 'Input 1 Src'		This parameter allows you to soft wire input 1 to an input source using the modbus address of that source. The address can be chosen by its numerical value or press  again to choose it by its mnemonic (Appendix D) Repeat for Input 2
16. Press  or  to choose the modbus address of the input source		
17. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to 'Switch Lo'		Intermediate parameters are shown in the following table. Switch Lo is shown in Figure 12-3 and defines the point at which the thermocouple begins to transfer to the pyrometer
18. Press  or  to adjust the value		
19. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to 'Switch Hi'		Switch Hi is shown in Figure 12-3 and defines the point at which the pyrometer only is measuring the process Note 'Switch Lo' and 'Switch Hi' can only be adjusted within the limits set by 'Input Lo' and 'Input Hi'.
20. Press  or  to adjust the value		

The full list of parameters is shown in the following table. They can be set using the above procedure.



12.3.2. Input Operators Switch Over Parameters

Table Number: 12.3.2.		This page allows you to set up and inspect Switch Over parameters		INPUT OPERS (Switch 1 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Enable	To enable switch over	Disabled Enabled	Off	Conf	
Active Input	Indicates the input currently selected	Input 1 Input 2 Both Inputs		R/O L3	
Input 1 Src	Input 1 source	Modbus address		Conf	
Input 2 Src	Input 2 source			Conf	
Input Lo	Display low limit	Display range		Conf	
Input Hi	Display High limit	Display range		Conf	
Switch Lo	PV = Input 1 below this value	Display Range		L3	
Switch Hi	PV = Input 2 above this value	Display Range		L3	
Switch Lo and Hi can be adjusted up to the limit set by 'Input Hi' and 'Input Lo' in configuration level					
Output Value	The current working value	Display Range		R/O L1	
Output Status	The conditions are OK or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1	
Input 1 Value	The current working value (can only be adjusted if Input 1 not wired)	Display Range		R/O L1	
Input 1 Status	The conditions are correct or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1	
Input 2 Value	The current working value (can only be adjusted if Input 2 not wired)	Display Range		R/O L1	
Input 2 Status	The conditions are correct or out of range	Good Bad		R/O L1	

12.4. THE MONITOR BLOCK

The Monitor block:

1. Logs the Maximum and Minimum excursions of the PV. These values are reset when:-
 - a) An external logic input, configured as reset, is enabled
 - b) The 'Reset' parameter, see Table 12.4.1, is changed to Yes
2. Counts the time above a threshold
3. Provides a time alarm

12.4.1. Input Operators Monitor Parameters

Table Number: 12.4.1.	This page allows you to set up Monitor parameters.		INPUT OPERS (Monitor 1 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Enable	Monitor enable	Disabled Enabled	Off	Conf
Input Src	Input source	Modbus addr		Conf
Reset Src	Reset source	Modbus addr		Conf
Input	Input value	Range		L1
Reset	Reset	No = to run Yes = to reset	No	L3
Maximum	Reads the maximum value recorded by the controller between resets, see 1. above	Range		R/O L1
Minimum	Reads the minimum value recorded by the controller between resets, see 1. above	Range		R/O L1
Trigger	PV threshold for timer log	Range		L3
Day	Reads days above threshold	0 to 32767		R/O L1
Time	Reads time above threshold	0:00:00.0		R/O L1
Day Alarm	This sets the alarm threshold for the number of days that the alarm is active	0 to 32767		L3
Time Alarm	This sets the alarm threshold for the time that the alarm is active	0:00:00.0		L3
Alarm Output	Displays an alarm when the number of days or time has been exceeded	Off On		R/O L1

12.5. BCD INPUT

An available option with the 2604 is the Binary Coded Decimal (BCD) function block. This feature is normally used to select a program number by using panel mounted BCD decade switches. A configuration example for this block is given in Section 12.7.2.

12.5.1. Main Features

Calculation of BCD Value: The function calculates a BCD value dependant upon the state of the inputs. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

Calculation of Decimal Value: The function calculates a decimal value dependant upon the state of the inputs. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

Digit 1 Output: The function calculates the first decade BCD value dependant on the state of inputs 1 to 4. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

Digit 2 Output: The function calculates the second decade BCD value dependant on the state of inputs 5 to 8. Unconnected inputs are detected as off. This value is available as a wireable parameter.

2 nd Decade	1 st Decade	BCD	Decimal	2 nd Digit	1 st Digit
0011	1001	39	57	3	9
0010	0110	26	38	2	6

12.5.2. BCD Parameters

Table Number: 12.5.2.	This page allows you to configure the BCD input values		INPUT OPERS (BCD Input Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Enable	BCD enable	Off On	Off	Conf
IP1 Src-LSB	Input 1 source (LSB)	Modbus address		Conf
IP2 Src	Input 2 source	Modbus address		Conf
IP3 Src	Input 3 source	Modbus address		Conf
IP4 Src	Input 4 source	Modbus address		Conf
IP5 Src	Input 5 source	Modbus address		Conf
IP6 Src	Input 6 source	Modbus address		Conf
IP7 Src	Input 7 source	Modbus address		Conf
IP8 Src-MSB	Input 8 source (MSB)	Modbus address		Conf
BCD Value	Reads the value (in BCD) of the switch as it appears on the digital inputs	0-99		R/O L1
Decimal Value	Reads the value(in decimal) of the switch as it appears on the digital inputs	0-255		R/O L1
Digit 1(units)	Units value of the first switch	0-9		R/O L1
Digit 2(Tens)	Tens value of the second switch	0-9		R/O L1

12.6. INPUT OPERATORS WIRING EXAMPLES

12.6.1. Switch Over Loop With Custom Linearised Input

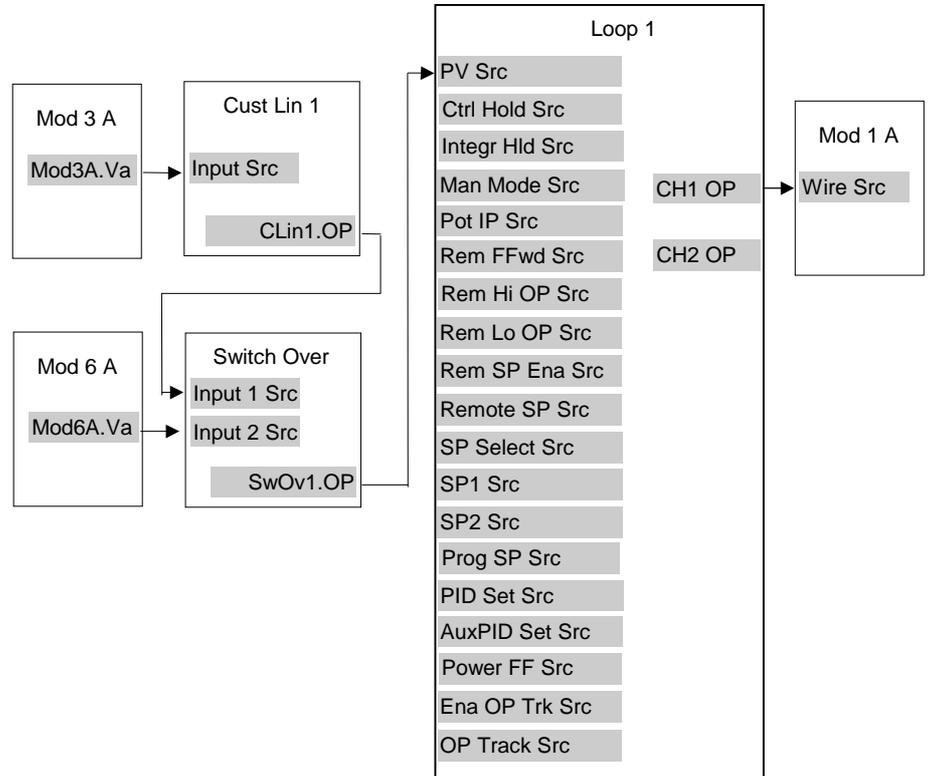


Figure 12-4: Example Wiring, Switch Over Loop with Custom Linearised Input

12.6.1.1.Implementation

1. In INPUT OPERS/Custom Lin 1
set 'Input Src' = 04468:Mod3A.Val (Appendix D)
This connects the input of the custom linearisation block to the output of Module 3A fitted as a PV input module.
2. In INPUT OPERS/Switch 1 Page
set 'Input 1 Src' = 03365:CLin1.OP (Appendix D)
This connects input 1 of the switch over block to the output of custom linearisation block 1.
3. In INPUT OPERS/Switch 1 Page
set 'Input 2 Src' = 04948:Mod6A.Val (Appendix D)
This connects input 2 of the switch over block to the output of module 6A fitted as an analogue input module.
4. In LOOP SETUP/Wiring Page
Set 'PV Src' = 03477:SwOv1.OP (Appendix D)
This connects the PV input of Loop 1 to the output of the switch over block.
5. In MODULE IO/Module 1A Page
Set 'Wire Src' = 00004:L1.Wkg OP (Appendix D)
This connects the input of module 1A to channel 1 output of loop 1. This module may be fitted as an analogue, relay, triac or logic output.

See Appendix D for list of Modbus addresses.

© **Tip:- See 'Copy and Paste' description in Chapter 3.**

12.6.2. Configuring the BCD Input to Select a Program

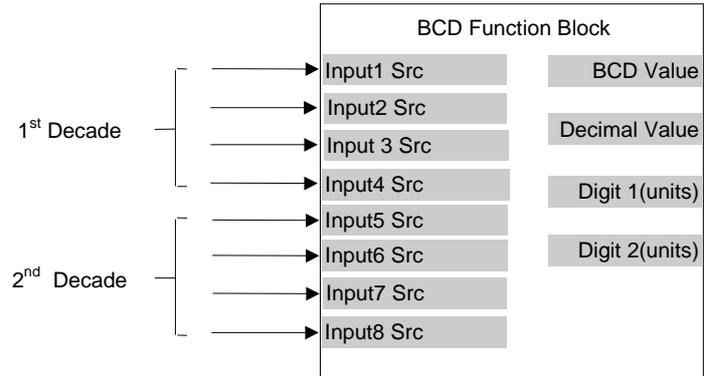


Figure 12-5: BCD Function Block

This example assumes that the digital inputs are connected to the standard IO.

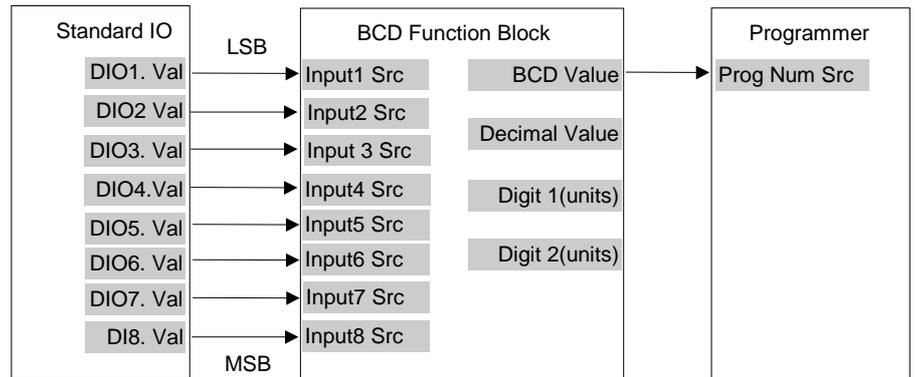


Figure 12-6: Wiring of Digital Inputs to the BCD Function Block

12.6.2.1.Implementation

1. In PROGRAM EDIT/Options Page set 'BCD Prg Num' = Yes
2. In STANDARD IO/DI01 Page set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
3. In STANDARD IO/DI02 Page set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
4. In STANDARD IO/DI03 Page set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
5. In STANDARD IO/DI04 Page set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
6. In STANDARD IO/DI05 Page set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
7. In STANDARD IO/DI06 Page set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
8. In STANDARD IO/DI07 Page set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
9. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page set 'Enable' = On
10. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input1 Src' = 05402:DIO1.Val
11. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input2 Src' = 05450:DIO2.Val
12. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input3 Src' = 05498:DIO3.Val
13. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input4 Src' = 05546:DIO4.Val
14. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input5 Src' = 05594:DIO5.Val
15. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input6 Src' = 05642:DIO6.Val
16. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input7 Src' = 05690:DIO7.Val
17. In INPUT OPERS/BCD Input Page Set 'Input8 Src' = 11313:DIO8.Val
18. In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page Set 'Prog Num Src' = 10450
This connects the output of the BCD block to the program number.

12.6.3. Holdback Duration Timer

This procedure describes how to configure a 2604 controller, using the Monitor Block, to accumulate the total time that a program has been in holdback within a segment. A holdback timer can be used to inform the user his application is taking longer to heat up than normal, possibly indicating a problem with the heat source or unusually high losses.

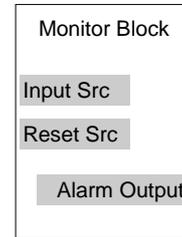


Figure 12-7: Monitor Function Block

The Monitor Block functions are as follows:

1. Logs the maximum and minimum excursions of its input value. These values are reset when:
 - a) the controller power is cycled
 - b) the block is reset
2. Counts the time above a threshold
3. Provides a time alarm

This example assumes that the controller has already been set up as a single loop programmer, and that program digital output 1 is used to enable the timer during certain segments. This is used to reset the monitor at the end of the segment. The maximum expected holdback time is set to 30 minutes. When this time is exceeded the AA relay is switched on.

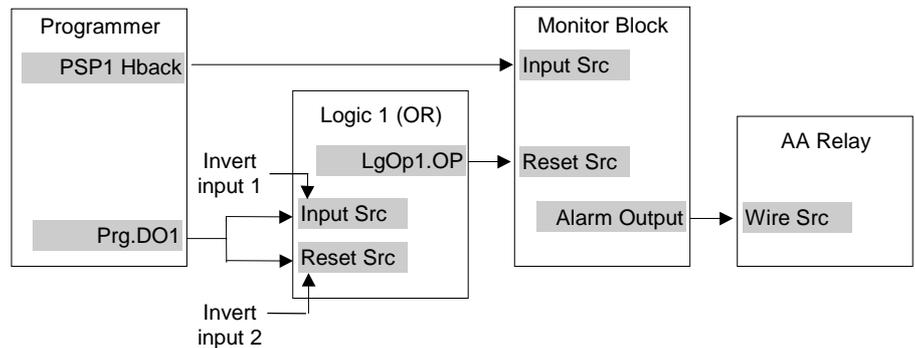


Figure 12-8: Example Wiring, Holdback Duration Timer

12.6.3.1. Implementation

1. In LOGIC OPERATORS/Logic 1 Page
 - set 'Operation' = OR
 - set 'Input 1 Src' = 05869:Prg.DO1
 - set 'Input 2 Src' = 05869:Prg.DO1
 - set 'Invert' = Invert Both
 - This inverts the sense of Program DO1

2. In INPUT OPERS/Monitor 1 Page
 - Set 'Enable' = Enabled
 - Set 'Input Src' = 05804:
 - This connects PSP1 Holdback Status
 - Set 'Reset Src' = 07176:LgOp1.OP
 - This connects Logic 1 Output to the Monitor Reset
 - Set 'Trigger' = 1.0
 - Set 'Day Alarm' = 0
 - Set 'Time Alarm' = 0:30:00:0

3. In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page
 - Set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
 - Set 'Wire Src' = 03500:
 - This assigns AA Relay to Monitor OP

13. CHAPTER 13 TIMER, CLOCK, TOTALISER, OPERATION	2
13.1. WHAT ARE TIMER BLOCKS?	2
13.2. TIMER TYPES.....	4
13.2.1. On Pulse Timer Mode.....	4
13.2.2. Off Delay Timer Mode	5
13.2.3. One Shot Timer Mode	6
13.2.4. Minimum On Timer Mode.....	7
13.3. TO VIEW AND ADJUST TIMER PARAMETERS	8
13.3.1. Timer Parameters	9
13.4. THE CLOCK.....	10
13.4.1. Clock Parameters	10
13.5. TIME BASED ALARMS.....	11
13.5.1. Timer Alarm Parameters	11
13.6. TOTALISERS.....	12
13.6.1. Totaliser Parameters	12
13.7. APPLICATION EXAMPLE	14
13.7.1. Compressor Timer	14

13. Chapter 13 Timer, Clock, Totaliser, Operation

13.1. WHAT ARE TIMER BLOCKS?

Timer Blocks allow the controller to use time/date information as part of the control process. They can be triggered by an event and used to initiate an action. For example, a programmer can be set to RUN at a particular day and time or an action delayed as a result of a digital input signal. The Timer Blocks page is only available if Timer Blocks has been enabled in configuration level. The Timer Blocks fitted in the 2604 controller are:

Four timer blocks	Timer blocks can have four modes of operation which are explained in Section 13.2. The timer type is set in Configuration level. The timer is activated by an event. The event is also defined in Configuration mode or it may be triggered by a parameter in the list. Timing continues for a set time period. The output can be 'wired' in configuration mode to operate a further event.
Clock	This is a real time clock which can be used to operate other time based functions.
Two alarm (clock) blocks	Alarms can be switched on or off at a particular day or time and provide a digital output. The alarm output can be wired in configuration mode to operate an event.
Four totaliser blocks	Totaliser blocks can also be 'wired', in Configuration level, to any parameter. They are used to provide a running total of a parameter and give an output when a pre-set total is reached. An example might be to totalise the flow through a pipe. The output can also be 'wired' in Configuration level to operate an event such as a relay.

Timer Blocks are grouped under page headers as follows:

TIMER BLOCKS ▶	Timer 1 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 1
	Timer 2 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 2
	Timer 3 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 3
	Timer 4 Page	Parameters to set the time period and read elapsed time for timer 4
	Clock Page	To set time and day
	Alarm 1 Page	Parameters to set a time and day alarm and read the alarm output condition for alarm 1
	Alarm 2 Page	Parameters to set a time and day alarm and read the alarm output condition for alarm 2
	Totaliser1 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.
	Totaliser2 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.
	Totaliser3 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.
	Totaliser4 Page	Parameters to read the totalised value, set and monitor an alarm on totalised value.

13.2. TIMER TYPES

Each timer block can be configured to operate in four different modes. These modes are explained below

13.2.1. On Pulse Timer Mode

This timer is used to generate a fixed length pulse from an edge trigger.

- The output is set to On when the input changes from Off to On.
- The output remains On until the time has elapsed
- If the 'Trigger' input parameter recurs while the Output is On, the Elapsed Time will reset to zero and the Output will remain On
- The triggered variable will follow the state of the output

Figure 13.1 illustrates the behaviour of the timer under different input conditions.

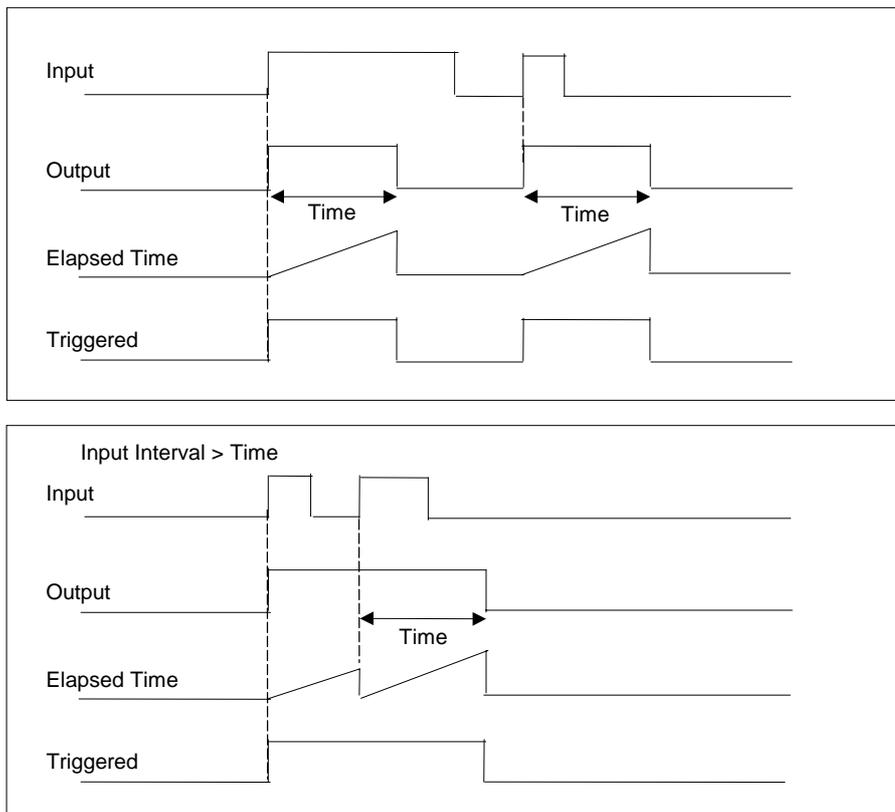


Figure 13-1: On Pulse Timer Under Different Input Conditions

13.2.2. Off Delay Timer Mode

This timer provides a delay between the trigger event and the Timer output. If a short pulse triggers the Timer, then a pulse of one sample time (110ms) will be generated after the delay time.

- The Output is set to Off when the Input changes from Off to On.
- The Output remains Off until the Time has elapsed.
- If the Input returns to Off before the time has elapsed, the Timer will continue until the Elapsed Time equals the Time. It will then generate a pulse of one Sample Time duration.
- Once the Time has elapsed, the Output will be set to On.
- The Output will remain On until the Input is cleared to Off.
- The Triggered variable will be set to On by the Input changing from Off to On. It will remain On until both the Time has elapsed and the Output has reset to Off.

Figure 13.2 illustrates the behaviour of the timer under different input conditions.

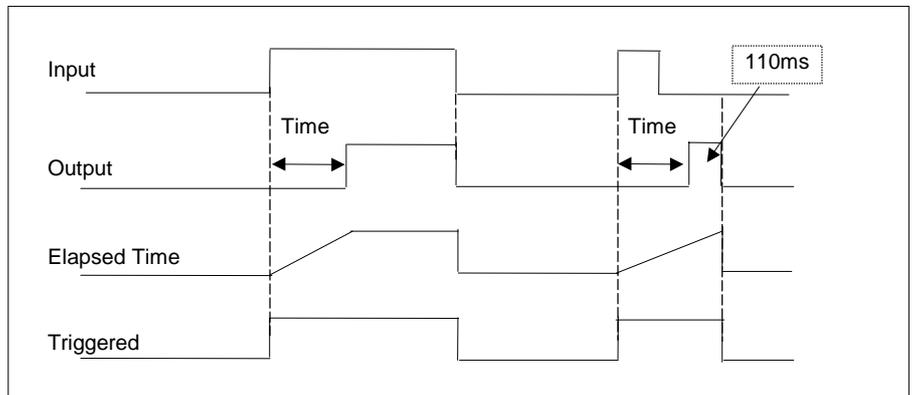


Figure 13-2: Off Delay Timer Under Different Input Conditions

13.2.3. One Shot Timer Mode

This timer behaves like a simple oven timer.

- When the Time is edited to a non-zero value the Output is set to On
- The Time value is decremented until it reaches zero. The Output is then cleared to Off
- The Time value can be edited at any point to increase or decrease the duration of the On time
- Once set to zero, the Time is not reset to a previous value, it must be edited by the operator to start the next On-Time
- The Input is used to gate the Output. If the Input is set, the time will count down to zero. If the Input is cleared to Off, then the Time will hold and the Output will switch Off until the Input is next set.

Note: since the Input is a digital wire, it is possible for the operator to NOT wire it, and set the Input value to On which permanently enables the timer.

- The Triggered variable will be set to On as soon as the Time is edited. It will reset when the Output is cleared to Off (Time reaches zero).

Figure 13.3 illustrates the behaviour of the timer under different input conditions.

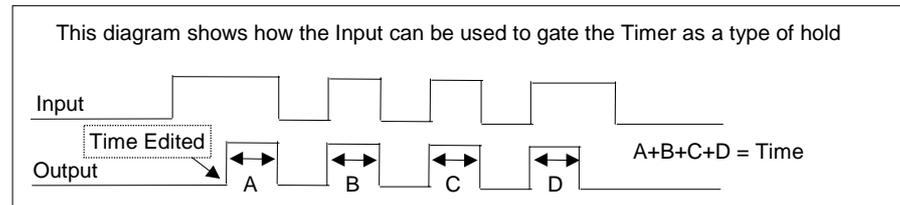
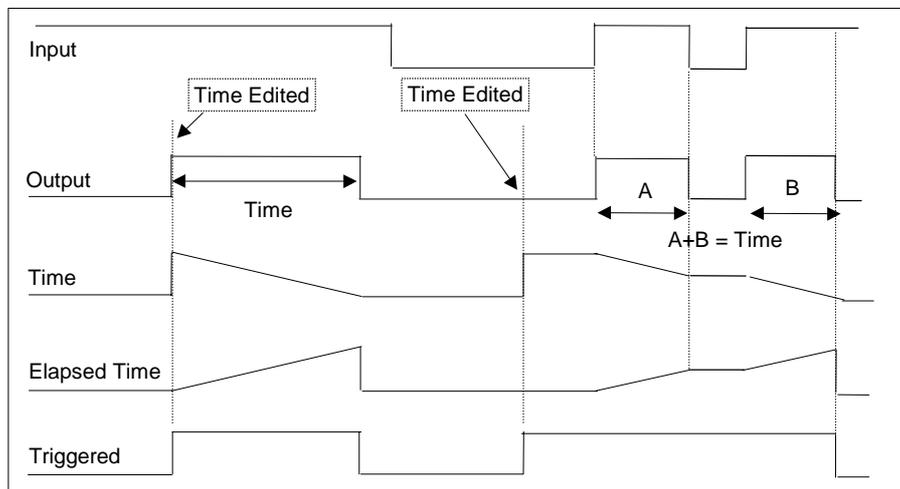


Figure 13-3: One Shot Timer

13.2.4. Minimum On Timer Mode

This timer has been targeted at guaranteeing that the output remains On for a duration after the input signal has been removed. It may be used, for example, to ensure that a compressor is not cycled excessively.

- The output will be set to On when the Input changes from Off to On.
- When the Input changes from On to Off, the elapsed time will start incrementing towards the set Time.
- The Output will remain On until the elapsed time has reached the set Time. The Output will then switch Off.
- If the Input signal returns to On while the Output is On, the elapsed time will reset to 0, ready to begin incrementing when the Input switches Off.
- The Triggered variable will be set while the elapsed time is >0 . It will indicate that the timer is counting.

Figure 13.4 illustrates the behaviour of the timer under different input conditions.

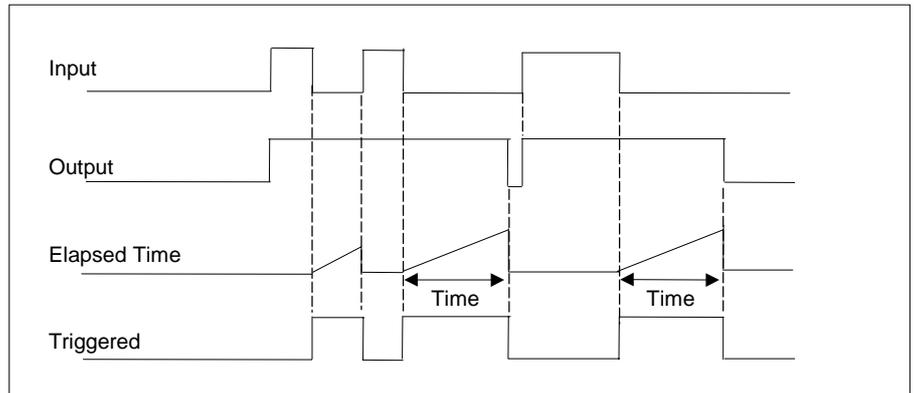
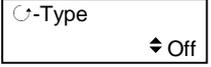


Figure 13-4: Minimum On Timer Under Different Input Conditions

13.3. TO VIEW AND ADJUST TIMER PARAMETERS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes																								
<p>1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select 'TIMER BLOCKS'</p> <p>2. Press  or  to choose a Timer Page</p>		<p>This page is only available if 'Timer Blocks is Enabled in the INSTRUMENT (Options) page</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td colspan="2">Choices are:-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timer 1</td> <td>To configure</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timer 2</td> <td>timer types</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timer 3</td> <td>and</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timer 4</td> <td>parameters</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clock</td> <td>To set time and day</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Alarm 1</td> <td>To wire and</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Alarm 2</td> <td>set alarm outputs</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Totaliser 1</td> <td>To wire and</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Totaliser 2</td> <td>set totaliser</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Totaliser 3</td> <td>1, 2, 3 & 4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Totaliser 4</td> <td>parameters</td> </tr> </table>	Choices are:-		Timer 1	To configure	Timer 2	timer types	Timer 3	and	Timer 4	parameters	Clock	To set time and day	Alarm 1	To wire and	Alarm 2	set alarm outputs	Totaliser 1	To wire and	Totaliser 2	set totaliser	Totaliser 3	1, 2, 3 & 4	Totaliser 4	parameters
Choices are:-																										
Timer 1	To configure																									
Timer 2	timer types																									
Timer 3	and																									
Timer 4	parameters																									
Clock	To set time and day																									
Alarm 1	To wire and																									
Alarm 2	set alarm outputs																									
Totaliser 1	To wire and																									
Totaliser 2	set totaliser																									
Totaliser 3	1, 2, 3 & 4																									
Totaliser 4	parameters																									
<p>3. Press  to show the first parameter in the selected page – in this example 'Type'</p> <p>4. Press  or  to select the timer type</p>		<p>Choices are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off Min-On Timer One Shot Timer Off Delay Timer On Pulse timer 																								

The full list of parameters is shown in the following table.

They are selected and adjusted as described in the above procedure



13.3.1. Timer Parameters

Table Number: 13.3.1.		This page allows you to configure timer type and set up Timer Parameters		TIMER BLOCKS (Timer 1 to 4 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Type	Timer type	Off On Pulse Timer Off Delay Timer One Shot Timer Min-On Timer	Off	Conf	
Input Src	Timer input wire source	Modbus address		Conf	
Time	Timer Time	0:00:00.0		L1	
Input	Trigger/Gate input. Turn On to start timing	Off On	Off	L1	
Triggered	Timer triggered (timing)	Off On		R/O L1	
Output	Timer output. Occurs when the timer has timed out	Off On	Off	L1	
Elapsed Time	Timer elapsed time	0:00:00.0		R/O L1	

The above table is repeated for Timers 2 to 4.



To change hours, minutes and seconds individually, press and together. This will highlight each area individually. Then use or to change the highlighted value.

The maximum settable time is 99:59:59.9

13.4. THE CLOCK

A real time clock is provided for use with various timer functions in the controller.

13.4.1. Clock Parameters

Table Number: 13.4.1.		This page allows you to configure the clock		TIMER BLOCKS (Clock Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Mode	Real time clock mode	Run Stop Set		Conf	
Time	Real time clock time	HH:MM:SS		L1 R/O when Mode =Set	
Day	Real time clock day	Never Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday Mon-Fri Mon-Sat Sat-Sun Every Day		L1 R/O when Mode =Set	

13.5. TIME BASED ALARMS

There are two alarms available which allow an output to be turned **on** or **off** at a set time and day.

13.5.1. Timer Alarm Parameters

Table Number: 13.5.1.		This page allows you to set up Timer Alarm Parameters		TIMER BLOCKS (Alarm 1 or 2 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Enable Src	Enable input wire source	Modbus address	None	Conf	
Enable	RTC Alarm 1 Enable Enables the timer alarm	Off On	Off	L1	
On-Day	Sets the day to turn the alarm on	Never Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday Mon-Fri, Mon-Sat Sat-Sun Every Day	Never	L3	
On-Time	Sets the time of day to turn the alarm on	0:00:00 to 24:00:00	0:00:00	L3	
Off-Day	Sets the day to turn the alarm off	Never Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday Mon-Fri, Mon-Sat Sat-Sun Every Day	Never	L3	
Off-Time	Sets the time of day to turn the alarm off	0:00:00 to 24:00:00	0:00:00	L3	
Output	Alarm 1 output.	Off On	Off	L1	

13.6. TOTALISERS

There are four totaliser function blocks which are used to measure the total quantity of a measurement integrated over time. A totaliser can, by soft wiring, be connected to any measured value. The outputs from the totaliser are its integrated value, and an alarm state. The user may set a setpoint which causes the alarm to activate once the integration exceeds the setpoint.

The totaliser has the following attributes:-

1. Run/Hold/Reset

In Run the totaliser will integrate its input and continuously test against an alarm setpoint.

In Hold the totaliser will stop integrating its input but will continue to test for alarm conditions.

In Reset the totaliser will be zeroed, and alarms will be reset.

2. Alarm Setpoint

If the setpoint is a positive number, the alarm will activate when the total is greater than the setpoint.

If the setpoint is a negative number, the alarm will activate when the total is lower (more negative) than the setpoint.

If the totaliser alarm setpoint is set to 0.0, the alarm will be off. It will not detect values above or below.

The alarm output is a single state output. It may be cleared by resetting the totaliser, or by changing the alarm setpoint.

3. The total is limited to a maximum of 99999 and a minimum of -9999.

13.6.1. Totaliser Parameters

Table Number: 13.6.1.		This page allows you to set up Totaliser Parameters		TIMER BLOCKS (Totaliser1 (to 4) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Input Src	Totaliser monitored parameter source	Modbus address		Conf	
Reset Src	Totaliser reset source	Modbus address		Conf	
Run Src	Totaliser run source	Modbus address		Conf	
Hold Src	Totaliser hold source	Modbus address		Conf	
Units	Totaliser units	See Appendix D2		Conf	
Resolution	Totaliser resolution	XXXXX	XXXXX	Conf	

		XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX X.XXXX		
Reset	Resets the totaliser	No Yes	No	L1
Run	Runs the totaliser	Run Reset	Reset	L1
Hold	Holds the totaliser at its current value Note: The Run & Hold parameters are designed to be wired to (for example) digital inputs. Run must be 'on' and Hold must be 'off' for the totaliser to operate.	Hold Continue	Hold	L1
Total	This shows the totalised value	99999 to -9999		L1
Alarm Setpoint	Sets the totalised value at which an alarm will occur			L3
Alarm Output	This is a read only value which indicates the alarm output On or Off. The totalised value can be a positive number or a negative number. If the number is positive the alarm occurs when Total > + Alarm Setpoint If the number is negative the alarm occurs when Total > - Alarm Setpoint	Off On	Off	L1
Input Val	Totaliser monitored value	-9999 to 99999		L1

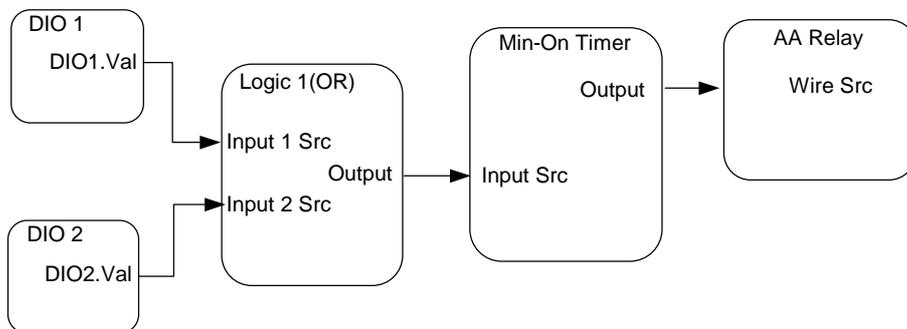
13.7. APPLICATION EXAMPLE

13.7.1. Compressor Timer

This example uses the Min-On Timer to start a compressor in an environmental chamber. The compressor must be kept running for 5 to 15 minutes after the controller stops calling for cooling. If the controller starts to call for cooling again the “compressor timeout” timer deactivates until the cooling turns off again. The same action is required for dehumidification.

13.7.1.1. Implementation

This example assumes that the controller has already been set up as a 2 loop temperature and humidity controller. The controller will call for the compressor to be switched on when either the cool or de-humidify outputs are switched on. The cool output is DIO1 and the de-humidify output is DIO2. The compressor output is the AA Relay.



Enter Config Mode	
In LOGIC OPERS/Logic 1 Page	Set "Operation" = OR Set "Input 1 Src" = 05402 :----- Set "Input 2 Src" = 05450:----- <i>(Connects cool and dehumidify outputs to the logic operator)</i>
In TIMER BLOCKS/Timer 1 Page	Set "Type" = Min-On Timer Set "Input Src" = 07176: LgOp1.OP Set "Time" = 0:10:00:0 <i>(Uses logic 1 to trigger timer)</i>
In STANDARD IO/AA Relay Page	Set "Channel Type" = On/Off Set "Wire Src" = 08963: Tmr1.OP <i>(Assigns AA Relay to Timer1 OP)</i>

14.	CHAPTER 14 ADVANCED FUNCTIONS	2
14.1.	PATTERN GENERATOR	2
14.1.1.	Example: Programmer Event Outputs.....	2
14.2.	ANALOGUE SWITCHES.....	5
14.2.1.	To Set up an Analogue Switch.....	5
14.2.2.	Analogue Switch Parameters	6
14.3.	USER VALUES	7
14.3.1.	To Access User Values	7
14.3.2.	User Values Parameter Table	8
14.4.	USER MESSAGES.....	9
14.4.1.	To Configure A User Message.....	10
14.5.	USER SWITCHES	11
14.5.1.	To Configure User Switches	11
14.6.	CUSTOM ENUMERATIONS.....	12
14.6.1.	To Configure Custom Enumerations.....	12

14. Chapter 14 Advanced Functions

14.1. PATTERN GENERATOR

The pattern generator allows groups of digital values to be selected from a single input number. This number is displayed as **'Pattern'** and may be given a name, using the **'User Text'** feature described in section 5.2.6. This is known as a **'User Enumeration'**.

An example of an application for the Pattern Generator would be to allow fixed output patterns to be applied in different segments of a program. This may be useful where the same pattern is repeated in different segments or in other programs. It is achieved by soft wiring (see Chapter 3) to the **'Pattern Src'** as shown in the example below.

The pattern generator consists of 16 patterns displayed as **'Pattern 0'** to **'Pattern 15'**. Each pattern consists of up to 16 digital outputs and any two patterns, displayed as **'Dig Group 1'** and **'Dig Group 2'**, can be active at any one time.

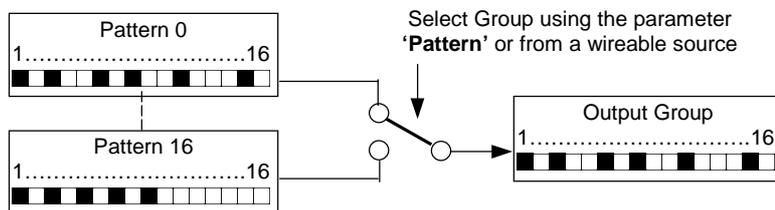


Figure 14-1: Digital Pattern Generator

14.1.1. Example: Programmer Event Outputs

In this example Program User Values are used to select the output pattern. The outputs of the pattern generator are wired to relay outputs of an IO Expander, see also Chapter 22. When Program User Value 1 = 0 then the digital values of pattern 0 will be active. When Program User Value 1 = 1 the digital values of pattern 1 will be active, and so on.

The patterns can also be enumerated so that each can be assigned a name. This will allow the operator to select, say, the "Heating Pattern" to be active within a program segment.

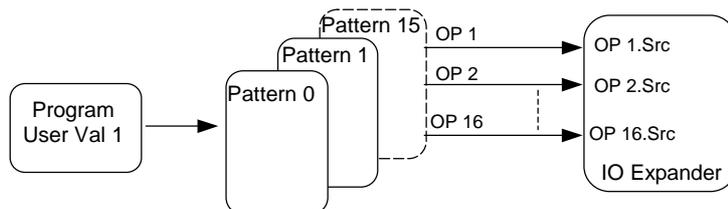
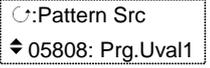
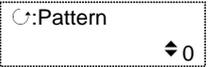
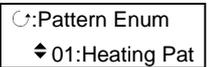
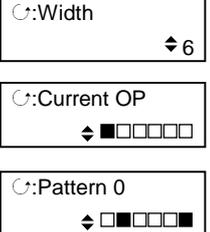
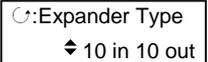


Figure 14-2: Pattern Selected by Programmer User Values

14.1.1.1. To Configure The Pattern Generator

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' PATTERN GEN '		The PATTERN GEN page is only available if Enabled as described in section 5.2.
2. Press  or  to choose ' Dig Group 1 (or 2) '		
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the selected page – in this example ' Pattern Src '		In this example Programmer User Value 1 is wired to the Pattern Source
4. Press  or  to select the Modbus address of the parameter you wish to wire to		
5. Press  to show ' Pattern '		' Pattern ' is read only when wired. It can only be used to select the pattern – 0 to 15- if it is not wired.
6. Press  to show ' Patt High Lim '		' Pattern High Lim ' can be used to limit the number of patterns in any particular application. A limit of 8 allows patterns 0 to 7
7. Press  or  to set the high limit value		
5. Press  to show ' Pattern Enum '		This parameter allows you to select a name (or ' Enumeration ') for the pattern.
8. Press  or  to select the ' User Text ' which contains the appropriate message		See also section 5.3 for User Text examples and section 14.6 for enumeration examples.
9. Press  to show ' Width ', ' Current OP ', ' Pattern 0 '		' Width ' limits the number of digits in each pattern between 1 and 16 – six in this example. ' Current OP ' displays the currently selected output Pattern 0 allows a set of on/off outputs to be configured for the selected pattern group.
10. Press  or  to change to change the first digit in the pattern to On (■) or Off (□)		

14.1.1.2. Example: To Wire Pattern Generator Outputs to the IO Expander Inputs

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes																
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enable the IO Expander in INSTRUMENT (Options) page 2. Press  as many times as necessary to select the 'IO EXPANDER' page 3. Press  to select expander type e.g. '10 in 10 out' and confirm as instructed 4. Press  to Scroll to 'OP 1 Src' 5. Press  or  to select the modbus address of Pattern Generator Digital OP 1 	  	<p>The modbus addresses of the digital outputs are:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Group 1</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OP 1</td> <td>9973</td> </tr> <tr> <td>to</td> <td>to</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OP16</td> <td>9988</td> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2">Group 2</th> </tr> <tr> <td>OP 1</td> <td>10037</td> </tr> <tr> <td>to</td> <td>to</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OP16</td> <td>10052</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p> Tip: Use the copy and paste procedure described in section 3.1.2. to select these parameters</p>	Group 1		OP 1	9973	to	to	OP16	9988	Group 2		OP 1	10037	to	to	OP16	10052
Group 1																		
OP 1	9973																	
to	to																	
OP16	9988																	
Group 2																		
OP 1	10037																	
to	to																	
OP16	10052																	

14.2. ANALOGUE SWITCHES

Analogue Switches allow groups of analogue values to be selected from a single input number. This number may be provided from a user defined analogue source. or, if not wired, the analogue values can be selected from this number. As with the Pattern Generator the switch can be given a user defined name using the ‘User Enumeration’ feature.

There are 8 Analogue Switches, displayed as ‘Switch 1’ to ‘Switch 7’, and each switch can store up to 8 values displayed as ‘Value 0 ’ to ‘Value 8’.

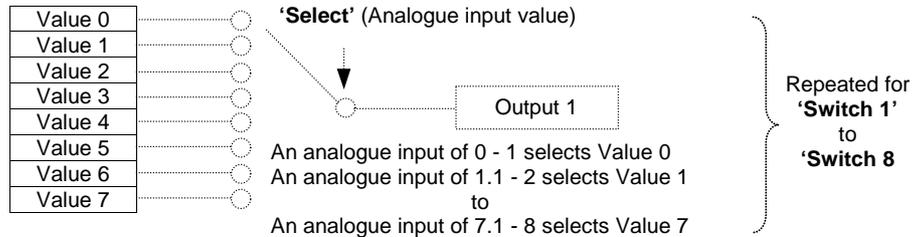
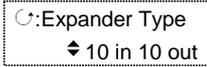


Figure 14-3: Representation of an Analogue Switch

14.2.1. To Set up an Analogue Switch

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ‘ANALOG SWITCH’		The ANALOG SWITCH page is only available if Enabled as described in section 5.2.
2. Press  or  to select the required switch, e.g. ‘Switch 1’		
3. Using  button to scroll to the required parameter and  or  buttons to change the value of the parameter, set up the values as required		

The full list of parameters is shown in the following table.

They are selected and adjusted as described in the above procedure



14.2.2. Analogue Switch Parameters

Table Number: 14.2.2.		This page allows you to configure Analogue Switches		ANALOG SWITCH (Switch 1 to 8 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Units	To select units for the Switch	See Appendix D2	None	Conf	
Resolution	Analog switch resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX	XXXXX	Conf	
Value Lo Limit	Values lower limit	Display range		Conf	
Value Hi Limit	Values higher limit	Display range		Conf	
Select Hi Lim	Select the upper limit of the number of switches required. If set to 5 the first 6 values can be selected	0 to 7	0	Conf	
Select Enum	User string for the enumeration of the switch	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Not Enumerated	Conf	
Select Src	Modbus address for the source of the switch	Modbus address	None	Conf	
Select	Select the switch within the limit set 'Select Hi Lim'	0 to 7	0	L3	
Current OP	Current working output If an out of range 'Select' value is delivered by the 'Select Src' (when wired) 'Current OP' is always set to Value 0. i.e. Value 0 could be configured as the safe state value.			L3 R/O	
Value 0	Analog value 0	Display range		L3	
Value 1	Analog value 1	Display range		L3	
Value 2	Analog value 2	Display range		L3	
Value 3	Analog value 3	Display range		L3	
Value 4	Analog value 4	Display range		L3	
Value 5	Analog value 5	Display range		L3	
Value 6	Analog value 6	Display range		L3	
Value 7	Analog value 7	Display range		L3	

14.3. USER VALUES

User Values are normally used as constants in analogue or digital operations.

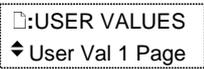
In an analogue operation the User Value may be used as a constant in a calculation.

In a digital operation it may be used to select an event. For example, it could be used to select a pattern from the pattern generator in the same way as the Programmer User Value was used in example 14.1.1.2. In this example the 'Program User Val 1' would be replaced by the 'User (1 to 12) Value'.

Each User Value can be given a user defined name using the '**User Enumeration**' feature. This feature is generally intended for use when the User Value is used in a digital operation.

The 2604 controller contains up to 12 user values, which are in a single list under the page header '**USER VALUES**'.

14.3.1. To Access User Values

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' USER VALUES ' 2. Press  or  to select the required page		The USER VALUES page is only available if Enabled as described in section 5.2. Up to 12 User Values can be chosen
3. Press  to select the first parameter in the list. In this case ' Units ' 4. Press  or  to select units for the user value		The choices are given in Appendix D2.

The list of User Value parameters available under this list header is shown in the following table.

They are selected and adjusted using the procedure described above



14.3.2. User Values Parameter Table

Table Number: 14.3.2.		This page allows you to configure User Values		USER VALUES (User Val 1 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Units	User value units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf	
Resolution	User values resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX		Conf	
Low Limit	User values low limit	Display min to display max		Conf	
High Limit	User values high limit	Display min to display max		Conf	
User 1 Value	User 1 value	User val lo lim to user val hi lim		L1	
User Val Enu	Allows a name, chosen from User Text, to be given to the User Value	Not Enumerated 01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Not Enumerated	Conf	

The above table is repeated for User Values 2 to 12.

Note: It is often required to generate a User Value = 1, and to wire this from a source. A User Value can be used for this but this takes up one or more of the User Values available. An alternative is to use the parameter 'Const.1' which is a User Value = 1. This parameter is listed in Appendix D.

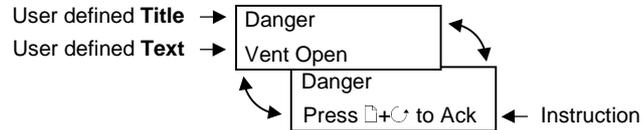


When using Custom Enumerations the Resolution should not be set to more than one decimal point since the User Text library is limited to 50 strings. See also Example 3 14.6.1.3.

14.4. USER MESSAGES

When the controller is in normal operating mode a user defined message may be made to appear on the lower display as a result of an event. The event may be derived from any parameter by defining its Modbus address when configuring the User Message feature.

The format of the message is shown below:-



The 'title' of the message is shown in the upper section of the lower display and the 'text' of the message is shown in the lower section. Both of these messages are chosen using User Text (section 5.3).

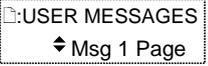
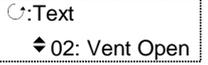
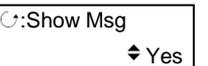
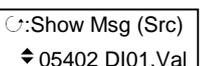
The message alternates with an instruction to acknowledge. When acknowledged the message disappears until the event becomes true once more. A timeout for the message may also be set when configuring the User Message feature.

User messages can only be set up in configuration level. They can, however, be inspected in Level 1.

Up to eight User Messages can be configured. Message 1 has a higher priority than Message 2 and so on.

The following example shows how to configure this user message so that it is displayed when digital input 01 becomes true.

14.4.1. To Configure A User Message

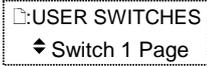
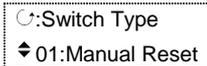
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' USER MESSAGES ' 2. Press  or  to select ' Msg 1 (to 8) '		In this example User message 1 is chosen
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the list. In this case ' Title ' 4. Press  or  to choose a user defined text set up as described in section 5.2.6.		In this example User Text 01 configured as 'Danger' is chosen
5. Press  to show ' Text ' 6. Press  or  to choose a user defined text set up as described in section 5.2.6.		In this example User Text 02 configured as 'Vent Open' is chosen
7. Press  to ' Timeout ' 8. Press  or  to set		If 'Timeout' is set to a value of:- 5 sec 10 sec 1 min 5 min or 10 min
9. Press  to ' Show Msg ' 10. Press  or  to choose ' Yes '		the user message will disappear after this period and will only re-appear when the digital input becomes true once more.
5. Press  to ' Show Msg (Src) ' 11. Press  or  to choose the Modbus address of the parameter which will trigger the message when the controller is in operation mode		The parameters ' Show Msg ' and ' Dismissed ' are intended for use over digital communications.

14.5. USER SWITCHES

User Switches are similar to User Values when the User Value is used in a digital operation. They may, however, be configured as Auto Resetting or Manual Resetting and typically utilised in ‘User Pages’ (see Chapter 15) to perform a specified task. A User Switch can be given a user defined name using the ‘User Enumeration’ feature described in previous pages.

Up to eight User Switches are available

14.5.1. To Configure User Switches

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ‘ USER SWITCHES ’ 2. Press  or  to select ‘ Switch 1 (to 8) ’		The USER SWITCHES page is only available if Enabled as described in section 5.2.
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the list. In this case ‘ Switch Type ’ 4. Press  or  to select the type		In this view the Switch Type is configured as Manual Reset. The alternative choice is Auto Reset.
5. Press  to show ‘ Switch Enum ’ 6. Press  or  to choose a user defined text set up as described in section 5.2.6.		The switch enumeration is chosen from User Text as ‘01:Open’. The Switch State toggles between User Text 01 and the next User Text 02.
7. Press  to ‘ Switch State ’ 8. Press  or  to set		In this example User Text 02 is configured as ‘closed’ so that the switch toggles between Open and Closed.

14.6. CUSTOM ENUMERATIONS

'Custom Enumerations' allow a user to enumerate parameter values with their own text.

Parameters which support custom enumerations are:-

- Program User Values – see section 6.5
- Digital Pattern Generator Inputs – see section 14.1
- Analogue Switches – see section 14.2
- User Switches – see section 14.5
- Digital Programmer Select parameter – see section 7.2.
- Digital IO Status parameters – see section 19.8
- Logic Operator 'Output Value' parameters – see section 17.2.1.

14.6.1. To Configure Custom Enumerations

This consists of two operations:-

1. **Define areas of text in the INSTRUMENT/User Text page which are to be used for custom enumerations as follows:-**

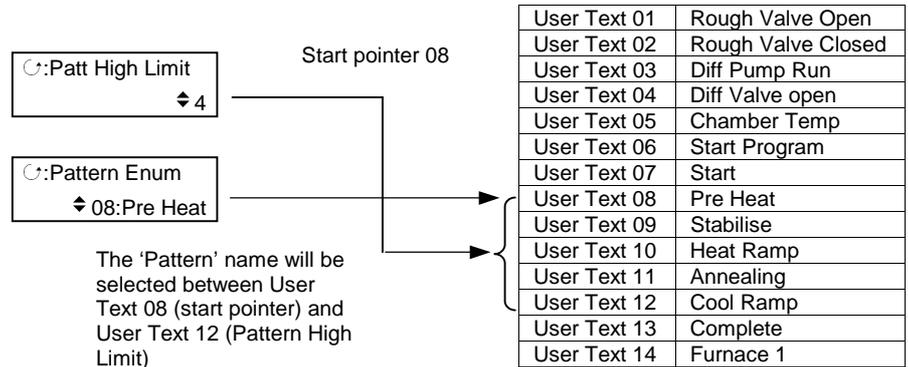
In INSTRUMENT/ User Text page Set User Text = Enabled
 Set 'Text Number' (from 1 to 50) to represent the beginning of the text area
 Configure the 'Text' for the required message using the  or 
 buttons to change the text and the  button to move to the next character

The full procedure for this is described in section 5.2.6.

User Text 01	Rough Valve Open
User Text 02	Rough Valve Closed
User Text 03	Diff Pump Run
User Text 04	Diff Valve open
User Text 05	Chamber Temp
User Text 06	Start Program
User Text 07	Start
User Text 08	Pre Heat
User Text 09	Stabilise
User Text 10	Heat Ramp
User Text 11	Annealing
User Text 12	Cool Ramp
User Text 13	Complete

← This table shows an example of a text area

2. **Set up a pointer which defines the start point from which the text is to be selected and the range of the user text, as follows:-**
- Choose the parameter to be enumerated, for example, 'Pattern Enum' in the PATTERN GEN (Dig Group 1 page)
 - Define the range of the user text
 - Choose the start point from which the user text is to be taken. Using the table below this user Text 08: Pre-Heat



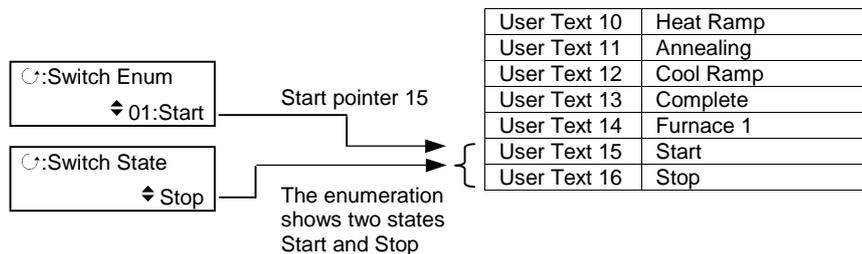
The 'Pattern' name will be selected between User Text 08 (start pointer) and User Text 12 (Pattern High Limit)

Pattern high limit defines the number of enumerations
A Pattern high limit of 4 = 0 to 4 i.e. 5 enumerations

The following examples show how to apply this to different types of parameter.

14.6.1.1. User Switch

This is an example of a parameter which has just two states.



The procedure for configuring the above example is as follows

First set up the required user text as described in the previous section

Then:-

In USER SWITCHES/Switch 1 page, Set 'Switch Type' = Auto or Manual Reset

Set 'Switch Enum' = User Text 15 'Start'

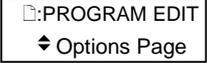
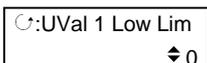
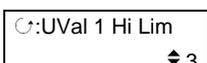
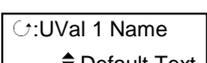
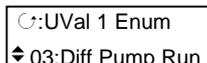
Each time the  or  buttons is pressed the 'Switch State' will toggle between 'Start' or 'Stop'

14.6.1.2. Programmer User Values

In this example four enumerations will be allocated from User Text to Programmer User Value 1.

The User Text example which will be used is shown in this table:-

01 Usr1	Rough Valve Open	}	Start of enumerated text defined by paragraph 6 below Range of enumerated text defined by Low and High limits in paragraphs 3 & 4 below.
02 Usr2	Rough Valve Closed		
03 Usr3	Diff Pump Run		
04 Usr4	Diff Valve open		
05 Usr5	Chamber Temp		
06 Usr6	Start Program		
07 Usr7	Start		
08 Usr8	Pre Heat		

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Select 'PROGRAM EDIT' (Options Page)		
2. Scroll to 'Prog Usr Val1?' and select 'Yes'		To enable Programmer User Value 1
3. Scroll to 'UVal1 Low Lim' and select '0'		Range of enumerations is defined by 'Low Lim' and 'High Lim' If Low lim = 0 and High Lim = 3 range = 4
4. Scroll to 'UVal1 Hi Lim' and select '3'		If Low lim = 1 and High Lim = 3 range = 3 The starting point is unaffected
5. Scroll to 'UVal1 Name' and select a name for the Programmer User Value 1 from User Text if required		
6. Scroll to 'UVal1 Enum' and select a start point from which the user text is to be taken		This defines the start point from which user text is taken

When a program is set up in PROGRAM EDIT (Segments Page) the parameter 'Prog User Val 1' can be give the enumerations 'Diff Pump Run'; 'Diff Valve open'; 'Chamber Temp'; or 'Start Program'.

15.	CHAPTER 15 ANALOGUE OPERATORS	2
15.1.	WHAT ARE ANALOGUE OPERATORS?	2
15.1.1.	Analogue Operations	3
15.2.	TO CONFIGURE ANALOGUE OPERATORS	4
15.2.1.	Analogue Operator Parameters	5

15. Chapter 15 Analogue Operators

15.1. WHAT ARE ANALOGUE OPERATORS?

Analogue Operators allow the controller to perform mathematical operations on two input values. These values can be sourced from any available parameter including Analogue Values, User Values and Digital Values. Each input value can be scaled using a multiplying factor or scalar as shown in Figure 15.1.

The parameters to use, the type of calculation to be performed and the acceptable limits of the calculation are determined in Configuration level. In access level 3 you can change values of each of the scalars. In Access levels 2 & 3, provided the Analogue Operators page has been promoted, the input values and the result of the calculation can be read.

The Analogue Operators page is only available if Analogue and Logic Operators have been enabled in configuration level as described in section 5.2.

Up to 24 separate operations can be performed and a separate page header is provided for each one.

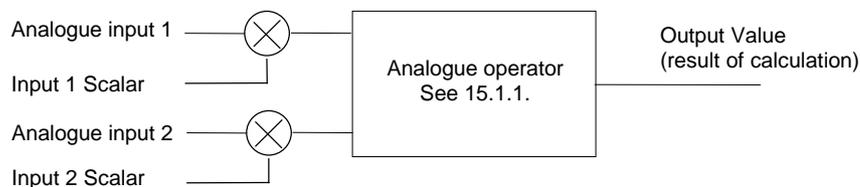
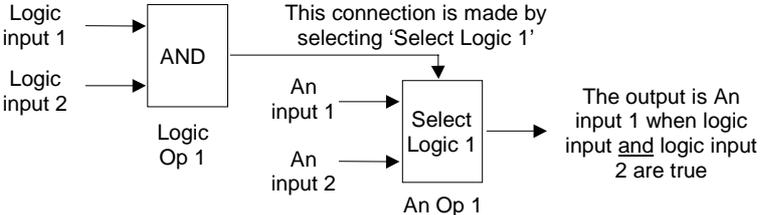


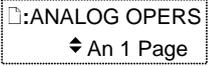
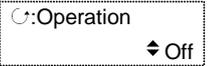
Figure 15-1: Analogue Operators

15.1.1. Analogue Operations

The following operations can be performed:

Off	The selected analogue operator is turned off
Add	The output result is the addition of Input 1 and Input 2
Subtract	The output result is the difference Input 1 and Input 2 where Input 1 > Input 2
Multiply	The output result is the multiplication of Input 1 and Input 2
Divide	The output result is Input 1 divided by Input 2
Absolute Difference	The output result is the absolute difference between Input 1 and 2
Select Max	The output result is the maximum of Input 1 and Input 2
Select Min	The output result is the minimum of Input 1 and Input 2
Hot Swap	Input 1 appears at the output provided input 1 is 'good'. If input 1 is 'bad' then input 2 value will appear at the output. An example of a bad input occurs during a sensor break condition.
Sample and Hold	Normally input 1 will be an analogue value and input B will be digital. The output tracks input 1 when input 2 = 1 (Sample). The output will remain at the current value when input 2 = 0 (Hold). Input 2 can be an analogue value and must change from 0 to 100% to provide a sample and hold at the output.
Power	The output is the value at input 1 raised to the power of the value at input 2. I.e. $\text{input 1}^{\text{input 2}}$
Square Root	The output result is the square root of Input 1. Input 2 has no effect.
Log	The output is the logarithm (base 10) of Input 1. Input 2 has no effect
Ln	The output is the logarithm (base n) of Input 1. Input 2 has no effect
Exp	The output result is the exponential of Input 1. Input 2 has no effect
10x	The output result is 10 raised to the power of Input 1 value. I.e. $10^{\text{input 1}}$. Input 2 has no effect
Select Logic 1 up to Select Logic 32	<p>Logic Operator 1 to 32 is used to control which Analogue Input is switched to the output of the Analogue Operator. If the output from the logic operator is true input 1 is switched through to the output. If false input 2 is switched through to the output. See example below:-</p>  <p>The diagram shows a flow from left to right. On the left, two inputs labeled 'Logic input 1' and 'Logic input 2' enter a rectangular box labeled 'AND' and 'Logic Op 1'. An arrow points from the right side of the AND box to a second rectangular box labeled 'Select Logic 1' and 'An Op 1'. Above this arrow, text reads 'This connection is made by selecting 'Select Logic 1''. Below the arrow, text reads 'An input 1' and 'An input 2'. From the right side of the Select Logic 1 box, an arrow points to the text 'The output is An input 1 when logic input and logic input 2 are true'.</p>

15.2. TO CONFIGURE ANALOGUE OPERATORS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' ANALOG OPERS ' 2. Press  or  to choose ' An 1 (to 24) Page '		
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the selected page – in this example ' Operation ' 4. Press  or  to choose the calculation to be performed by the Operation		The first parameter is ' Operation '. The choices are: Off, Add, Subtract, Multiply, Divide, Absolute Difference, Select Max, Select Min, Hot Swap, Sample Hold, Square Root, Log, Ln, Exp, 10x, Select Logic 1 to Select Logic 32.

Remaining parameters in the Analogue Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table 

15.2.1. Analogue Operator Parameters

Table Number: 15.2.1.		This page allows you to configure Analogue Operators 1 to 24		ANALOGUE OPERS (Analogue 1 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Operation	The operation to be performed	See 15.1.1	Off	L1	
Input 1 Src	Input 1 source	Modbus address		Conf	
Input 1 Scalar	Input 1 scalar	Range depends on Input 1 Src		L3	
Input 2 Src	Input 2 source	Modbus address		Conf	
Input 2 Scalar	Input 2 scalar	Range depends on Input 2 Src		L3	
OP Units	Output units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf	
OP Resolution	Output resolution	XXXXX XXXX.X XXX.XX XX.XXX		Conf	
Low Limit	Output low limit	Display min to display max		Conf	
High Limit	Output high limit	Display min to display max		Conf	
Default Enable	Enable fall back	Clip (Bad) Fallback (Bad) Clip (Good) Fallback (Good)		Conf	
Default OP	Fall back value	Display min to display max		Conf	
Input 1 Value	Input 1 Value	Display min to display max		L1	
Input 2 Value	Input 2 Value	Display min to display max		L1	
Output Value	output Value	Display min to display max		L1	
Status	Status	Good Bad		L1	

The above table is repeated for Analogue Operators 2 to 24.

16.	CHAPTER 16 LOGIC OPERATORS	2
16.1.1.	Logic Operations	2
16.2.	TO CONFIGURE LOGIC OPERATORS	3
16.2.1.	Logic Operator Parameters	4

16. Chapter 16 Logic Operators

Logic Operators allow the controller to perform logical calculations on two input values. These values can be sourced from any available parameter including Analogue Values, User Values and Digital Values.

The parameters to use, the type of calculation to be performed, input value inversion and 'fallback' value are determined in Configuration level. In levels 1 to 3 you can view the values of each input and read the result of the calculation.

The Logic Operators page is only available if Analogue and Logic Operators have been enabled as described in section 5.2.

Up to 32 separate calculations can be performed and a separate page header is provided for each one.

16.1.1. Logic Operations

The following calculations can be performed:

Off	The selected logic operator is turned off
AND	The output result is ON when both Input 1 and Input 2 are ON
OR	The output result is ON when either Input 1 or Input 2 is ON
XOR	Exclusive OR. The output result is true when one and only one input is ON. If both inputs are ON the output is OFF.
Latch	The output is ON when input 1 turns ON. The output remains ON when input 1 turns OFF. The output is reset to OFF by turning input 2 ON.
Equal	The output result is ON when Input 1 = Input 2
Greater	The output result is ON when Input 1 > Input 2
Less than	The output result is ON when Input 1 < Input 2
Greater or Equal	The output result is ON when Input 1 \geq Input 2
Less or Equal	The output result is ON when Input 1 \leq Input 2

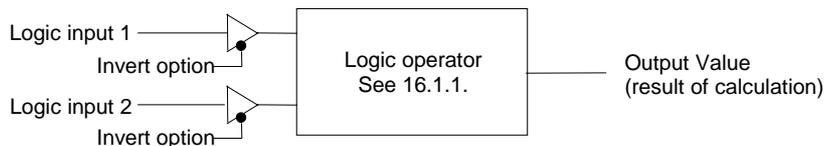
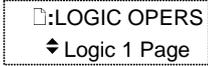
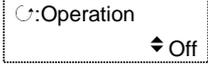


Figure 16-1: Logic Operators

16.2. TO CONFIGURE LOGIC OPERATORS

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' LOGIC OPERS ' 2. Press  or  to choose ' Logic 1 (to 32) Page '		
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the selected page – in this example ' Operation ' 4. Press  or  to choose the calculation to be performed by the Operation		The first parameter is ' Operation '. The choices are: Off, AND, OR, XOR, Latch, Equal, Not Equal, Greater, Less Than, Great or Equal, Less or Equal.

Remaining parameters in the Logic Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table 

16.2.1. Logic Operator Parameters

Table Number: 16.2.1.	This page allows you to configure Logic Operators 1 to 32				LOGIC OPERS (Logic 1 Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Operation	The logical operation to be performed	See Section 16.1.1.	Off	L1	
Input 1 Src	Input 1 source	Modbus address		Conf	
Input 2 Src	Input 2 source	Modbus address		Conf	
Invert	Invert inputs	None Invert Input 1 Invert Input 2 Invert Both		Conf	
Default OP	Fall back value (Does not appear if 'Operation' = Off)	0 or 1		Conf	
Input 1 Value	Input 1 Value	Off On		L3	
Input 2 Value	Input 2 Value	Off On		L3	
Output Value	Output Value	Off On Enumerated if 'OP Enum' = User defined text		L3	
Status	Status	Good Bad		L3	
OP Enum	User string for the first enumeration of the Output Value	Not Enumerated or choose from User Text	Not Enumerated	Conf	

The above table is repeated for Logic Operators 2 to 32.

17.	CHAPTER 17 DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS	2
17.1.	WHAT IS DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS?.....	2
17.2.	TO CONFIGURE COMMUNICATIONS PARAMETERS	3
17.2.1.	H Module Parameters	4
17.2.2.	J Module Parameters.....	5
17.3.	DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS DIAGNOSTICS	6

17. Chapter 17 Digital Communications

17.1. WHAT IS DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS?

Digital Communications (or 'comms' for short) allows the controller to communicate with a PC or a networked computer system. A choice of comms protocol is available and can be selected in configuration level. These are MODBUS (or JBUS), EIBisynch, Profibus and Devicenet.

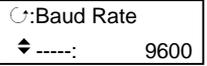
Comms modules can be fitted which use RS232, RS485 or RS422 Transmission Standards. A full description of these standards is given in the 2000 series Communications Handbook, part number HA026230.

Comms modules can be fitted into either or both of two positions referred to as the H slot and the J slot which correspond to the rear terminal connections, see also Installation section of the User Guide. Both slot positions may be used at the same time. An example is to allow a multi-drop connection between a number of controllers and a computer running, say, a SCADA package on one comms position, and a separate PC used for configuration purposes on the second comms position. In this example an RS485 module may be fitted for the multi-drop/SCADA requirement and RS232 in the second position for the single PC/configuration requirement.

Note: When the controller is placed into Configuration Level it is taken 'off line' and placed into a standby state. In this state it no longer monitors or controls the plant.

17.2. TO CONFIGURE COMMUNICATIONS PARAMETERS

The operation of the H and J Modules is the same.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes								
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' COMMS ' 2. Press  or  to choose the required page in this example ' H Module Page '		The choices are: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>H Module</td> <td>A comms module is fitted in the H slot</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J Module</td> <td>A comms module is fitted in the J slot</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diagnostics</td> <td>Shows comms activity</td> </tr> </table>	H Module	A comms module is fitted in the H slot	J Module	A comms module is fitted in the J slot	Diagnostics	Shows comms activity		
H Module	A comms module is fitted in the H slot									
J Module	A comms module is fitted in the J slot									
Diagnostics	Shows comms activity									
3. Press  to show the first parameter ' Protocol ' 4. Press  or  to choose the comms protocol		The choices are: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Modbus</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>EI Bisynch</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Devicenet</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Profibus</td> <td>if this has been ordered</td> </tr> </table>	Modbus		EI Bisynch		Devicenet		Profibus	if this has been ordered
Modbus										
EI Bisynch										
Devicenet										
Profibus	if this has been ordered									
5. Press  to ' Baud Rate ' 6. Press  or  to change the value		The choices are: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Modbus</td> <td>4800, 9600, 19,200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EI Bisynch</td> <td>4800, 9600, 19,200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Devicenet</td> <td>125K, 250K, 500K</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Profibus</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Modbus	4800, 9600, 19,200	EI Bisynch	4800, 9600, 19,200	Devicenet	125K, 250K, 500K	Profibus	
Modbus	4800, 9600, 19,200									
EI Bisynch	4800, 9600, 19,200									
Devicenet	125K, 250K, 500K									
Profibus										

Remaining parameters are listed in the following table.

They are set up using the above procedure



17.2.1. H Module Parameters

Table Number: 17.2.1.		This page allows you to configure Digital Communications fitted in slot H.		COMMS (H Module Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Protocol	Comms protocol	Modbus EI Bisynch Devicenet or Profibus ⁽¹⁾		L3	
Baud Rate	Baud rate (not shown if Profibus)	Modbus/ Bisynch: 9600, 19200, 4800 Devicenet: 125K, 250K, 500K	9600	Conf	
Parity	Parity (Modbus only)	None Even Odd	None	Conf	
Address	Mainboard controller address	Devicenet 0-63 Bisynch 1-99 Modbus 1-254 Profibus 0-127	1	L1	
Resolution	Comms resolution (Modbus only)	Full Integer	Full	L3	
Rx Timeout	H Comms timeout value (not shown if Devicenet)	None to 1:00:00		Conf	
H Activity	Comms activity in H module	0 or 1		L3 R/O	

Note 1

Profibus replaces EIBisynch if this option has been ordered. For Profibus instruments, only 'Address', 'Protocol' and 'Rx Timeout' parameters are displayed.

17.2.2. J Module Parameters

Table Number: 17.2.2.		This page allows you to configure Digital Communications fitted in slot J.		COMMS (J Module Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Protocol	Comms protocol	Modbus EI Bisynch		L3	
Baud Rate	Baud rate (not shown if Profibus)	Modbus/ Bisynch: 2400, 4800 and 9600	9600	Conf	
Parity	Parity (Modbus only)	None Even Odd	None	Conf	
Address	Mainboard controller address	Bisynch 1-99 Modbus 1-254	1	L1	
Resolution	Comms resolution (Modbus only)	Full Integer	Full	L3	
J Activity	Comms activity in J module	0 or 1		L3 R/O	

17.3. DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS DIAGNOSTICS

Digital communications diagnostics is available under the Comms page menu. Two parameters are displayed. The H Rx and J Rx messages increments each time a valid message is received via the H Comms Module or J Comms module respectively. The Timed Out messages indicate a comms time out.

They are displayed as follows:

Table Number: 17.3.		This page allows you to monitor the number of times that a particular comms module has received a message			COMMS (Diagnostic Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
H Rx Messages	Valid H comms messages received			L1 R/O	
H Rx Timed Out	H Comms timeout			L1 R/O	
J Rx Messages	Valid J comms messages received			L1 R/O	
J Rx Timed Out	J Comms timeout			L1 R/O	
Network Status ⁽¹⁾	Network status Only shown if the Profibus or Devicenet option is configured in the H Module	Running Initialising Ready Offline Bad GSD (Profibus only)		L1 R/O	

Note 1

If Profibus is selected from the previous page, it will be necessary, either to power cycle the controller, or to switch to operation level before this parameter is displayed.

18.	CHAPTER 18 MASTER COMMUNICATIONS	2
18.1.	INTRODUCTION	2
18.1.1.	Broadcast Communications	2
18.1.2.	Direct read/write	2
18.2.	WIRING CONNECTIONS	3
18.2.1.	Example Wiring Diagrams for Different Slaves	4
18.3.	CROSS-BOARD VERSION	6
18.4.	BASIC NAVIGATION	6
18.5.	TO CONFIGURE PARAMETERS	7
18.6.	TO CONFIGURE SLAVES	9
18.7.	PARAMETER TABLES	10
18.8.	ADDITIONAL NOTES	13
18.8.1.	IEEE in 2000 Series	13
18.8.2.	Configuration mode	14

18. Chapter 18 Master Communications

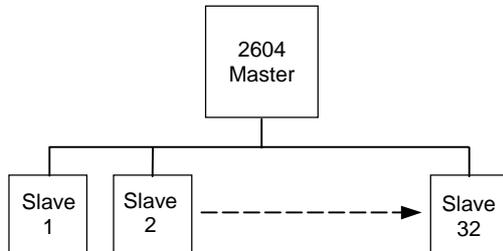
18.1. INTRODUCTION

Software version 5 and above of the 2604 controller supports Master Communications. The objective of the master comms is to allow the 2604 to communicate with any instrument using ModBus interface as a master device, that is, without the need for a supervisory PC. This allows the 2604 to link through digital communications with other products to create a small system solution. There are two methods of communication:-

1. Broadcast Communications
2. Direct Read/Write

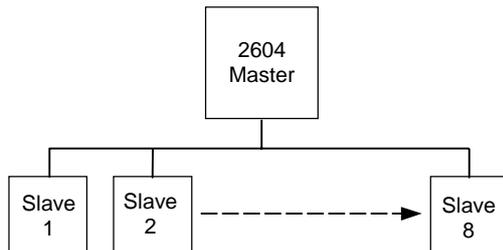
18.1.1. Broadcast Communications

The 2604 master can be connected to up to 32 slaves. The master sends a unit address of 0 followed by the address of the parameter which is to be sent. A typical example might be a multi zone oven where the setpoint of each zone is required to follow, with digital accuracy, the setpoint of a master.



18.1.2. Direct read/write

The 2604 master can be connected to up to eight slaves. Each slave has its own unit address. The master can send data to each slave by sending a unit address followed by the parameter address. It can also request data from a slave. This data may be displayed on the 2604 or used as part of a control strategy.



18.2. WIRING CONNECTIONS

Before proceeding further, please read Appendix B, Safety and EMC information, in the Installation and Operation Handbook.

The Digital Communications module for the master is fitted in Comms Module slot J and uses terminals JA to JF.

If the slave is a 2604 or 2704, the Digital Communications module can be fitted in either slot J or slot H

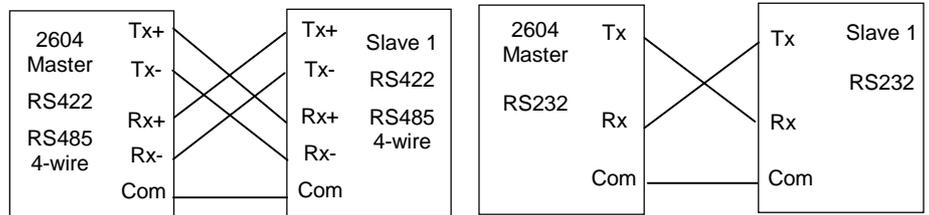


RS422, RS485 4-wire or RS232

Rx connections in the master are wired to Tx connections of the slave

Tx connections in the master are wired to Rx connections of the slave

This is shown diagrammatically below



RS485 2-wire

Connect A (+) in the master to A (+) of the slave

Connect B (-) in the master to B (-) of the slave

This is shown diagrammatically below

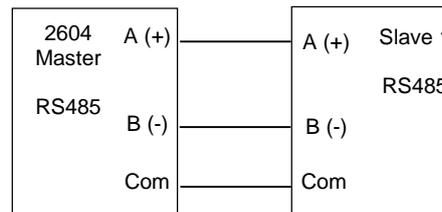


Figure 18-1: Master/Slave Connections

18.2.1. Example Wiring Diagrams for Different Slaves

The following diagrams show connections for a range of different controllers using RS422. These are representative of typical slaves which may be used but could also include third party products using Modbus protocol.

RS422 or RS485 4-wire

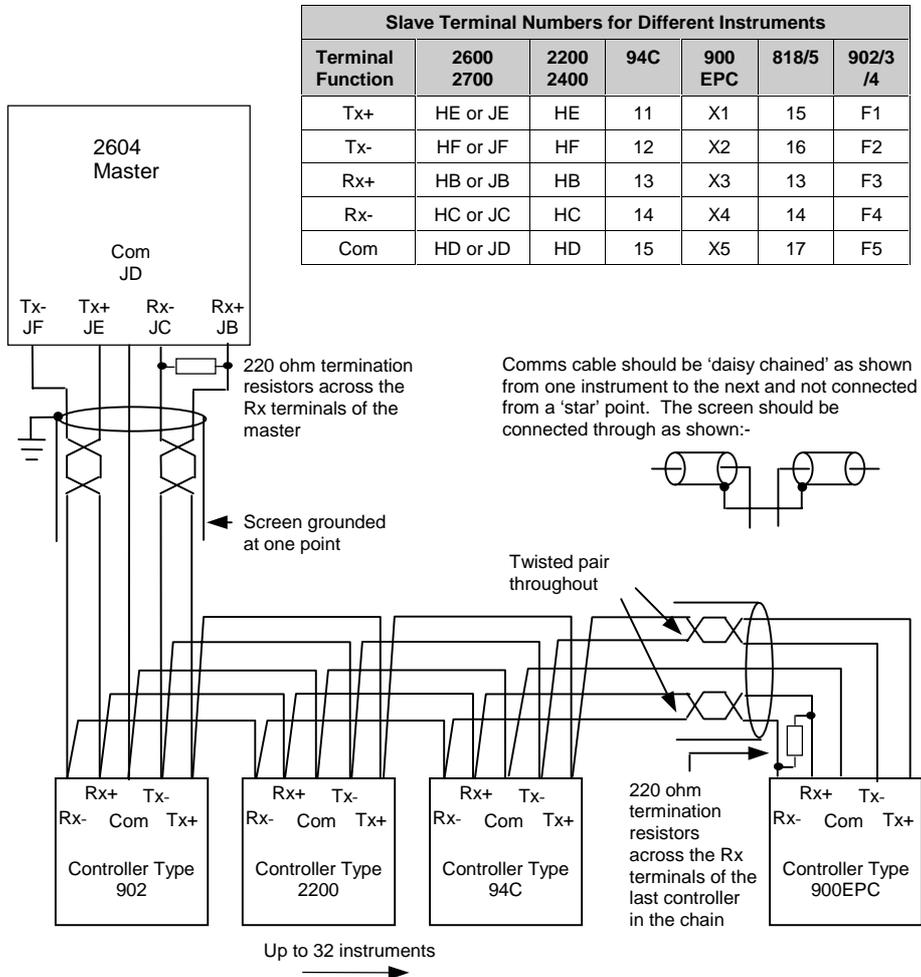


Figure 18-2: Example Wiring RS422 or RS485 4-wire for Different Slaves

RS485 2-wire

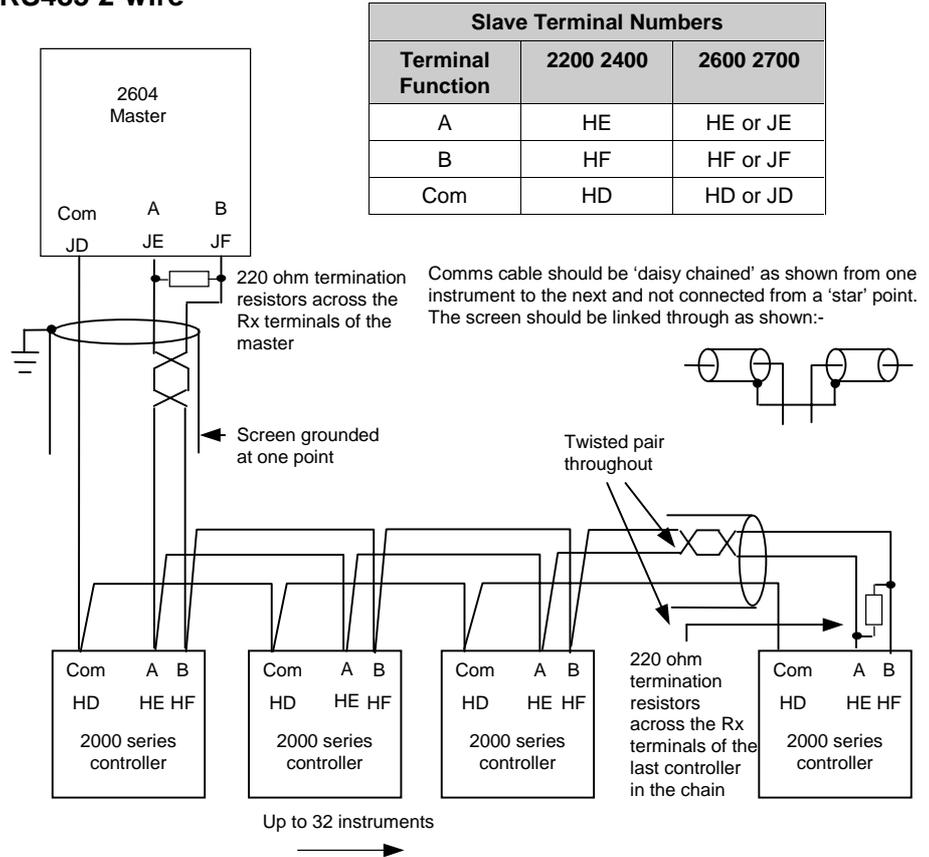


Figure 18-3: Example Wiring RS485 2-wire for 2000 Series Instruments

RS232

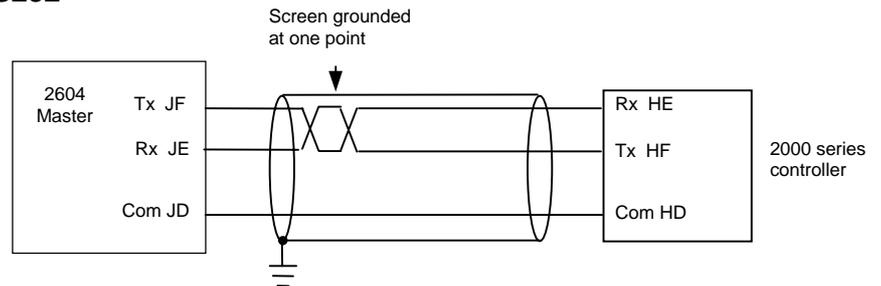


Figure 18-4: Example Wiring RS232 for 2000 Series Instruments



18.3. CROSS-BOARD VERSION

If master comms is fitted as an upgrade, check also the cross-board version before configuring master comms. This parameter can be found in configuration level in 'INSTRUMENT (Info Page) 'CBC Version' and must be greater than 4.7 (displayed as 47).

To configure the controller for master communications it will be necessary to navigate to configuration access level (see Engineering Handbook). A summary of navigation is shown below.

18.4. BASIC NAVIGATION

Parameters are organised into pages. Each page is given a name or header which describes a particular subject – in this case 'MASTER COMMS'

The MASTER COMMS page is divided into sub-headings, for example 'Parameters', 'Slave 1', etc

Parameters for the chosen subject are found in these pages

To change the value of alterable parameters

- press  to access the page

- press  or  to select the header

- press  to access

- press  or  to select the header

- press  again

- press  or 

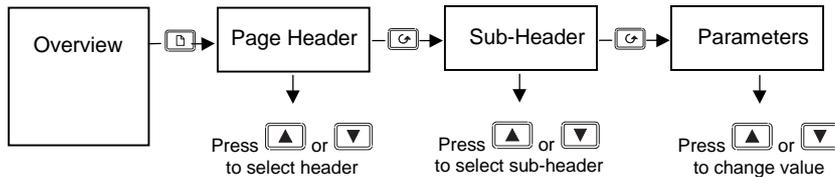


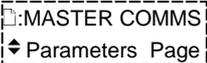
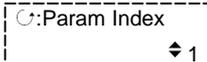
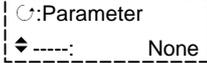
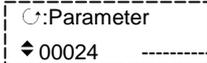
Figure 18-5: Summary of Basic Navigation

Examples are shown in the following two sections

18.5. TO CONFIGURE PARAMETERS

Set controller access level to '**Config**' as described in Chapter 4.

The parameters required to configure a transaction between a local parameter in the master and a parameter in the slave are shown in Table 18-1. To configure these parameters:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' MASTER COMMS ' 2. Press  or  to choose the required page in this example ' Parameters Page '		These parameters configure a transaction between a local parameter in the 2604 and a parameter in a slave.
3. Press  to show the first parameter ' Param Index ' 4. Press  or  to index the parameter 1 to 38		
5. Press  to select the ' Parameter ' in the master 6. Press  or  to set the Modbus address of the parameter	 	In this example the parameter in the master is Loop 1 Setpoint (LP1_SETUP.SP.SP1) Commonly used parameters (see App. D - Engineering Handbook) are followed by a short description. To edit the parameter using this description press  to scroll to the description followed by  or 

10. Now press  to select the address of the slave in which to send (or receive) the parameter.

⌚:Slave Address
◆ 1

In this example the slave address is 1.

11. Press  or  to change the value

For broadcast comms set this value to 0

12. Now press  to select 'Slave Parameter' address

⌚:Slave Param.
◆ 0

Range 0 to 65535. This full range is only necessary for IEEE. It is necessary to give the full IEEE address to get true floating point. For example in Eurotherm controllers PV = 8002 Hex or 32770. (See also section 18.8.1.)

13. Press  or  to change the value

14. Now press  to select 'Scaling' for the parameter

⌚:Scaling
◆ XXXXX

See table 18-1 for choices

15. Press  or  to change the value

16. Now press  to select 'Function'

⌚:Function
◆ None

This sets the function to be read or write. See table 18-1 for full list of choices

17. Press  or  to change the value

18. Now press  to select 'Repeat Rate'

⌚:Repeat Rate
◆ 0:00:00.0

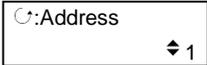
This sets the time between transmissions.
0 = continuous

19. Press  or  to change the value

18.6. TO CONFIGURE SLAVES

The controller must be in 'config' mode.

The parameters required to configure the characteristics of the slaves are shown in Table 18-2.
To configure the slave parameters:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From the MASTER COMMS menu press  or  to select the required slave		Up to eight slaves can be configured
2. Press  to select the first parameter in this list 3. Press  or  to change the value Repeat 3 and 4 to set up following parameters.		The slave address is in the range 0 to 254 and does not necessarily have to be the same as the slave number. 0 is reserved for broadcast comms. See table 18-2 for a description of the parameters and settings

Remaining parameters are listed in the table 18-2.

They are set up using the above procedure



18.7. PARAMETER TABLES

Table Number: 18-1	These parameters configure a transaction between a local parameter in the 2604 and a parameter in a slave.				MASTER COMMS (Parameter Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Param. Index	Select up to 38 parameters to read or write to.	1 to 38			
Parameter	The address of the parameter in the 2604 which is to be sent to a slave. OR the address in the 2604 in which a parameter sent from a slave is stored.	modbus address shown as 'address' followed by 'name of commonly used parameter'			
Slave Address	The address of the slave where the parameter is to be sent or received. 0 is broadcast mode in which the parameter is sent to all slaves	0 to 254			
Slave Param.	The parameter address in the slave	0 to 65535			
Scaling	Scaling of the parameter in the slave No. of decimal points Time transmitted as seconds Time transmitted as minutes Time transmitted as hours Time transmitted as tenths of seconds Time transmitted as tenths of minutes Time transmitted as tenths of hours IEEE Float 32 bit (see section 18.8.1) Time transmitted as 32 bit msec	 XXXXX sss mmm hhh ss.s mm.m hh.h Euro REAL Euro TIME			
Function	Disables the transaction	None			

See Note 1 below	Set to Read(3) for parameters with modbus function code 3 Set to Read(4) for parameters with modbus function code 4 Set to Write to write at a repeat rate Set to Change Write to write only if the parameter value has changed	Read(3) Read(4) Write Change Write		
Repeat Rate	Time between transmissions. 0 is continuous	0 to 99:59:59.9		
Status	Set to good on leaving config Slave returned illegal address Slave returned illegal value Slave returned Modbus exception Error in message returned by slave Value read was out of limits or the parameter is unalterable Parameter is OEM secured and will not be transmitted No response from slave The master has no parameter associated with the specified modbus address. Config only Parameter value unchanged since last transmit. Relevant to change write only. The slave does not support block write	Good Addr Error Data Error Error Failed Store Error Secured Timed Out No Parameter Unchanged No Block Write		

Note 1:-

Function codes are a single byte instruction to the slave describing the action to perform.

Function code 3 – Read Output Registers - allows the binary contents of holding registers to be obtained from the addressed slave.

Function code 4 – Read Input Registers – obtains the contents from input registers of the addressed slave.

For the 2000 range of controllers either function code can be used. For other slaves refer to the manufacturers documentation.

Table Number: 18-2		These parameters configure the characteristics of the slaves		MASTER COMMS (Slave1 to 8 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Address	The modbus address of the slave	0 to 254			
Resolution	To set resolution configured in the slave to Full or Integer	Full Integer	Full		
Timeout(msecs)	Time to wait for a response from a slave	20 to 2000	100mS		
Retries	Number of times to retry before the status goes to 'Timed Out'	1 to 100	1		
Status	Offline and Online are user selectable. If the transaction is not completed in the time set by the 'Timeout' parameter in the specified number of 'Retries' the message 'Timeout' will be displayed. The message 'Recovering' appears fleetingly	Offline Online Timed Out Recovering			
Block Write	Set to the maximum block size supported by the slave. For IEEE this must be set to >0 (see also section 18.8.1)	0 to 100	0		

18.8. ADDITIONAL NOTES

18.8.1. IEEE in 2000 Series

This section applies specifically to 2000 series instruments. If the slave is not a series 2000 instrument, a knowledge of the communications format for the slave is required.

One of the main limitations of Modbus is that only 16 bit integer representations of data can normally be transferred. In most cases, this does not cause a problem, since appropriate scaling can be applied to the values without losing precision. If the slave is a series 2000 instrument, where all values are shown on a 4 digit display, values may be transferred in this way. However this has the significant drawback that the scaling factor to be applied needs to be known at both ends of the communications link.

One further problem is that certain 'time' parameters, notably those used for the programmer function can be returned over the communications link in tenths of seconds, minutes or hours. It is possible, therefore, for long durations to overflow the 16 bit Modbus limit.

To overcome these problems, a sub protocol has been defined, using the upper portion of the Modbus address space (8000h and upwards), allowing full 32 bit resolution floating point and timer parameters. This upper area is known as the IEEE region.

This sub-protocol provides two consecutive Modbus addresses for all parameters. The base address for any given parameter in the IEEE region can easily be calculated by taking its normal Modbus address, doubling it, and adding 8000h. For example, the address in the IEEE region of the Target Setpoint (Modbus address 2) is simply

$$2 \times 2 + 8000h = 8004h = 32772 \text{ decimal}$$

This calculation applies to any parameter in a series 2000 slave that has a Modbus address.

Access to the IEEE area is made via block reads (Functions 3 & 4) and writes (Function 16). Attempts to use the 'Write a Word' (Function 6) operation will be rejected with an error response. Furthermore, block reads and writes using the IEEE region should only be performed at even addresses, although no damage to the instrument will result in attempting access at odd addresses. In general, the 'number of words' field, in the Modbus frame, should be set to 2 times what it would have been for 'normal' Modbus.

The rules governing how the data in the two consecutive Modbus addresses are organised depending on the 'data type' of the parameter.

See also 'Series 2000 Communications Handbook Chapter 7.

18.8.2. Configuration mode

The Master does not communicate in configuration mode.

During configuration, if there is no parameter in the master with the specified Modbus address the Status is set to 'No Parameter' and on exit from configuration mode all parameters defining that transaction are set to their cold start values.

Parameter Name	Cold Start Value
Parameter	None
Slave Address	1
Slave Parameter	0
Repeat Rate	0:00:00.0
Function	None
Scaling	XXXXX
Status	Good

19.	CHAPTER 19 STANDARD IO	2
19.1.	WHAT IS STANDARD IO?	2
19.2.	PV INPUT	3
19.2.1.	To Configure Input Channel Type	3
19.2.2.	Standard IO <i>PV Input</i> Parameters	4
19.2.3.	PV Input Scaling	6
19.2.4.	Offset	6
19.2.5.	To Scale a Linear PV Input.....	7
19.2.6.	To View and Change Input Filter Time	8
19.3.	ANALOGUE INPUT.....	9
19.3.1.	To Scale the Analogue Input.....	9
19.3.2.	Standard IO <i>Analogue Input</i> Parameters	9
19.3.3.	Sensor Break Value	10
19.4.	THE FIXED RELAY OUTPUT PARAMETERS	11
19.4.1.	Fixed Relay Output Scaling	11
19.4.2.	To Set up and Scale the Fixed Relay Output	12
19.4.3.	Standard IO <i>AA Relay</i> Parameters	13
19.5.	STANDARD IO DIG I/O PARAMETERS	14
19.5.1.	Standard <i>Digital IO</i> Parameters	14
19.6.	STANDARD IO DIAGNOSTIC PARAMETERS	16
19.6.1.	Standard IO Diagnostic Parameters Table	16

19. Chapter 19 Standard IO

19.1. WHAT IS STANDARD IO?

Standard IO refers to the fixed Input/Output connections as listed in Table 19-1 below.

Parameters such as input/output limits, filter times and scaling of the IO can be adjusted in the Standard IO pages.

This chapter also describes **User Scaling** of the standard IO.

The controller is calibrated for life against known reference standards during manufacture, but user scaling allows you to offset the 'permanent' factory calibration to either:-

1. Scale the controller to your reference standards
2. Match the calibration of the controller to an individual transducer or sensor
3. To compensate for known offsets in process measurements

These offsets can be made to parameters in the Standard IO pages.

STANDARD IO ▶	(<i>PV Input Page</i>)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Process Variable Input connected to terminals VH, VI, V+ and V-. This is, generally, the PV input for a single loop controller.
	(<i>An Input Page</i>)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Analogue Input connected to terminals BA, BB and BC. This is the high level input from a remote source.
	(<i>AA Relay Page</i>)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed Relay output connected to terminals AA, AB and AC. This relay may be used as an alarm relay, a time proportioning control output or valve raise or lower..
	(<i>Dig IO1 Page</i>) to (<i>Dig IO7 Page</i>)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed digital IO connected to terminals D1 to D7 and DC.
	(<i>Diagnostic Page</i>)	Allows access to parameters which set up the fixed digital Input connected to terminal D8 and DC.

Note:-

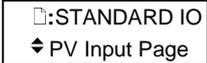
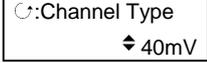
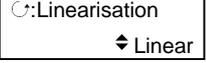
Names shown in *italics* can be customised.

Figure 19-1: Standard I/O

19.2. PV INPUT

The PV Input configures parameters associated with the fixed Process Variable Input connected to terminals VH, VI, V+ and V-. This is the PV input for a single loop controller.

19.2.1. To Configure Input Channel Type

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select 'STANDARD IO'		The PV Input is connected to terminals VH, V+, V-.
2. Press  or  to choose 'PV Input Page'		
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the page, this is 'Channel Type'		The channel type can be:- RTD Thermocouple Pyrometer 40mV, 80mV (linear mV) mA, Volts (linear mA/volts) HZVolts (high impedance) Log 10 (logarithmic)
4. Press  or  to select the channel type		
5. Press  to 'Linearisation'		Linearisation allows thermocouple, square root, linear or custom input curves to be configured for the selected channel type
6. Press  or  to select		
7. Press  to 'Units'		This allows units to be allocated to the selected input type. A full list is given in Appendix D.2.
8. Press  or  to select		
9. Press  to 'Resolution'		Configures the number of decimal points displayed
10. Press  or  to select		

Remaining parameters in the Analogue Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table



19.2.2. Standard IO PV Input Parameters

Table Number: 19.2.2.	This page allows you to configure the PV Input Parameters		STANDARD IO (PV Input Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Channel Type	Input/Output type	RTD, Thermocouple Pyrometer 40mV, 80mV, mA, Volts, HZVolts, Log 10		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if 'Channel Type' = 'Thermocouple'	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break enable for certain high output impedance sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf
The following four parameters do not appear for 'Channel Type' = 'Thermocouple' or 'RTD'				
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range		L3.
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	Input range		L3
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display		L3
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	range		L3
Filter Time	PV input filter time.	Off to 0:10:00.0		L3
Emissivity	Emissivity. Only appears if the PV input is configured as a pyrometer	Off to 1.00		L3

Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the PV input	Input range		R/O L1
<i>PV Input Val</i>	The current value of the PV input in engineering units.	Display range		R/O L1
Offset	Transducer scaling offset.	Display range		R/O L3
CJC Temp	CJC Temperature. Only appears if the PV input is configured for thermocouple	Display Range		R/O L1
PV In Status	PV input status	See Appendix D3		R/O L1
SBrk Trip Imp	Sensor break value	0 to 100% See section 19.3.3.		R/O L1
PV Input Name	User defined name for PV input. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.	User text	Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state	See Ch 25		Conf
Rear Term Temp	Temperature at the rear terminals	Auto See note 2		Conf

Notes

1. **Input Linearisation**

J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3.

2. **Rear Terminal Temperature**

Auto means that the controller automatically measures the temperature at the rear terminals for use with cold junction compensation. The temperature of the rear terminals can be measured externally, if required, and this measured value can then be entered manually when calibrating CJC.

19.2.3. PV Input Scaling

Scaling of the PV input applies to linear process inputs only, eg linearised transducers, where it is necessary to match the displayed reading to the electrical input levels from the transducer. PV input scaling is not provided for direct thermocouple or RTD inputs.

Figure 19-1 shows an example of input scaling, where an electrical input of 4-20mA requires the display to read 2.5 to 200.0 units.

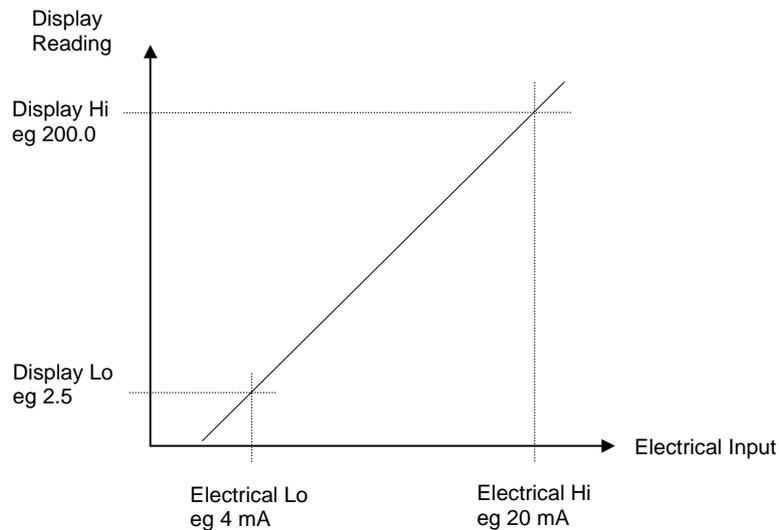


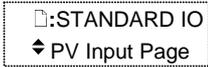
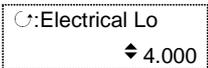
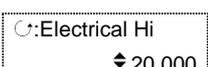
Figure 19-2: Input Scaling (Standard IO)

19.2.4. Offset

Offset has the effect of moving the whole curve, shown in Figure 19-2, up or down about a central point. The 'Offset' parameter is found in the STANDARD IO (PV Input) page.

19.2.5. To Scale a Linear PV Input

Using the example shown in Figure 19-2, proceed as follows: (This may be carried out at Access Level 3)

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select 'STANDARD IO' 2. Press  or  to choose 'PV Input Page'		
3. Press  to scroll to 'Electrical Lo' 4. Press  or  to 4mA		Set this value to the lowest level of the input, eg 4mA. The units displayed here may be mV, V, mA or Ohms depending on the type of input configured.
5. Press  to scroll to 'Electrical Hi' 6. Press  or  to 20mA		Set this value to the highest level of the input , eg 20mA.
7. Press  to scroll to 'Eng Val Lo' 8. Press  or  to 2.5		Set up the displayed value (instrument minimum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Lo input, eg 2.50
9. Press  to scroll to 'Eng Val Hi' 10. Press  or  to 200		Set up the displayed value (instrument maximum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Hi input, eg 200.00

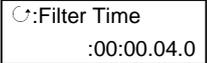
19.2.6. To View and Change Input Filter Time

An input filter provides damping of the input signal. This may be necessary to prevent the effects of excessive noise on the PV input.

The filter may be turned off or set in steps of 0.1sec up to 10mins

If the input is configured to accept process levels, eg 4-20mA, as in the above example, the parameter which follows 'Eng Value Hi' is 'Filter Time'.

For thermocouple and RTD inputs the first parameter to be displayed is the Input Filter Time, since the input scaling parameters do not appear for specific linearised inputs.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p>1. From the previous display press  to select 'Filter Time'</p> <p>2. Press  or  to adjust the Filter Time between Off and 10mins</p>		

19.3. ANALOGUE INPUT

The Analogue Input configures parameters associated with the fixed Analogue Input connected to terminals BA, BB and BC. This is the high level input from a remote source.

19.3.1. To Scale the Analogue Input

The procedure is the same as that described in section 19.2.5. The following table lists the parameters which set up this input

19.3.2. Standard IO *Analogue Input* Parameters

Table Number: 19.3.2.		This page allows you to configure the Analogue Input Parameters		STANDARD IO (An Input Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Channel Type	Input/Output type	Volts mA		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break enable for certain high output impedance sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range. Units depend on configuration		L3.
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level			L3
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display range. Units depend on configuration		L3
Eng Value Hi	High display reading			L3
Filter Time	PV input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L3
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the PV input	Input range		R/O
<i>An Input</i> Val	The current value of the Analogue input in	Display range		R/O

	engineering units <i>An Input</i> can be a user defined name.			
Offset	Transducer scaling offset.			
An In Status	Status of the analogue input	OK Diagnostic messages are displayed to show the state of the Input if not OK. See Appendix D3		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Sensor break value	0 to 100% See 19.3.3.		R/O
An Input Name	User defined name for the analogue input. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state	See Chapter 25		Conf

Notes

1. **Input Linearisation**

J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3.

19.3.3. Sensor Break Value

The controller continuously monitors the impedance of a transducer or sensor connected to any analogue input (including plug in modules described in the following chapter). This impedance, expressed as a percentage of the impedance which causes the sensor break flag to trip, is a parameter called 'SBrk Trip Imp' and is available in the parameter lists associated with both Standard and Module inputs of an analogue nature.

The table below shows the typical impedance which causes sensor break to trip for various types of input and high and low 'SBrk Impedance parameter settings. The impedance values are only approximate ($\pm 25\%$) as they are not factory calibrated.

PV Input (Also applies to PV Input module and Dual PV Input module)		Analogue Input	
mV input ($\pm 40\text{mV}$ or $\pm 80\text{mV}$)		Volts ($\pm 10\text{V}$)	
SBrk Impedance – High	~ 10K Ω	SBrk Impedance – High	~ 50K Ω
SBrk Impedance - Low	~ 3K Ω	SBrk Impedance - Low	~ 10K Ω
Volts input (-3V to +10V) and HZ Volts input (-1.5 to 2V)			
SBrk Impedance – High		~ 500K Ω	
SBrk Impedance - Low		~ 100K Ω	

19.4. THE FIXED RELAY OUTPUT PARAMETERS

The fixed Relay output is connected to terminals AA, AB and AC. This relay may be used as an alarm relay, or a time proportioning control output.

19.4.1. Fixed Relay Output Scaling

If the relay is used as a time proportioning control output this means that the relay will, by default, be fully off for 0% power demand, fully on for 100% power demand and equal on/off times at 50% power demand.

As with input scaling you can change these limits to suit the process. It is important to note, however, that these limits are set to safe values for the process. For example, for a heating process it may be required to maintain a minimum level of temperature. This can be achieved by applying an offset at 0% power demand which will maintain the relay on for a period of time. Care must be taken to ensure that this minimum on period does not cause the process to overheat.

These offsets can be made to parameters in the 'AA Relay' pages. The above example is shown in Figure 19-3.

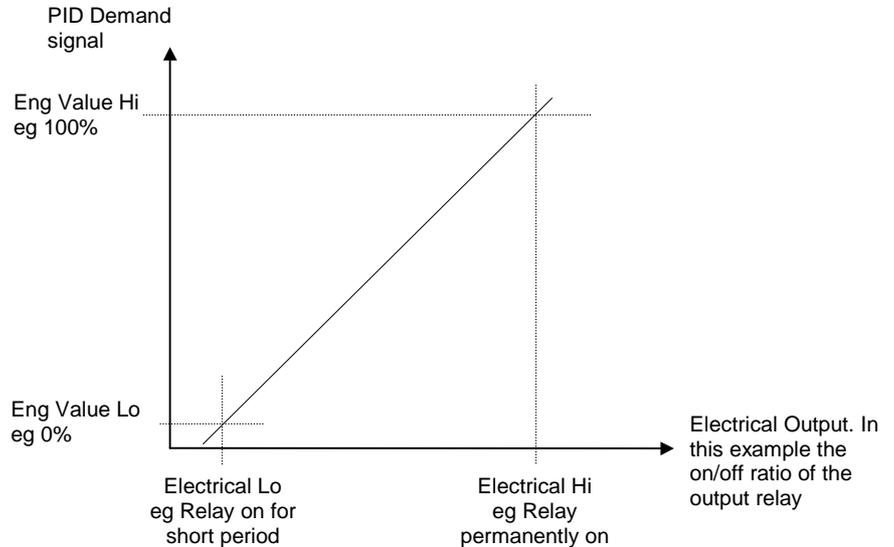
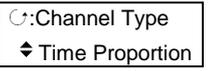
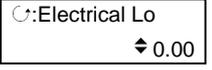
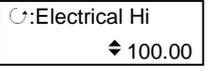
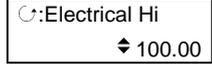


Figure 19-3: Fixed Relay Scaling

19.4.2. To Set up and Scale the Fixed Relay Output

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' STANDARD IO ' 2. Press  or  to select the ' Relay AA Page '		This procedure can also be done in Level 3. The AA Relay is connected to terminals AA,AB and AC
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the list. This is ' Channel Type ' 4. Press  or  to choose the function of the relay		The choices are:- On/Off Time proportion Valve Raise Valve Lower
8. Press  to scroll to ' Electrical Lo ' 5. Press  or  to adjust the value		If the relay is wired to the PID output demand signal.set this to a low value, normally 0. If it is set to a higher value the relay will remain on for a period of time even when the PID demand is zero. This parameter is limited by 'Electrical Hi' which may need to be adjusted first.
10. Press  to select ' Electrical Hi ' 6. Press  or  to adjust the value		If the relay is wired to the PID output demand signal.set this to a high value, normally 100.
12. Press  to select ' Eng Value Lo ' 7. Press  or  to adjust the value		This is the value of the PID demand signal which will cause the relay to switch as set by 'Electrical Lo'
12. Press  to select ' Eng Value Hi ' 8. Press  or  to adjust the value		This is the value of the PID demand signal which will cause the relay to switch as set by 'Electrical Hi'

19.4.3. Standard IO AA Relay Parameters

Table Number: 19.4.3		This table shows all parameters for the fixed relay output. They are accessed and adjusted as shown in the previous section.		STANDARD IO (AA Relay)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Channel Type	Function of the relay	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise	As order code	Conf	
Wire Src	AA relay source	Modbus address		Conf	
Invert	Relay energised for 100% PID demand Relay de-energised for 100% power demand	Normal Inverted		Conf	
The following five parameters only appear if 'Channel Type' = 'Time Proportion'					
Min Pulse Time	Minimum relay on or off time Applies to time proportioning outputs only.	Auto = 0.05s or 0.1 to 999.9	20sec	L3	
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range		L3	
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	Input range		L3	
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display range		L3	
Eng Value Hi	High display reading			L3	
AA Relay Value ⁽¹⁾ AA Relay can be user text.	Status of the relay output See note 1	-100 to 100 -ve values not used	(editable if not wired)	R/O L3	
Electrical Val	The current (analogue) value of the output			R/O L3	
Channel Name	A name which replaces AA Relay from User Text			Conf	
Relay AA Val Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the relay AA value on/off only	Not Enumerated	Not Enumerated	Conf	
Elec Value Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50		Conf	

Note 1: If the relay is wired to a source such as a loop output (Ch1 or Ch2) the 'value' will read in a positive direction only, i.e. it does not signify heating or cooling but just the position of the relay.

If configured for control 0 = Relay off; 100 = on; 1 to 99 = time proportioning

If configured as On/Off 0 = Relay Off; Any other value (+ or -) = Relay On

19.5. STANDARD IO DIG I/O PARAMETERS

This page allows access to parameters which set up the fixed digital IO connected to terminals D1 to D7 and DC.

The standard digital IO1 to 7 can either be input or output and is set up in configuration level. The choices are:-

1. Digital Input IO configured as a digital input
2. On/Off IO configured as a digital output
3. Time Proportion IO configured as a control output
4. Valve Lower IO configured to raise the output of a motor valve controller
5. Valve Raise IO configured to lower the output of a motor valve controller

The parameters which appear in the Dig IO pages depend upon the function ('Channel Type') configured. Choices for 'Channel Type' are shown in the following table.

When the logic outputs are configured as time proportioning outputs, they can be scaled in the same way as relay outputs already described.

19.5.1. Standard *Digital IO* Parameters

Table Number: 19.5.1.	This page allows you to configure the Digital I/O Parameters		STANDARD IO (Dig IO1 to 7 Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Channel Type	Input/Output type	Digital Input On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf
Wire Src	Source of the signal to operate a digital output. This parameter does not appear for digital input	Modbus address		Conf
Invert	Normal/inverted I/O	Normal Inverted		Conf
The following five parameters only appear if 'Channel Type' = 'Time Proportioning'				
Min Pulse Time	Minimum logic on or off time.	Auto = 0.05s or 0.1 to 999.9s	20sec	L3

Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range		L3
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	Input range		L3
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Display		L3
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	range		L3
<i>Dig IO1 Val</i> ⁽¹⁾	If Channel Type = Digital Input this reads the state of the input	0 = Off 1 = On		R/O L1
	If configured as an output this reads the desired output value	or -100 to 100		
Electrical Value ⁽¹⁾	If Channel Type = Digital Input this value does not appear			R/O L3
	If configured as an output this reads the actual electrical value.	0 or 1		
Channel Name	A name which replaces <i>Dig IOx</i> from User Text			Conf
Dig IO Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off output or Digital Input only	Not Enumerated	Not	Conf
Elec Value Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Enum-erated	Conf

Note 1:

Only settings between 0 & 100 are valid for Dig IO-Val. The corresponding Electrical value is shown in the following table:-

Channel Type	Dig IO- Val	Electrical Value
On/Off	0 to 100	0 to 1
Time Proportion	0 to 100	0.00 (off) to 1.00 (on). Time proportions between 0.00/1.00 for other positive settings of Dig IO- Val
Valve Raise/Lower	0 to 100	0.00 to 100.00

19.6. STANDARD IO DIAGNOSTIC PARAMETERS

This page allows you to configure a name for the digital input and to inspect its status or that of the IO Expander if fitted. The parameters are shown in the following table

19.6.1. Standard IO Diagnostic Parameters Table

Table Number: 19.6.1.		This page allows you to inspect Digital Input 8 or IO Expander status		STANDARD IO (Diagnostic Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
<i>Dig In8</i> Val	Status of digital input 8	Off On		R/O	
Dig In E1 Val	Status of IO expander input	Off On		R/O	
Bad Channels	A bad input or output will be displayed as ■ and will occur if the I/O is either a short or open circuit	□□□□□□□ to ■■■■■■■■		R/O	
Dig In 8 Name	A name which replaces <i>Dig In8</i> from User Text			Conf	

20.	CHAPTER 20 MODULE IO	2
20.1.	WHAT IS MODULE IO?	2
20.2.	MODULE IDENTIFICATION	4
20.2.1.	Idents Page.....	4
20.3.	MODULE IO PARAMETERS	5
20.3.1.	DC Control and DC Retransmission	6
20.3.2.	Relay Output	7
20.3.3.	Triac Output.....	8
20.3.4.	Triple Logic Output and Single Isolated Logic Output.....	9
20.3.5.	Triple Logic and Triple Contact Input	10
20.3.6.	Transmitter Power Supply	10
20.3.7.	Transducer Power Supply	11
20.3.8.	Potentiometer Input.....	12
20.3.9.	PV Input.....	13
20.3.10.	DC Input	15
20.3.11.	Dual PV Input.....	17
20.3.12.	Dual DC Output Module.....	20
20.3.13.	High Resolution Retransmission Output.....	22
20.4.	MODULE SCALING	27
20.4.1.	The PV Input	27
20.4.2.	To Scale a Linear PV Input:-	28
20.4.3.	Output modules	29
20.4.4.	To Scale A Control Output:-	30
20.4.5.	Retransmission Output.....	31
20.4.6.	To Scale a Retransmission Output	32
20.4.7.	To Scale the Potentiometer input.....	33
20.5.	MODULE IO WIRING EXAMPLES	35
20.5.1.	To Configure Module 1 Channel A to Run a Program	35
20.5.2.	To Operate a Relay from a Digital Input	35
20.5.3.	Zirconia Probe Impedance Measurement.....	36

20. Chapter 20 Module IO

20.1. WHAT IS MODULE IO?

Additional analogue and digital IO is provided by plug in IO modules, which can be fitted in any of five slots (These are also shown in 'Introduction' Chapter 1).

The type and position of any modules fitted in the controller is shown in the order code printed on the label on the side of the controller. This can be checked against the order code in Appendix A.

The module part number is printed on the side of the plastic case of the module.

Modules are available as single channel, two channel or three channel IO as listed below:-

Module	Order Code	Idents Displayed As	Number of Channels	Module Part No.
Change over relay	R4	Form C Relay	1	AH025408U002
2 pin relay	R2	Form A Relay	1	AH025245U002
Dual relay	RR	Dual Relay	2	AH025246U002
Triac	T2	Triac	1	AH025253U002
Dual triac	TT	Dual Triac	2	AH025409U002
DC control	D4	DC Control	1	AH025728U003
DC retransmission	D6	DC Retrains	1	AH025728U002
PV input	PV	PV Input	1	AH026359U002
Triple logic input	TL	Tri-Logic IP	3	AH025317U002
Triple contact input	TK	Tri-Contact IP	3	AH025861U002
Triple logic output	TP	Tri-Logic OP	3	AH025735U002
24V transmitter supply	MS	Transmitter PSU	1	AH025862U002
5Vdc Transducer power supply	G3	Transducer PSU	1	AH026306U002
10Vdc Transducer power supply	G5	Transducer PSU	1	AH026306U002
Potentiometer input	VU	Pot Input	1	AH025864U002
Analogue input module (2604/2704 dc Input)	AM	DC Input	1	AH025866U004
Dual PV input (Dual Probe Input)	DP	Dual PV In	2	AH026359U003
Isolated single logic output	LO	Sin-Logic OP	1	AH025735U002

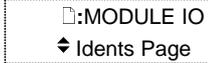
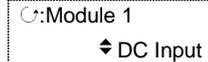
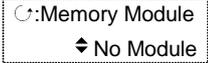
Dual DC output	DO	Dual DC Out	2	AH027249U002
High resolution DC retransmission output	HR	HR DC Out	2	AH027249U003

Table 20-1: I/O Modules

Parameters for the above modules, such as input/output limits, filter times and scaling of the IO, can be adjusted in the Module IO pages. The procedures are very similar to those covered in Chapter 19 'STANDARD IO'.

20.2. MODULE IDENTIFICATION

To identify which module is fitted into which slot:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to access ' MODULE IO '		
2. Press  to show the first parameter in the list. This is ' Module 1 '		The 'Ident' page is read only. If a module is fitted in any module position, it's type, as listed in Table 20-1, is displayed. 'No Module' is displayed if the slot is empty.
3. Press  to show the next module position. This is ' Memory Module ' reserved for future use		

The parameters available in the 'Idents Page' are shown in the following table ↓↓

20.2.1. Idents Page

Table Number: 20.2.1.	This page allows you to read the type of module fitted.				MODULE IO (Idents Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Module Message	Default	Access Level	
<i>Module 1</i>	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O	
Memory Module	Memory module position	No Module		L1 R/O	
<i>Module 2 to 6</i>	Actual module fitted	See note 1		L1 R/O	

The module name is configurable by the user

Note 1:-

Module Messages

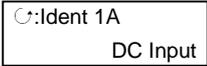
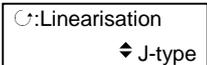
No Module	Bad Ident	Form C Relay	Form A Relay	Transducer PSU
Dual Relay	Dual Triac	DC Control	DC Retrains	Transmitter PSU
Tri-Logic IP	Tri-Contact IP	Tri-Logic OP	Pot Input	Diff Input
DC Input	Dual PV Input	Sin-Logic OP	Triac	
DC Control	HR DC Out	Dual DC Out	PV Input	

These are also listed in Table 20.1.

20.3. MODULE IO PARAMETERS

Each module has a unique set of parameters which depend on the function of the module fitted.

To view and alter parameters associated with each module:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p>1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to access 'MODULE IO'</p> <p>2. Press  to show 'Module 1A Page'</p>		<p>If a module is not fitted in the selected position the page is not displayed</p> <p>(A), (B), (C) refer to the output channel of a single, dual or triple module respectively</p> <p>The name of the module is user configurable</p>
<p>3. Press  to show the first parameter in the list. This is 'Ident 1A'</p>	 <p>Idents Summary of modules fitted <i>Module XA</i> X = Module number <i>Module XB</i> A, B, C = <i>Module XC</i> Single, Two, Three, channels respectively</p> <p>The above is repeated for every module fitted.</p> <p>The name of the module is user configurable</p>	<p>If the channel is not used the message 'No Parameters' is displayed</p>
<p>4. Press  to show the next parameter in the list. This is 'Channel Type'</p> <p>5. Press  or  to configure the function of the channel</p>		<p>The channel type is listed in each parameter table following this section.</p> <p>The channel type depends on the module type – input or output.</p>
<p>6. ' Press  again to scroll to a parameter which you wish to change</p> <p>7. Press  or  to change the parameter value</p>		<p>Tables in the following sections show the parameters available for different module types</p>



20.3.1. DC Control and DC Retransmission

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Table Number: 20.3.1. This page allows you to configure a DC Output module for control or retransmission. MODULE IO (Module 1(A)) This does not apply to the Dual DC or High Resolution Retranmission output modules				
Ident	Module identification	DC Output		R/O
Channel Type	I/O type	Volts mA		Conf
Wire Src	Source to which the channel is wired	Modbus address		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		L3. See output scaling
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range		
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0 to 10.00V or 0 to 20mA		R/O L3
<i>Module 1A Val</i> (can be a user defined name).	The current output value in operation mode.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Cal Trim	Analogue output calibration trim. Only available in calibration mode. See 25.6.1.			Conf
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration status	See 'Calibration' Chapter		R/O
This module has a single output. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

20.3.2. Relay Output

Table Number: 20.3.2.		This page allows you to configure a Relay Output module. Types included:- Form C Relay; Form A Relay; Dual Relay.		MODULE IO (Module 1(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Ident	Module identification	Relay		R/O	
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf	
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		Conf	
Invert	Relay energised Relay de-energised	Normal Inverted		Conf	
The following five parameters only appear if Channel Type is set to Time Proportion.					
Min Pulse Time	Minimum relay on or off time	Auto = 0.05s or 0.07 to 150.00	5 sec	L3	
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		Only shown for time prop. O/Ps	
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range			
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range			
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range			
Elect Val Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only	Not Enumerated	Not Enum- erated	Conf	
Eng Value Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the engineering value on/off only	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50		Conf	
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0.00 or 1.00 (time prop)		R/O L3	
<i>Module 1A Val</i> <i>Module 1A can</i> <i>be user text.</i>	The current output value in operation mode.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3	
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf	
The changeover relay and 2 pin relay are single output modules. The parameters above are displayed under 'channel' (A) only. Dual Relay has two outputs. The parameters above are displayed under Channel A and C.					

20.3.3. Triac Output

Table Number: 20.3.3.		This page allows you to configure a Triac Output module. Types included:- Triac; Dual Triac		MODULE IO (Module 1(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Ident	Module identification	Triac		R/O	
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf	
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		Conf	
Invert	Invert triac operation	Normal Inverted		Conf	
The following five parameters only appear if Channel Type is set to Time Proportion.					
Min Pulse Time	Minimum triac on or off time	Auto = 0.05s or 0.07 to 150.00	5 sec	L3 Only shown for time prop. O/Ps	
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range			
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range			
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range			
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range			
Elect Val Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only	Not Enumerated	Not Enum- erated	Conf	
Eng Value Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the engineering value on/off only	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50		Conf	
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0.00 or 1.00 (time prop)		R/O L3	
<i>Module 1A Val</i> <i>Module 1A</i> can be user defined text.	The current output value in operation mode.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3	
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf	
The triac output is a single output module. The parameters above are displayed under 'channel' (A) only. Channel (B) and channel (C) show 'No IO Channel'.					
The dual triac has two outputs. The parameters above are displayed under Channel (A) and Channel (C).					

20.3.4. Triple Logic Output and Single Isolated Logic Output

Table Number: 20.3.4.		This page allows you to configure a Logic Output module.		MODULE IO (Module 1(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Ident	Module identification	Logic Output		R/O	
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	On/Off Time Proportion Valve Lower Valve Raise		Conf	
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		Conf	
Invert	Invert logic operation	Normal Inverted		Conf	
The following five parameters only appear if Channel Type is set to Time Proportion.					
Min Pulse Time	Minimum on or off time	Auto = 0.05s or 0.07 to 150.00	Auto	L3 Only shown for time prop. O/Ps	
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range			
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range			
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range			
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range			
Elect Val Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the electrical value on/off only	Not Enumerated to	Not Enumerated	Conf	
Eng Value Enum See also 14.6.	Enumeration for the engineering value on/off only	01:Usr1 to 50:Usr50	Not Enumerated	Conf	
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0.00 or 1.00 (time prop)		R/O L3	
<i>Module 1A Val</i> <i>Module 1A can be user defined text.</i>	The current output value in operation mode.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3	
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf	
This module has three outputs. Each output is found under Module 1(A), (B) and (C).					

20.3.5. Triple Logic and Triple Contact Input

Table Number: 20.3.5.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a Triple Logic Input module.		MODULE IO (Module 1(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Ident	Module identification	Logic Input		R/O
Channel Type	Channel/Module Type	Digital Input	Digital Input	Conf
Invert	Invert input operation	Normal Invert		Conf
Eng Val Enum See also 15.6	Enumeration for the Module 1A Val	Not Enumerated 01:Usr01 50:Usr50	Not Enumerated	Conf
<i>Module 1A Val</i> <i>Module 1A</i> can be user defined text.	The current input value.	0 = Off 1 = On		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
This module has three inputs. Each input is found under Module 1(A), (B) and (C).				

20.3.6. Transmitter Power Supply

Table Number: 20.3.6.	This page allows you to set the parameters for a Transmitter Power Supply module.		MODULE IO (Module 1(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Ident	Module identification	Transmitter PSU		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	Transmitter PSU	Transmitter PSU	Conf
<i>Module 1A Val</i> <i>Module 1A</i> can be user defined text.	The current value in engineering units.			R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
This module has a single output providing 24Vdc at 20mA. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

20.3.7. Transducer Power Supply

Table Number: 20.3.7.		This page allows you to set the parameters for a Transducer Power Supply module.		MODULE IO (Module x(A) Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Ident	Module identification	Transducer PSU		R/O
Voltage	Voltage select	5 Volts 10 Volts		
Shunt	Selects calibration resistor fitted internally within the controller or externally (eg in the transducer)	External Internal		
Wire Src	Wire source	Modbus address		
Electrical Value	The current output electrical value in operation mode	0.00 to 10		
<i>Module 1A Val</i>	The current value in engineering units. <i>Module 1A</i> can be a user defined name.			R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
This module has a single output. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

20.3.8. Potentiometer Input

Table Number: 20.3.8.		This page allows you to set the parameters for a Potentiometer Input module.		MODULE IO (Module x(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Ident	Pot Input			R/O	
Units	Engineering units.	See Appendix D2		Conf	
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf	
SBrk Fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Downscale Upscale		Conf	
Eng Val Lo	Engineering value low	Display range		L3	
Eng Val Hi	Engineering value high			L3	
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L1	
<i>Module 1A Val</i>	The current value in engineering units. <i>Module 1A</i> can be a user defined name.			R/O	
Module Status	Module status	See Appendix D3		R/O	
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf	
Cal State	Allows the potentiometer to be calibrated.	Idle Pot Low Pos Pot High Pos Restore Fact	Idle	L3	
This module has a single input. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).					

20.3.9. PV Input

Table Number: 20.3.9.		This page allows you to set the parameters for a PV Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module 3(A) Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Ident	Module identification	PV Input		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	RTD Thermocouple Pyrometer 40mV 80mV mA Volts HZVolts Log10		Conf
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf
SBrk Impedance See section 21.5.3.	Sensor break enable for high output impedance sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if Channel Type = thermocouple	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf
The following four parameters are only shown for 'Channel Type' = mV, Volts, mA, and HZVolts				
Electrical Lo [units]	Electrical low input level	Input range. units depend on channel type		L3. Only shown for mV, V, mA
Electrical Hi [units]	Electrical high input level			
Eng Val Lo	Low display reading	Display range.		
Eng Val Hi	High display reading			

Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L1
Emissivity	Emissivity Ch Type = pyrometer only	Off to 1.00		
Electrical Val [units]	The current electrical value of the input	Input range		R/O L3
<i>Module 3A Val</i> <i>Module 3A can be</i> <i>user defined text.</i>	The current value in engineering units.			R/O
CJC Temp	Temperature read at the rear terminals °C Ch Type = thermocouple only			R/O
Offset	To apply a simple offset over the whole input range	Display range		L3
Module Status	Module status See Appendix D3	OK or message		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Sensor break value	See section 21.3.12.		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Calibration state Not shown for Pyrometer or mA inputs	See Chapter 25.		Conf
Rear Term Temp	Allows a user measured offset to be entered for CJC calibration Ch Type = thermocouple only	Auto to 50.00°C		
This module has a single input. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

Notes

1. **Input Linearisation**

J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type,
PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3.

20.3.10. DC Input

Table Number: 20.3.10.		This page allows you to set the parameters for a DC Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 1, 3, 4 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module x(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Ident	Module identification	DC Input		R/O	
Channel Type	Input/Output type	RTD Thermocouple Pyrometer mV mA Volts HZVolts Log10		Conf	
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf	
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D.2.		Conf	
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf	
SBrk Impedance See section 21.5.3.	Sensor break enable for high output impedance sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf	
SBrk fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Down scale Up Scale		Conf	
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if Channel Type = thermocouple	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf	
The following four parameters are only shown for 'Channel Type' = mV, V, mA, and HZVolts					
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range units depend on channel type		L3. See ' To Scale the PV Input '	
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level				
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading		Display range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading				
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L3	

Emissivity	Emissivity Pyrometer input only	Off to 1.00		L3
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the input	Input range units as configured		R/O
<i>Module 3A (or 6A) Val</i>	The current value in engineering units. <i>Module 3A</i> can be a user defined name.			R/O
Offset	Transducer scale offset	Display range	0	L3
CJC Temp	Temperature read at the rear terminals °C Thermocouple inputs only			R/O
Module Status	Module status	See Appendix D3		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Current sensor break value Read as a % of the SBrk Impedance configured	See section 21.5.3.		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Allows input to be calibrated. Not shown for Pyrometer or mA inputs	See Chapter 25	Idle	Conf
Rear Term Temp	Allows a user measured offset to be entered for CJC calibration Ch Type = thermocouple only	Auto to 50.00°C		
This module has a single input. Its parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A).				

Notes

1. **Input Linearisation**

J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3.

20.3.11. Dual PV Input

The dual PV input module accepts two inputs - one from a high level source (channel A) and one from a low level source (channel C). The two inputs are not isolated from each other and have an update rate of 5Hz. One application for the module is for a zirconia probe input. The module can also be configured for a single input when the update rate becomes 10Hz.

Table Number: 20.3.11a.		This page allows you to set the parameters for Channel A of a Dual PV Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module 3(A) Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
This module has two inputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C) Channel A is the high level input, channel C is the low level input. This assumes that 'En Dual Mode' = 'Yes' in the Channel C menu. If 'En Dual Mode' = 'No', then this module will behave as a single PV Input module, see table 20.3.9. This table shows Module 3 (or 6)A parameters					
Ident	Channel identification	High Level Inp		R/O	
Channel Type	Input/Output type	HZ Volts Volts	DC Input	Conf	
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf	
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D2		Conf	
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf	
SBrk Impedance	Sensor break impedance for sensors with high output impedance	Off Low High	Off	Conf	
SBrk Fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Downscale Upscale		Conf	
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	Input range units depend on channel type		L3 See 'To Scale the PV Input' L3	
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level				
Eng Val Lo	Low display reading		Display range		
Eng Val Hi	High display reading				
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0			
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the input	Input range units as configured		R/O	

<i>Module 3A Val</i>	The current value in engineering units. <i>Module 3 (or 6)A</i> can be a user defined name.			R/O
Offset	Transducer scale offset	Range limits		
Module Status	Module status	See Appendix D		R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Current sensor break value Read as a % of the SBrk Impedance configured	See section 20.5.3.		R/O
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text Page Section 5.2.6.		Default Text	Conf
Cal State	Allows input calibration Only shown when 'En Dual Mode' = 'No' (Table 21.3.11c)	See Chapter 25	Idle	Conf

Notes

1. **Input Linearisation**

J Type, K Type, L Type, R Type, B Type, N Type, T Type, S Type, Platinel II, C Type, PT 100, Linear, Square Root, Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3.

Table Number: 20.3.11c.		This page allows you to set the parameters for Channel C of a Dual PV Input module. This module can only be fitted in slots 3 or 6.		MODULE IO (Module 3(C) Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
This module has two inputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C) Channel A is the high level input, channel C is the low level input. This table shows Module 3 (or 6)C parameters				
Ident	Channel identification	Low Level Inp		R/O
Channel Type	Input/Output type	DC Input	DC Input	Conf
En Dual Mode	Enable dual mode See note 2	Yes No		
Linearisation	Input linearisation	See note 1		Conf
Units	Engineering units	See Appendix D2		Conf
Resolution	Display resolution	XXXXX to X.XXXX or SCI		Conf

SBrk Impedance	Sensor break impedance for high impedance output sensors	Off Low High	Off	Conf
SBrk Fallback	Sensor break fallback	Off Downscale Upscale		Conf
CJC Type	CJC type Only shown if Channel Type = Thermocouple	Internal 0°C 45°C 50°C None	Internal	Conf
Filter Time	Input filter time	Off to 0:10:00.0		L3
Emissivity	Emissivity Only shown if Channel Type = Pyrometer	Off to 1.00		L3
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the input	Input range units depend on channel type		R/O
<i>Module 3A Val</i>	The current value in engineering units. <i>Module 3 (or 6)A can be a user defined name.</i>			R/O
Offset	Transducer scale offset	Range limits		
CJC Temp	Temperature read at the rear terminals °C Thermocouple inputs only			R/O
SBrk Trip Imp	Current sensor break value Read as a % of the SBrk Impedance configured	See also section 20.5.3.		R/O
Channel Name	Channel name		Default Text	R/O

Note 2:-

The parameters in the above two tables are displayed when **'En Dual Mode' = 'Yes'**

If **'En Dual Mode' = 'No'**, then the module can be used as a single input with an update rate of 10Hz. Channel C parameters are then not applicable and the list of Channel A parameters becomes identical to the parameter list for the single PV input module, see section 20.3.9

To calibrate the module it is necessary to set **'En Dual Mode' = 'Yes'**

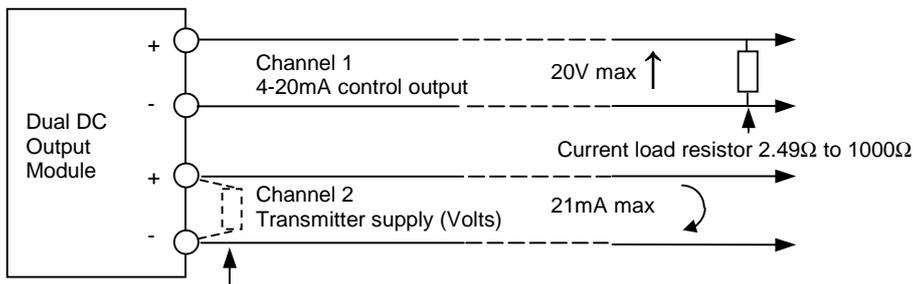
20.3.12. Dual DC Output Module

This module (order code DO) can be fitted in slots 4, 5 and 6 with a maximum of three in any single controller.

It contains two output channels. Each channel can be either 4-20mA control output, with 12 bit resolution, or a 24Vdc (20 to 30Vdc) transmitter supply. The module provides full 240Vac isolation.

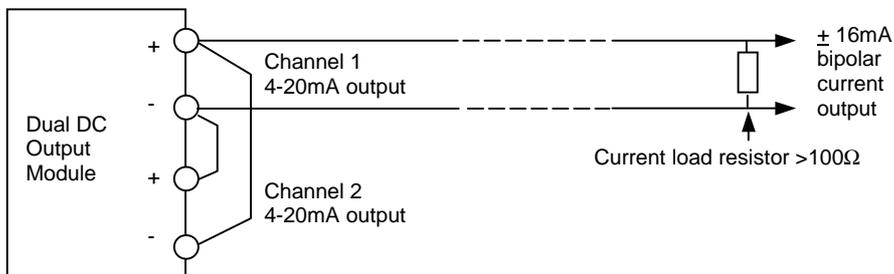
This module may be used if:-

- extra analogue outputs are required to implement the control functionality
- extra precision and stability of control is desired. This because the module is power efficient and, therefore, does not cause significant temperature fluctuation inside the instrument
- extra power sources (fully isolated) are needed for passive current transmitters, active transducers requiring 20V to 30V source or I/Os of open collector type.



A resistor of approx 56K Ω should be added if the current load <0.5mA

Figure 20-1: Ch1 & Ch2 Configured as Current Control & PSU



Channel 1 & 2 set up:-

Eng Val Lo	-100%	Alternatively one channel can be used with fixed 4mA while the other is varied between 4 and 20mA.
Eng Val Hi	100%	
Elec Lo	4mA	The polarity of the desired signal depends on which channel is fixed
Elect Hi	20mA	

Figure 20-2: Connections to Obtain a Bipolar (16mA) Current Output

Table Number: 20.3.12.		This page allows you to set the parameters for a Dual DC Output module. This module can only be fitted in slots 4, 5 and 6.		MODULE IO (Module 4(C) Page)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
This module has two outputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C) Channel A and channel C can be 4-20mA or PSU outputs.				
Ident	Channel identification	DC Out		R/O
Channel Type	Output type mA = analogue output Volts = transmitter PSU	mA Volts		Conf
Wire Src	Source to which the channel is wired	Modbus address		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		L3.
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range		See
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		output
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		scaling
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0 to 10.00V or 0 to 20mA		R/O L3
Module 1A Val (can be a user defined name).	The current output value in operation mode.	$\pm 100.0\%$ -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Module Status	Module status	See Appendix D3		L3
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text page, section 5.2.6.		Default text	Conf
Cal state	Allows the module to be calibrated	Idle Cal Low Confirm Go Now Trim O/P Accept Cal High Restore Factory Save	Idle	Conf
Cal Trim	Output calibration trim Only appears when Cal State = Now Trim O/P			Conf

20.3.13. High Resolution Retransmission Output

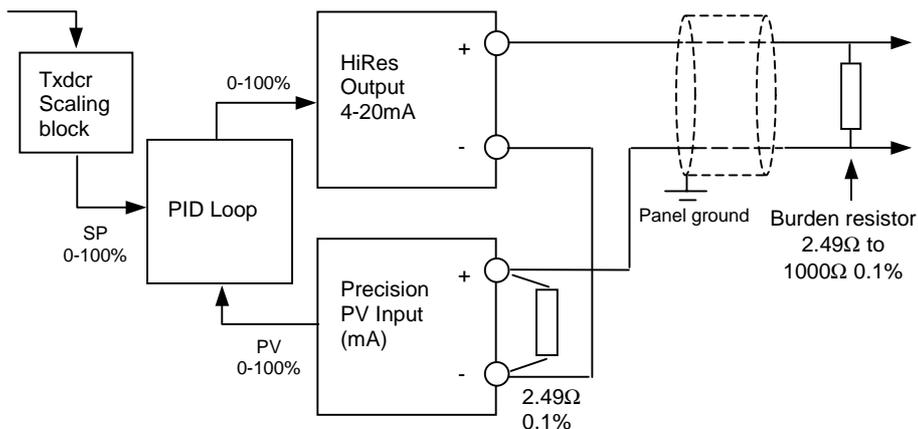
This module (order code HR) can be fitted in slots 4, 5 and 6 with a maximum of three in any single controller.

It contains two output channels. The first channel provides a high resolution, 15 bit, 4-20mA or 0-10Vdc retransmission signal. The second provides 24Vdc (20 to 30Vdc) transmitter supply. The module provides full 240Vac isolation.

This unit has been designed for use as a conditioning circuit for complex passive sensors/transducers such as may be found in a carbon potential control system.

The high resolution is achieved in feedback mode using a PID control loop. The retransmission variable provides the setpoint for the PID loop. The output from the module provides the PV input to the loop which corrects for any variations in the output signal.

Retrans Variable



Precision PV Input set up:-

Elec Lo	4mA
Elect Hi	20mA
Filter time	0.2sec

PID Loop set up

Proportional band (PB)	125%
Integral time (Ti)	0.4sec
Derivative time (Td)	Off

All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.

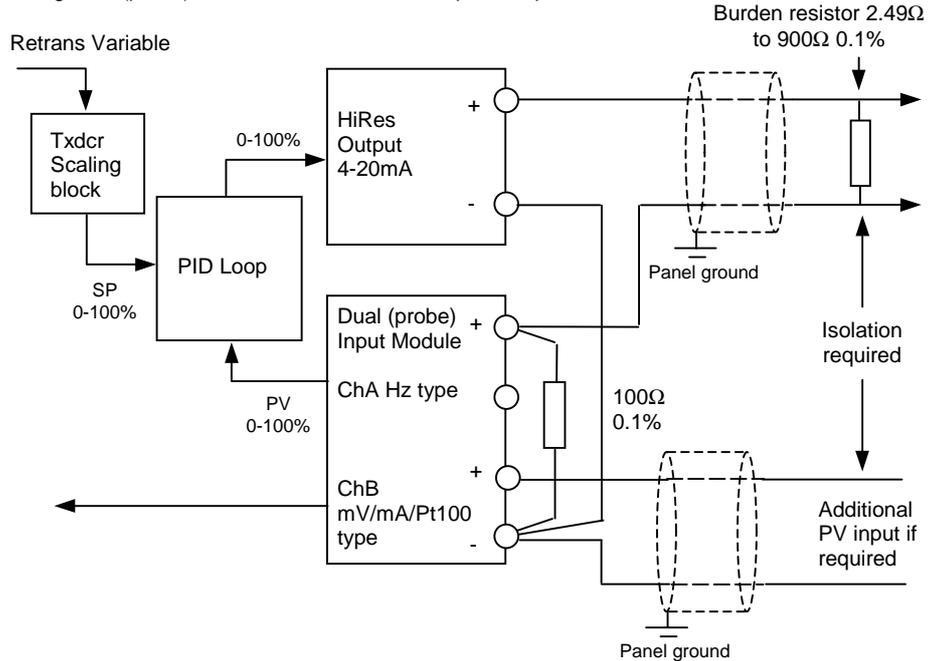
Figure 20-3: Precision 4-20mA Current Loop Retransmission (15bit)
using a single precision PV input module.

Notes:

- To guarantee that the 4-20mA range is fully covered the channel output is calibrated at 3.8mA (cal low) and 20.5mA (cal High).
- To utilise the full potential for high accuracy/resolution extra care should be taken to ensure low levels of EM interference as follows:-
 - keep connecting cables away from power cables
 - ground 'Dig Common' of the controller to local panel ground
 - use shielded cables with the shield connected to local panel ground

Precise 4-20mA Current Loop Retransmission (14bit)

Using Dual (probe) module and a feedback loop with input from channel A



Channel A Input set up:-

Elec Lo	0.4V
Elec Hi	2V
Filter time	0.4sec

PID Loop set up

Proportional band (PB)	145%
Integral time (Ti)	0.6sec
Derivative time (Td)	Off

All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.



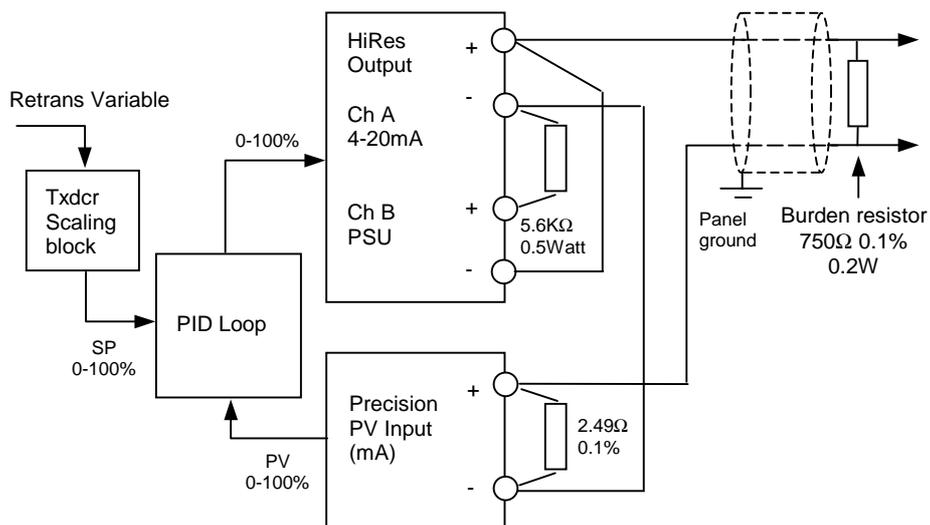
Channel C input and the retransmitted 4-20mA output must be connected together at the (-) terminal of the Dual (probe) input. The receiving instrument 4-20mA input and the other end of the channel C input should be isolated from each other. It is the installers responsibility to ensure the appropriate isolation when using the Dual (probe) module.

Notes:

- To guarantee that the 4-20mA range is fully covered the channel output is calibrated at 3.8mA (cal low) and 20.5mA (cal High).
- To utilise the full potential for high accuracy/resolution extra care should be taken to ensure low levels of EM interference as follows:-
 - keep connecting cables away from power cables
 - ground 'Dig Common' of the controller to local panel ground
 - use shielded cables with the shield connected to local panel ground

Precise 0-10V Voltage Retransmission (15bit)

Using a single precision PV input, PSU output and a feedback loop



Precision PV Input (mA) set up:-

Elec Lo	0mA
Elect Hi	13.333mA
Filter time	0.2sec

PID Loop set up

Proportional band (PB)	125%
Integral time (Ti)	0.4sec
Derivative time (Td)	Off

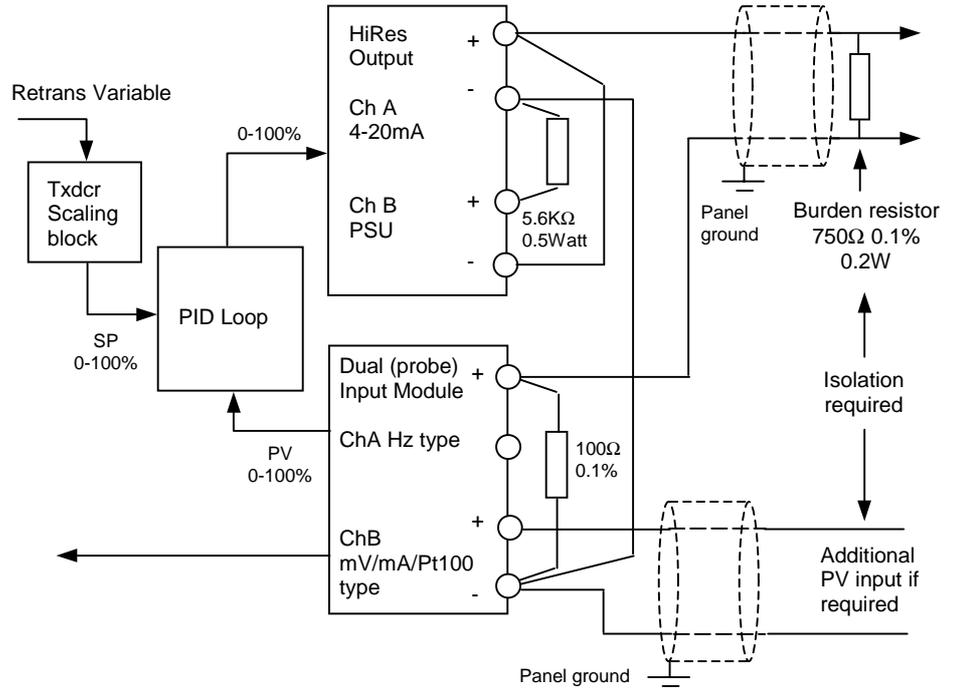
All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.

Notes:-

- Range of the retransmitted voltage can be scaled by using different burden resistors:-
 - 150Ω will produce 0-2V range
 - 100Ω will produce 0-1.333V range
- To guarantee that the 4-20mA range is fully covered the channel output is calibrated at 3.8mA (cal low) and 20.5mA (cal High).
- To utilise the full potential for high accuracy/resolution extra care should be taken to ensure low levels of EM interference as follows:-
 - keep connecting cables away from power cables
 - ground 'Dig Common' of the controller to local panel ground
 - use shielded cables with the shield connected to local panel ground

Precise 0-10V Voltage Retransmission (14bit)

Using a Dual (probe) input, PSU output and a feedback loop with input from channel A.



Precision PV Input (mA) set up:-

Elec Lo	0V
Elect Hi	13.333V
Filter time	0.4sec

PID Loop set up

Proportional band (PB)	145%
Integral time (Ti)	0.6sec
Derivative time (Td)	Off

All the internal variables of the loop and their limits are set to 0 –100% range.



Channel C input and the retransmitted 4-20mA output must be connected together at the (-) terminal of the Dual (probe) input. The receiving instrument 4-20mA input and the other end of the channel C input should be isolated from each other. It is the installers responsibility to ensure the appropriate isolation when using the Dual (probe) module.

Notes on the previous page apply

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
<p>Table Number: 20.3.13. This page allows you to set the parameters for a High Resolution Output module. This module can only be fitted in slots 4, 5 and 6.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">MODULE IO (Module 4(C) Page)</p>				
<p>This module has two outputs. Parameters are displayed under 'channel' (A) and 'channel' (C) Channel A can be 4-20mA output or transmitter PSU, channel C is the PSU.</p>				
Ident	Channel identification	Hi Res Out		R/O
Channel Type	Output type	mA (not Ch C) Volts		Conf
Wire Src	Source to which the channel is wired	Modbus address		Conf
Electrical Lo	Electrical low input level	O/P range		L3. See output scaling
Electrical Hi	Electrical high input level	O/P range		
Eng Value Lo	Low display reading	Disp. range		
Eng Value Hi	High display reading	Disp. range		
Electrical Val	The current electrical value of the output in operation mode	0 to 10.00V or 0 to 20mA		R/O L3
Module 1A Val (can be a user defined name).	The current output value in operation mode.	±100.0% -ve values are not used		R/O L3
Module Status	Module status	See Appendix D3		L3
Channel Name	User defined name for the channel. Select from User Text page, section 5.2.6.		Default text	Conf
Cal state	Allows the module to be calibrated	Idle Cal Low Confirm Go Now Trim O/P Accept Cal High Restore Factory Save	Idle	Conf
Cal Trim	Output calibration trim Only appears when Cal State = Now Trim O/P			Conf

20.4. MODULE SCALING

The IO modules are scaled as already described in Chapter 19 for the fixed inputs and outputs. The procedures are repeated below:-

20.4.1. The PV Input

Scaling of the PV input applies to linear process inputs, eg linearised transducers, where it is necessary to match the displayed reading to the electrical input levels from the transducer.

PV input scaling is not provided for direct thermocouple or RTD inputs.

Figure 20-4 shows an example of input scaling where an electrical input of 4-20mA requires the display to read 2.5 to 200.0 units.

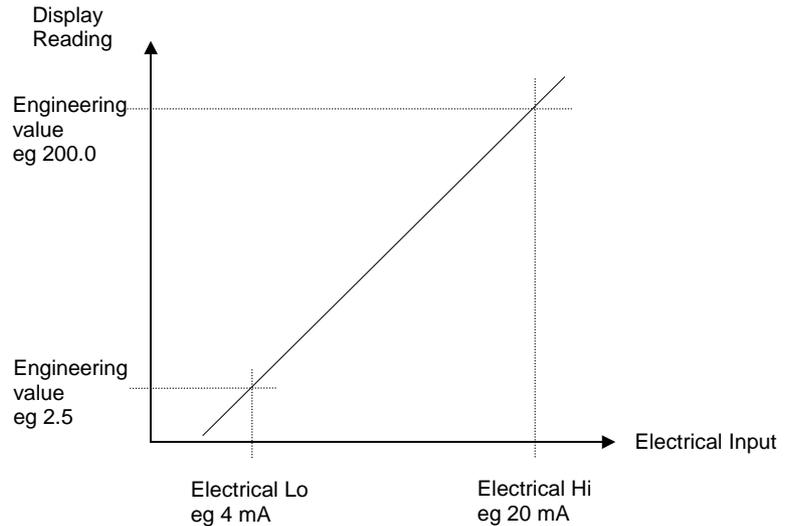
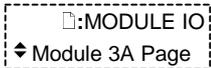
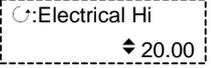


Figure 20-4: Input Scaling (Modules)

20.4.2. To Scale a Linear PV Input:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' MODULE IO ' 2. Press  or  to choose the slot in which the PV Input module is fitted, e.g. 3A		
3. Press  to scroll to ' Electrical Lo ' 4. Press  or  to set the value		The next four parameters are only available if the 'Channel Type' = mV, mA, Volts, HZVolts Set this value to the lowest level of the input, eg 4mA. It may be necessary to set 'Electrical Hi' first since this limits the adjustment of 'Electrical Lo'.
5. Press  to scroll to ' Electrical Hi ' 6. Press  or  to set the value		Set this value to the highest level of the input, eg 20mA.
7. Press  to scroll to ' Eng Val Lo ' 8. Press  or  to set the value		Set up the displayed value (instrument minimum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Lo input, eg 2.50 The number of decimal places depends on the 'Resolution' set
9. Press  to scroll to ' Eng Val Hi ' 10. Press  or  to set the value		Set up the displayed value (instrument maximum span) which corresponds to the Electrical Hi input, eg 200.00

20.4.3. Output modules

If the output module is DC or if it is a relay, triac or logic used as time proportioning control, it can be scaled such that a lower and upper level of PID demand signal can limit the operation of the output value. This is shown in Figure 20-5 applied to a relay output or any time proportioning output..

By default, the relay will be fully off for 0% power demand, fully on for 100% power demand and equal on/off times at 50% power demand. You can change these limits to suit the process. It is important to note, however, that these limits are set to safe values for the process. For example, for a heating process it may be required to maintain a minimum level of temperature. This can be achieved by applying an offset at 0% power demand which will maintain the relay on for a period of time. Care must be taken to ensure that this minimum on period does not cause the process to overheat

These offsets can be made to parameters in the relevant Module IO pages.

If the output is DC the electrical low and electrical high parameters are analogue values and can be set as in the example given for DC Output Retransmission, section 20.4.5.

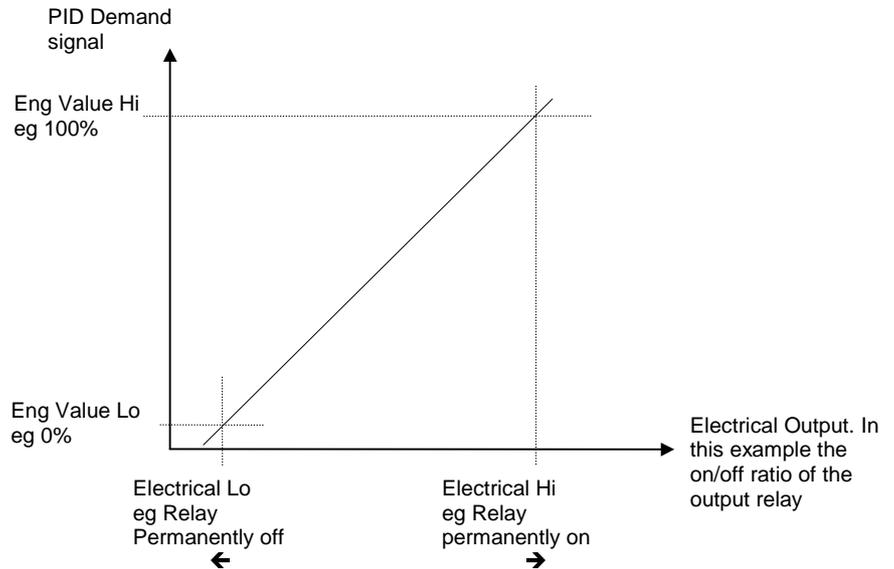
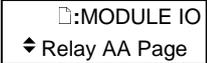
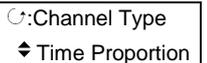
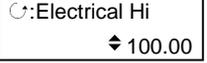
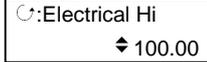


Figure 20-5: Time Proportioning Relay, Triac or Logic Output

20.4.4. To Scale A Control Output:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' MODULE IO ' 2. Press  or  to choose the slot in which a relay, triac or logic output is fitted		This procedure can also be done in Level 3.
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the list. This is ' Channel Type ' 4. Press  or  to choose the function of the relay		The choices are:- On/Off Time proportion Valve Raise Valve Lower
5. Press  to scroll to ' Electrical Lo ' 6. Press  or  to adjust the value		If the relay is wired to the PID output demand signal set this to a low value, normally 0. If it is set to a higher value the relay will remain on for a period of time even when the PID demand is zero. This parameter is limited by 'Electrical Hi' which may need to be adjusted first.
7. Press  to select ' Electrical Hi ' 8. Press  or  to adjust the value		If the relay is wired to the PID output demand signal set this to a high value, normally 100.
9. Press  to select ' Eng Value Lo ' 10. Press  or  to adjust the value		This is the value of the PID demand signal which will cause the relay to switch as set by 'Electrical Lo'
11. Press  to select ' Eng Value Hi ' 12. Press  or  to adjust the value		This is the value of the PID demand signal which will cause the relay to switch as set by 'Electrical Hi'

20.4.5. Retransmission Output

The retransmission output can be scaled so that the output value corresponds to range of the signal to be retransmitted.

Figure 20-6 shows an example where the retransmitted signal is PV or SP and an electrical output of 4-20mA represents 20.0 to 200.0 units.

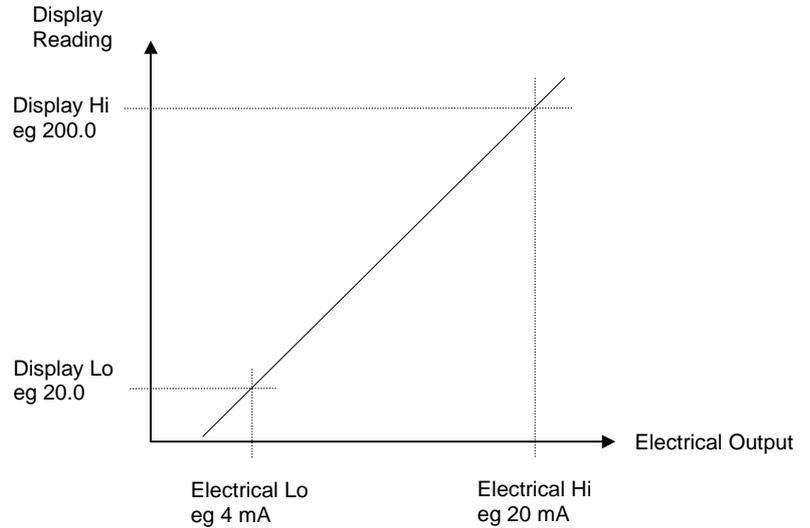
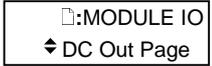
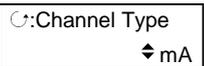


Figure 20-6: Scaling a Retransmission Output

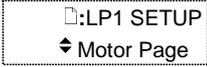
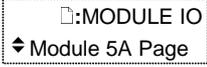
20.4.6. To Scale a Retransmission Output

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' MODULE IO ' 2. Press  or  to select a slot in which a DC output is fitted		This procedure can also be done in Level 3.
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the list. This is ' Channel Type ' 4. Press  or  to choose Volts or mA		
5. Press  to scroll to ' Electrical Lo ' 6. Press  or  to adjust the value		Using the example in Figure 20-3 set this value to 4mA This parameter is limited by 'Electrical Hi' which may need to be adjusted first.
7. Press  to select ' Electrical Hi ' 8. Press  or  to adjust 20mA		
9. Press  to select ' Eng Value Lo ' 10. Press  or  to adjust to 20		The number of decimal places depends on the 'Resolution'
11. Press  to select ' Eng Value Hi ' 12. Press  or  to adjust to 200		The retransmission signal of 4 – 20mA will correspond to a display reading of 20.00 to 200.00

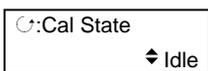
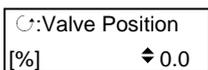
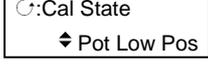
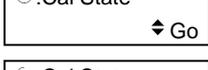
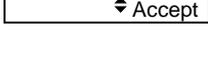
20.4.7. To Scale the Potentiometer input

When using the controller in bounded valve position control mode, it is necessary to calibrate the feedback potentiometer to correctly read the position of the valve. The value of the potentiometer input is read by the parameter 'Module xA Val', where x is the number of the slot in which the Pot Input module is fitted.

To calibrate the potentiometer input, it is necessary to carry out this procedure in access level 3:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
Enable Potentiometer Calibration		
1. From the relevant LOOP SETUP page select ' Motor Page '		<i>LP1</i> is a user definable name and may be different in your controller
2. Press  to scroll to ' Enable Pot Cal '		This parameter is only displayed when the 'Pot IP Src', <i>LP1</i> SETUP (Wiring Page), is wired and 'Control Type'. <i>LP1</i> SETUP (Options Page), is set to VP or VPB
3. Press  or  to ' On '		
Select the slot in which the Pot Input Module is fitted		
6. Press  as many times as necessary to select ' MODULE IO '		This example assumes the Pot Input Module is fitted in slot 5
7. Press  or  to select the module in which the potentiometer input is fitted		
8. Press  to scroll to the required parameters, for example 'Eng Val Lo' or 'Eng Val Hi'.		<p>'Eng Val Lo' and 'Eng Val Hi' will normally be set to 0 and 100 respectively to represent a fully closed to fully open position of the valve</p> <p>These parameters do not limit the travel of the valve but provide an indication of the pot position</p>

Calibrate the Potentiometer Minimum Position

9. Press  to scroll to 'Cal State'		
10. Press     to return to an Overview page		<p>This is an example of an Overview page.</p> <p>It can only be accessed in level 3</p>
11. Press  to scroll to 'Valve Position'		
12. Press  to close the valve		
13. Press  to return to 'Cal State'		<p>To calibrate follow the instructions on the display.</p>
14. Press  or  to select 'Pot Low Pos'		<p>When the controller is calibrating the message 'Doing Fine Cal' appears.</p>
15. To confirm, press  or  to select 'Go'.		<p>When the controller has finished the message 'Passed' appears.</p>
16. (You can also select 'Abort' at this point)	 	<p>Press  or  to 'Accept'. After approx 3 seconds the display will revert to 'Idle' completing the procedure.</p> <p>You can also 'Abort' at this stage.</p>

Calibrate the Potentiometer Maximum Position

Repeat the above steps to adjust the valve fully open by selecting 'Pot Hi Pos'

i

The Potentiometer Input Module can also be used simply so that the resistance value represents an engineering value, such as 35 to 780 mm or 0-1000Ω. The parameters 'Eng Val Lo' and 'Eng Val Hi' are then set to these values.

The procedure to calibrate for these readings is the same as above but, of course, it is not necessary to revert to the Overview display since the potentiometer can be adjusted manually. When the pot position parameter is highlighted, the units are displayed in the upper right of the display banner.

The units and resolution will have been set in configuration level.

An Out of Range signal will be displayed if the pot measurements lay outside the calibrated range.

20.5. MODULE IO WIRING EXAMPLES

20.5.1. To Configure Module 1 Channel A to Run a Program

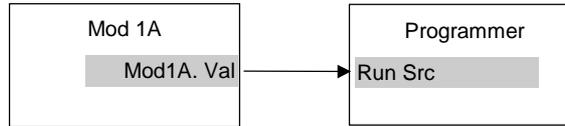


Figure 20-7: External Run/Hold Switch

This example assumes a Triple Logic module fitted in module slot 1. No configuration of the Module 1A function block is required but the output of the block must be wired to the Run Source in the Programmer block.

20.5.1.1. Implementation

- In PROGRAM EDIT/Wiring Page
 - set 'Run Src' = 04148:Mod1A.Val
 - This connects the output of module 1A to the Run Source wire in the Programmer block.

20.5.2. To Operate a Relay from a Digital Input

This example assumes that a Relay Module is fitted in module slot 2, and it is required to operate when Digital Input 1 is true.

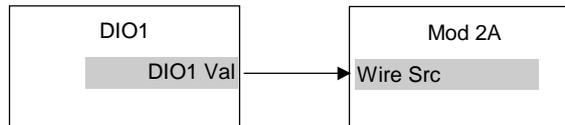


Figure 20-8: To Operate a Relay from a Digital Input

20.5.2.1. Implementation

- In STANDARD IO/Dig IO1 Page
 - set 'Channel Type' = Digital Input
 - This configures DIO1 to be digital input
- In MODULE IO/Module 2 A Page
 - set 'Channel Type' = On/Off
 - set 'Wire Src' = 05402:DIO1.Val
 - This configures Module 2A to On/Off relay and connects DIO1 to operate this relay.

20.5.3. Zirconia Probe Impedance Measurement

The impedance of Zirconia probes can increase with age. The 2604 controller can be used to monitor this impedance using the 'Sensor Break Value' parameter. An alarm on this parameter can be provided if required.

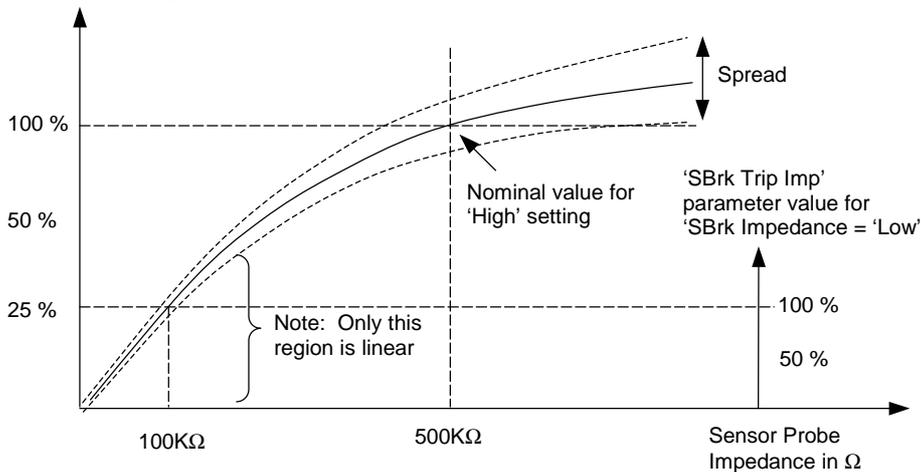
The controller continuously monitors the impedance of a transducer or sensor connected to any analogue input. This impedance, expressed as a percentage of the impedance which causes the sensor break flag to trip, is a parameter called 'SBrk Trip Imp' and is available in the parameter lists associated with both Standard and Module inputs of an analogue nature. The table below shows the typical impedance which causes sensor break to trip for HZVolts input and High and Low 'SBrk Impedance parameter settings.

HZ Volts (-1.5 to 2V) (applies to Standard PV Input, PV Input module and Dual PV Input module)	
SBrk Impedance – High	~ 500K Ω
SBrk Impedance - Low	~ 100K Ω

The graph below shows the approximate relationship between the actual sensor impedance, in ohms, and the measured 'SBrk Trip Imp' parameter, in %, for HZ Volts input type using Standard PV Input, PV Input Module and Dual PV Input module.

Please note that the relationship is not linear, particularly above 30% of the parameter value on High setting. Also that the 'SBrk' reading has a large manufacturing spread and is not factory calibrated. It is recommended, therefore, that the 'SBrk Trip Imp' is calibrated against a known resistor in the range 50 to 100k Ω .

'SBrk Trip Imp' parameter
value for 'SBrk
Impedance = 'High'

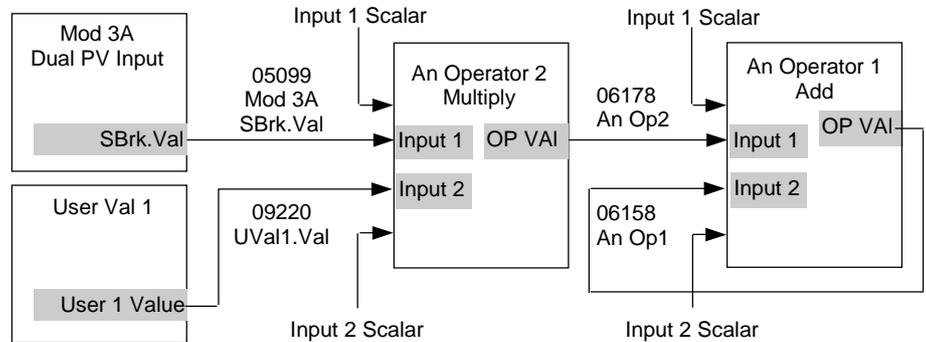


20.5.3.1. Implementation

This example assumes the Zirconia inputs is connected to the Dual PV Input module, Mod 3. Analogue Operator 2 acts as a scalar to convert % to a calibrated value of impedance.

User Value 1 is used as a convenient way to calibrate the sensor break value against a known resistor.

Since the signal can be noisy, Analogue Operator 1 acts as a simple filter.



1. In MODULE IO/Module 3A (or 6A) Page
set 'SBrk Impedance' = High
 2. In ANALOGUE OPERS/An 2 Page
set Operation = Multiply
set Input 1 Src = 05099 (Sensor break value)
set Input 1 scalar = 1.0
set Input 2 Src = 09220 (User value 1 output)
set Input 1 scalar = 1.0
 3. In ANALOGUE OPERS/An 1 Page
set Operation = Add
set Input 1 Src = 06178 (Analogue Operator 2 Output value)
set Input 1 scalar = 0.01
set Input 2 Src = 06158 (Analogue Operator 1 Output value)
set Input 1 scalar = 0.99
- These settings of input scalar will ensure that the Output Value reaches the same value as Input 1 Value

20.5.3.2. Calibration

1. Connect a known value of resistor (between 50 and 100K Ω) in place of the probe
2. Adjust User 1 Value so that Analogue Operator 2 Output Value reads the value of the resistor
3. The output from Analogue Operator 2 should ramp to the same value. This value can be promoted to a User Screen or used to provide an alarm.

21.	CHAPTER 21 TRANSDUCER SCALING	2
21.1.	WHAT IS TRANSDUCER SCALING?	2
21.2.	SHUNT CALIBRATION.....	3
21.2.1.	To Calibrate a Strain Gauge Bridge Transducer.....	4
21.3.	LOAD CELL CALIBRATION	6
21.3.1.	To Calibrate a Load Cell.....	7
21.4.	COMPARISON CALIBRATION.....	8
21.4.1.	To Calibrate a Controller Against a Second Reference	9
21.5.	AUTO-TARE CALIBRATION.....	11
21.5.1.	To Use the Auto-Tare Feature	11
21.6.	TRANSDUCER SCALING PARAMETERS.....	13
21.6.1.	Transducer Scaling Parameter Table	13
21.6.2.	Parameter Notes.....	15

21. Chapter 21 Transducer Scaling

21.1. WHAT IS TRANSDUCER SCALING?

Transducer scaling is a software function block which provides a method of offsetting the calibration of the controller input when compared to a known input source. Transducer scaling is often performed as a routine operation on a machine to take out system errors. In the case of a load cell, for example, it may be necessary to zero the scale when a load is removed.

Transducer scaling can be applied to any input or derived input, i.e. the PV Input, Analogue Input or Modules 1, 3, 4, 5, or 6. In practice, however, it is unlikely that transducer scaling would be required on every input and so the 2604 controller includes three transducer calibration function blocks. These can be wired in configuration level to any three of the above inputs.

Four types of calibration are explained in this chapter:-

1. Shunt Calibration
2. Load Cell Calibration
3. Comparison Calibration
4. Auto-tare

21.2. SHUNT CALIBRATION

Shunt calibration is so called since it refers to switching a calibration resistor across one arm of the four wire measurement bridge in a strain gauge transducer. It also requires the use of a Transducer Power Supply.

The strain gauge transducer is calibrated as follows:

1. Remove any load from the transducer to establish a zero reference.
2. Enter 'Scale Low' and 'Scale High' values which are normally set at 0% and 80% of the span of the transducer.
3. Start the procedure using the low point calibration parameter 'Start Pnt1 Cal', or a digital input wired to this parameter.

The controller will automatically perform the following sequence:

1. Disconnect the shunt resistor
2. Calculate the low point calibration value by continuously averaging two lots of 50 measurements of the input until stable readings are obtained
3. Connect the shunt resistor
4. Calculate the high point calibration value by averaging two lots of 50 measurements of the input

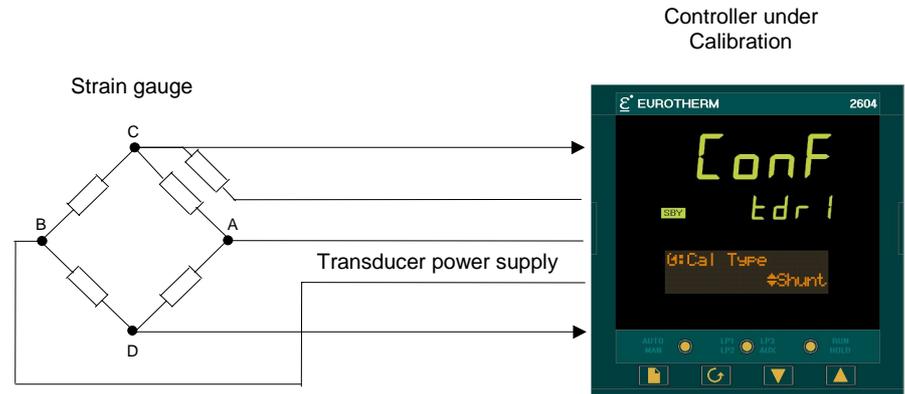
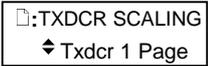


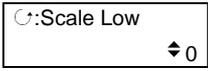
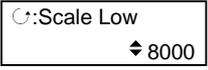
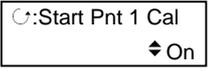
Figure 21-1: Strain Gauge Calibration

21.2.1. To Calibrate a Strain Gauge Bridge Transducer

The controller must have been configured for Cal Type = Shunt, and the transducer connected as shown in Appendix F using the 'Transducer Power Supply'. Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
It is first necessary to enable calibration as follows:-		
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' TXDCR SCALING '		The choices are : <i>Txdcr 1</i> <i>Txdcr 2</i> <i>Txdcr 3</i>
2. Press  or  to choose ' Txdcr 1 (or 2 or 3) Page '		This text can be user defined
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the page, this is Enable Cal		This parameter remains 'On' once it has been set. It requires to be switched 'Off' manually.
4. Press  or  to On		It may be wired to an external digital input source such as a key switch

Set the strain gauge bridge to its 'zeroed' condition

<p>1. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to Scale Low</p>		<p>This will normally be zero</p>
<p>2. Press  or  to enter the low end calibration value</p>		
<p>3. Press  to scroll to Scale High</p>		<p>In this example a value of 8000 is chosen which may represent 80% of the 0 - 10,000psi range of a pressure transducer.</p>
<p>4. Press  or  to enter the high end calibration value</p>		
<p>5. Press  to scroll to Start Pnt 1 Cal</p>		<p>This parameter can be configured to be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch.</p>
<p>6. Press  or  to enter On</p>		<p>An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter</p>

 Tip: To backscroll hold down  and press 

The controller automatically performs the procedure described in Section 21-2. During this time the **Cal Active** parameter will change to **On**. When this parameter value changes back to **Off** the calibration is complete.

The **Shunt State** parameter will also change during the procedure to show when it is being connected (On = connected, Off = disconnected).

Note:-

It is possible to start the calibration procedure before the system has settled at a stable value. The controller continuously takes blocks of 50 samples. When the average value between two consecutive blocks is within the '**Threshold Value**' the controller will then calibrate. The Threshold Value defaults to 0.5 but can be adjusted in configuration level. If the readings are not stable within this period the controller will abort the calibration.

21.3. LOAD CELL CALIBRATION

A load cell with V, mV or mA output may be connected to the PV Input, Analogue Input or Modules 1, 3, 4, 5, 6 supplied as analogue inputs. The wiring connections are shown in the User Guide Chapter 2

The load cell is calibrated as follows:

1. Remove any load and start the procedure using the low point calibration parameter 'Start Pnt1 Cal', or a digital input wired to this parameter. The controller will calculate the low calibration point
2. Place a reference weight on the load cell and turn on the high point calibration parameter 'Start Pnt2 Cal', or a digital input wired to this parameter. The controller will then calculate the high calibration point.

Note:-

If 'Start Pnt1 Cal' = 'On', 'Start Pnt2 Cal' cannot be turned to 'On'.

If 'Start Pnt2 Cal' = 'On', 'Start Pnt1 Cal' cannot be turned to 'On'.

Either must complete before the other can be set to 'On'.

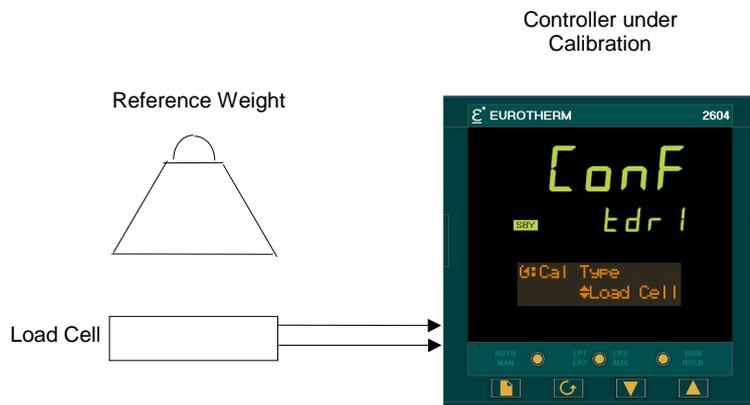


Figure 21-2: Load Cell Calibration

21.3.1. To Calibrate a Load Cell

The controller must have been configured for Cal Type = Load Cell, and the transducer connected as shown in the Appendix F. Then:-

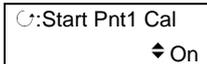
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
---------	------------------------------------	------------------

Enable calibration as described in section 21.2.1.

Then set the load cell to its 'zeroed' condition

1. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to '**Start Pnt1 Cal**'

2. Press  or  to '**On**'



This parameter can be configured so that it is activated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch.

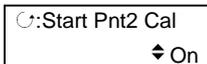
An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter

During the time taken for the controller to calculate the low point calibration value, the **Cal Active** parameter will be **On**.

When the Calibration Low procedure is complete, place the reference load on the load cell

3. Press  to scroll to '**Start Pnt2 Cal**'

4. Press  or  to **On**



It can be configured to be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch.

An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter

Note:-

'Scale High' is the high calibration point and 'Scale Low' is the low calibration point. These should be set to the range over which calibration is required. 'Threshold Value' applies as in the previous section.

21.4. COMPARISON CALIBRATION

Comparison calibration is most appropriate when calibrating the controller against a second reference instrument.

In this case the process calibration points are not entered ahead of performing the calibration. The input may be set to any value and, when the system is stable, a reading is taken from the reference measurement device and entered into the controller. The controller stores both this new target value and the actual reading taken from its input.

The process is repeated at a different value, with the controller storing both the new target value and the reading taken from its input.

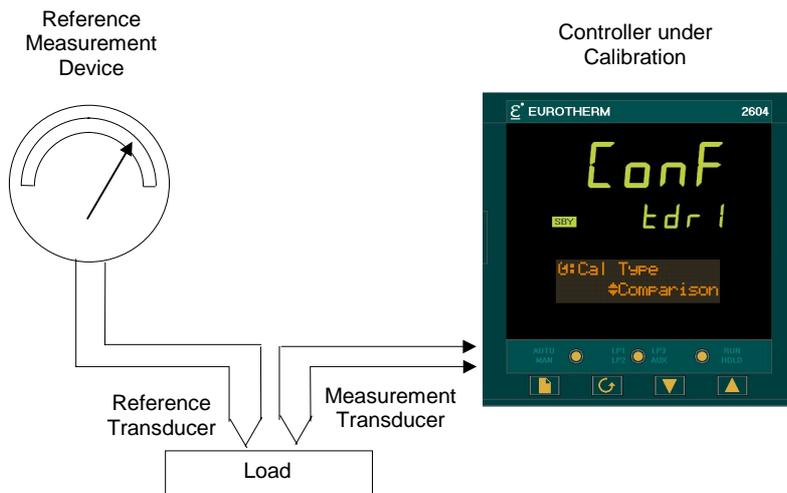
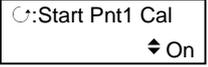
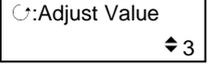


Figure 21-3: Comparison Calibration

21.4.1. To Calibrate a Controller Against a Second Reference

The controller must have been configured for Cal Type = Comparison, and the transducer connected as shown in the Appendix F. Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p style="text-align: center;">Enable calibration as described in section 21.2.1.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Then allow the process to settle at the low calibration point</p> <p>1. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to 'Start Pnt1 Cal'</p> <p>2. Press  or  to 'On'</p>		<p>This parameter can be configured to be activated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch.</p> <p>An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter</p>
<p>3. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to 'Adjust Value'</p> <p>4. Press  or  to enter the value indicated on the reference instrument</p> <p>5. Press  to confirm or  to cancel as instructed</p>		<p>The confirm message does not appear unless 'Adjust Value' is changed.</p> <p>If the displayed value is acceptable change it momentarily then back to the value to step to the next stage.</p> <p>On confirm the current input value is stored as 'Input Low' and the value entered by the user is stored in the 'Scale Low' parameter.</p>

Allow the Process to settle at the high calibration point

6. Press  to '**Start Pnt2 Cal**'

:Start Pnt2 Cal
◆ On

This parameter can be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch.

An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter

7. Press  or  to '**On**'

8. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to '**Adjust Value**'

:Adjust Value
◆ 770

The confirm message does not appear unless 'Adjust Value' is changed.

If the displayed value is acceptable change it momentarily then back to the value to step to the next stage.

9. Press  or  to enter the value indicated on the reference instrument

10. Press  to confirm or  to cancel as instructed

On confirm the current input value is stored as 'Input High' and the value entered by the user is stored in the 'Scale High' parameter.

It is possible to perform either low or high points in isolation, or to calibrate both points consecutively as described above.

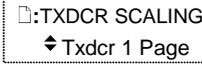
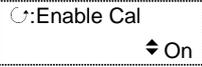
21.5. AUTO-TARE CALIBRATION

The auto-tare function is used, for example, when it is required to weigh the contents of a container but not the container itself.

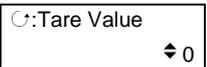
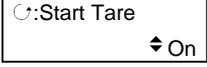
The procedure is to place the empty container on the weigh bridge and 'zero' the controller. Since it is likely that following containers may have different tare weights the auto-tare feature is always available in the controller at access level 1.

21.5.1. To Use the Auto-Tare Feature

Firstly, enable calibration as follows:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to access the page header menu 2. Press  or  to select 'TXDCR SCALING' 3. Press  or  to select 'Txdcr 1' (or 2 or 3)		The choices are : <i>Txdcr 1</i> <i>Txdcr 2</i> <i>Txdcr 3</i> This can be user defined text
4. Press  to select Enable Cal 5. Press  or  to On (if necessary)		This parameter remains 'On' once it has been set. It requires to be switched 'Off' manually. It may be wired to an external digital input source such as a key switch.

The auto-tare calibration is then as follows:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
<p>1. Set the equipment at the normal tare point, eg place the empty container on the weigh bridge</p>		
<p>1. Press  to 'Tare Value'</p> <p>2. Press  or  to enter the required value</p>		<p>This will normally be zero.</p> <p>When once set it will only be necessary to access this parameter again if a new tare value is required.</p>
<p>3. Press  as many times as necessary to scroll to 'Start Tare'</p> <p>4. Press  or  to 'On'</p>		<p>This parameter can be initiated from a digital input and wired, for example, to an external switch. An example of this wiring is given at the end of this chapter.</p>

The effect of auto-tare is to introduce a DC bias to the measurement, as shown in Figure 21-4 below.

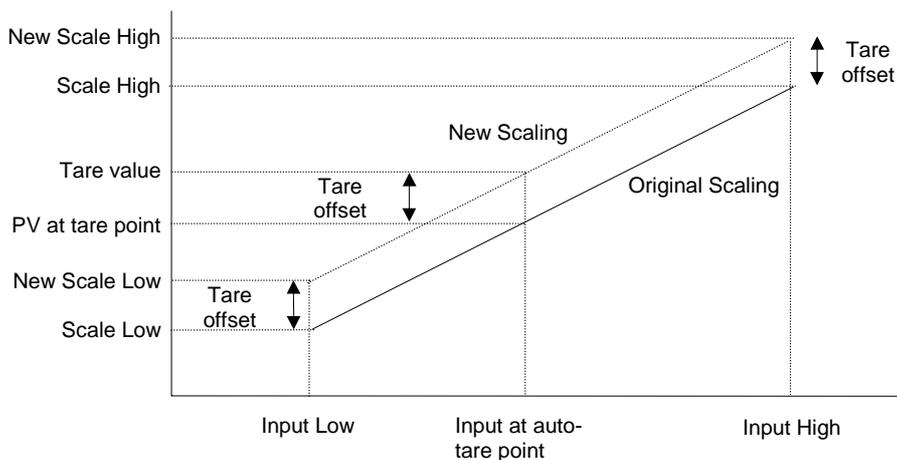


Figure 21-4: Effect of Auto-Tare

Note:- A Tare calibration will change the values of 'Scale High' and 'Scale Low'.

21.6. TRANSDUCER SCALING PARAMETERS

The parameters listed in the table below allow you to soft wire to sources within the controller to provide, for example, operation of calibration procedure via external switches.

21.6.1. Transducer Scaling Parameter Table

Table Number: 21.6.1.		This page shows the Transducer Scaling parameters.		TXDCR SCALING (Txdcr 1)
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level
Cal Type	Type of calibration	Off Shunt Load Cell Comparison	Off	Conf
Input Src	Pre-scaled value source	Modbus Address	None	Conf
Enable Cal Src	Enable calibration source			Conf
Clear Cal Src	Clear calibration source			Conf
Start Pnt 1 Src	Start calibration point 1 source			Conf
Start Pnt 2 Src	Start calibration point 2 source			Conf
Start Tare S	Start auto tare calibration source			Conf
Range Min	Minimum scale value			Conf
Range Max	Maximum scale value			Conf
Txdcr Name	Transducer name			From User Text
Enable Cal ⁽¹⁾	Enable calibration	Off On	Off	L3
Start Tare ⁽²⁾	Start auto-tare calibration	Off On	Off	L1
Start Pnt1 Cal ⁽³⁾	Start the calibration at point 1, normally the low point	Off On	Off	L1
Start Pnt2 Cal ⁽⁴⁾	Start the calibration at point 2, normally the high point	Off On	Off	L1
Clear Cal ⁽⁵⁾	Clear previous calibration values	Off On	Off	L3
Tare Value	Sets the value that the controller will read after an auto-tare calibration	Display range		L3

Input Low	Sets the scaling input low point			L3
Input High	Sets the scaling input high point			L3
Scale Low	Sets the scaling output low point			L3
Scale High	Sets the scaling output high point			L3
Threshold Val ⁽⁶⁾	The allowed difference between two consecutive averages during calibration	0 - 99.999 mins		L3
Shunt State ⁽⁷⁾	Indicates that the shunt resistor is connected or not	Off On		L3 R/O
Cal Active	Indicates calibration in progress	Off On		L3 R/O
Input Value	Pre-scaled input value	-100 to 100	0	L1
Scaled Value	Output from the scaling block.			R/O
Adjust Value	Sets the value read by the reference source in comparison calibration only			L1
OP Status	Output status based on input status and scaled PV	Good Bad		R/O

21.6.2. Parameter Notes

1. Enable Cal This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.
When enabled the transducer parameters may be altered as described in the previous sections. When the parameter has been turned On it will remain on until turned off manually even if the controller is powered cycled.
2. Start Tare This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.
3. Start Pnt1 Cal This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.
It starts the calibration procedure for:
 1. Shunt Calibration
 2. The low point for Load Cell Calibration
 3. The low point for Comparison Calibration
4. Start Pnt2 Cal This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.
It starts the calibration procedure for:
 1. The high point for Load Cell Calibration
 2. The high point for Comparison Calibration
5. Clear Cal This may be wired to a digital input for an external switch. If not wired, then the value may be changed.
When enabled the input will reset to default values. A new calibration will overwrite the previous calibration values if Clear Cal is not enabled between calibrations.
6. Threshold Val The input needs to settle within a range which has been set in configuration level. The threshold value sets the required settling time for shunt, load cell and auto-tare calibration.
7. Shunt This parameter is an output from the function block which can be wired to a transducer scale module to close the shunt circuit and introduce the calibration resistor. It may be used in copy and paste wiring.

22.	CHAPTER 22 IO EXPANDER.....	2
22.1.	WHAT IS IO EXPANDER?	2
22.2.	TO CONFIGURE IO EXPANDER	3
22.2.1.	IO Expander parameters	4

22. Chapter 22 IO Expander

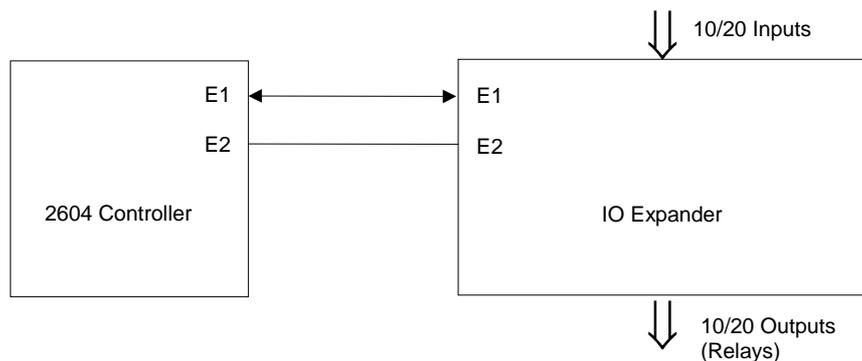
22.1. WHAT IS IO EXPANDER?

The IO Expander is an external unit which can be used in conjunction with the 2604 controller to allow the number of digital IO points to be increased. There are two versions:-

1. 10 Inputs and 10 Outputs
2. 20 Inputs and 20 Outputs

Each input is fully isolated and voltage or current driven. Each output is also fully isolated consisting of four changeover contacts and six normally open contacts in the 10 IO version and four changeover and sixteen normally open contacts in the 20 IO version.

Data transfer is performed serially via a two wire interface as shown in Figure 22-1.



E1 and E2 are the terminal numbers on both Controller and IO Expander. It is recommended that a cable length of 10 metres is not exceeded, however, no shielding or twisted pair cable is required.

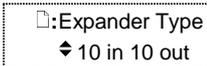
Figure 22-1: IO Expander Data Transfer

Wiring connections and further details of the IO Expander are given in the IO Expander Handbook, Part No. HA026893.

When this unit is connected to the controller it is necessary to set up parameters to determine its operation. These parameters can be set up in Operation Level 3 and are repeated here for information.

The IO Expander is enabled in INSTRUMENT/Options Page, see Chapter 5.

22.2. TO CONFIGURE IO EXPANDER

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary to select ' IO EXPANDER '		
2. Press  to show the parameter list. This is ' Expander Type '		The choices are:- None 10 in 10 out 20 in 20 out
3. Press  or  to select the expander type		
4. Press  to select ' OP 1 Src '		Parameter ' OP 1 Src ' has been connected to the ' Totaliser 1 Alarm Output '. The IO Expander output 1 will operate when Totaliser 1 alarm output is exceeded.
5. Press  or  to change the value or state		

Remaining parameters in the Analogue Operators list are accessed and adjusted in the same way.

The list of parameters available is shown in the following table



22.2.1. IO Expander parameters

Table Number: 22.2.1		This page allows you to configure the IO Expander.		IO EXPANDER	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Expander Type	Expander type	None 10 in 10 out 20 in 20 out	None	Conf	
OP 1 Src	Output 1 source Source of the signal to operate relay 1 in the IO Expander.	Modbus address		Conf	
The above parameter is repeated for 10 or 20 outputs available in the IO Expander					
Status	IO Expander status	Good Bad		L1 R/O	
In Stat 1-10	Status of the first 10 digital inputs □□□□□□□□□□ to ■□□□□□□□□□	= Off ■ = On		L1 R/O	
In Stat 11-20	Status of the second 10 digital inputs □□□□□□□□□□ to ■□□□□□□□□□	= Off ■ = On		L1 R/O	
OP Stat 21-30	Status of the first 10 digital outputs. Press  to select outputs in turn. The flashing underlined output can be changed using  buttons.  □□□□□□□□□□ to  ■□□□□□□□□□	= Off ■ = On		L1	
OP Inv 1-10	To change the sense of the first 10 outputs.	= direct ■ = Inverted		L3	
Out Stat 31-40	Status of the second 10 digital outputs. Press  to select outputs in turn. The flashing underlined output can be changed using  buttons.  □□□□□□□□□□ to  ■□□□□□□□□□	= Off ■ = On		L1	
OP Inv 31-40	To change the sense of the second 10 outputs.	= direct ■ = Inverted		L3	

23.	CHAPTER 23 DIAGNOSTICS	2
23.1.	WHAT IS DIAGNOSTICS?	2
23.1.1.	Diagnostics parameters	2

23. Chapter 23 Diagnostics

23.1. WHAT IS DIAGNOSTICS?

Diagnostics are displayed in Access Level 3 and Configuration level, and provide information on the internal state of the controller. The parameters are intended for use in advanced fault finding situations. Up to eight error messages can be listed and each error message displays a message showing the state of the controller. The error messages are shown in Note 1.

The diagnostic parameters are listed below:-

23.1.1. Diagnostics parameters

Table Number: 23.1.1		This page allows you to inspect diagnostic information		DIAGNOSTICS	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Error Count	Number of errors recorded			R/O	
Error 1	Historical errors where 1 is the most recent	See Note 1		R/O	
Error 2				R/O	
Error 3				R/O	
Error 4				R/O	
Error 5				R/O	
Error 6				R/O	
Error 7				R/O	
Error 8				R/O	
Clear Err Log?	Error log reset	No Yes	No	Conf	
CPU % Free	A measure of the loading on the CPU			R/O	
Con Task Ticks	A measure of the activity of the algorithm			R/O	
UI Task 1 Ticks				R/O	
UI Task 2 Ticks				R/O	
Power FF	Power feedback. Measures the supply voltage to the controller			R/O	
Power Failures	A count of the number of power failures			R/O	

Note 1.

Possible error messages:-

OK	SPI Locked
Bad Ident	SPI Queue Full
Bad Fact Cal	HighP Lockout
Module Changed	Pro Mem Full
DFC1 Error, DFC2 Error, DFC3 Error	Invalid Seg
Module N/A	Program Full
CBC Comms Error	Invalid Prog
Cal Store Error	Bad Logic 1 to Bad Logic 7
CBC Cal Error	CPU Add Err
Bad PV Input	Calc CRC Err
Bad Mod3 Input, Bad Mod4 Input, Bad Mod6 Input,	Bad Cal Restore
Bad An Input	Bad Cust Lin
Bad NVOL Check	Bad Instruct
Bad X Board	Bad Slot Instr
Bad Res Ident	DMA Addr Err
Bad SPI SemRel	Reserved Int
Bad CW EETrans	Undefined Int
Bad Prog Data	SPC Init Err
Bad Prog Csum	H Rx Timeout
SegPool Over	J Rx Timeout

24.	CHAPTER 24 CALIBRATION.....	2
24.1.	USER CALIBRATION.....	2
24.2.	PRECAUTIONS.....	3
24.3.	PV INPUT.....	4
24.3.1.	To Calibrate mV Range.....	4
24.3.2.	Thermocouple Calibration.....	6
24.3.3.	Voltage Calibration.....	7
24.3.4.	High Z Voltage Calibration.....	7
24.3.5.	RTD Calibration.....	8
24.4.	ANALOGUE INPUT.....	10
24.5.	TO RESTORE FACTORY CALIBRATION VALUES.....	11
24.6.	MODULE I/O.....	12
24.6.1.	DC Output Module.....	12
24.6.2.	PV Input Module.....	14
24.6.3.	Dual PV Input Module.....	14
24.6.4.	DC Input Module.....	14

24. Chapter 24 Calibration

The 2604 controller is calibrated in three ways. These are:-

1. **Factory Calibration.** The controller is calibrated to very high accuracy during manufacture and the calibration values are permanently stored within the controller. Factory calibration is not available to the user, but it is always possible to revert to the factory values if required.
2. **Transducer Scaling.** This is described in Chapter 21. Transducer scaling allows offsets to be entered to compensate for errors or differences in the process measurement system.
3. **User Calibration.** This allows the instrument to be calibrated against a certified field calibration source. This chapter describes User Calibration.

24.1. USER CALIBRATION

The following inputs can be calibrated:

1. **PV Input.** This is the fixed PV input on terminals VH, V1, V+, V-. The PV Input can be configured for Thermocouple, Platinum Resistance Thermometer (RTD), Pyrometer, mV, Volt, High Impedance Input Volts or mA inputs. Pyrometer and mA ranges are included in the mV range. Thermocouple calibration involves calibrating the temperature offset of the CJC sensor only. Other aspects of thermocouple calibration are also included in mV calibration.
2. **Analogue Input.** This is the fixed input on terminals BA, BB, BC, and is intended for volt or current sources.
3. **Analogue I/O Modules.** These are inputs which can be connected to terminals A, B, C, D of the module I/O. Any input type listed above can be connected to these modules.

See also the 'Installation' chapter in the User Guide for details on terminal connections.

24.2. PRECAUTIONS

Before starting any calibration procedure the following precautions should be taken:-

1. When calibrating mV inputs make sure that the calibrating source outputs less than 250mV before connecting it to the mV terminals. If accidentally a large potential is applied (even for less than 1 second), then at least one hour should elapse before commencing the calibration.
2. RTD calibration is incomplete without mV calibration. A strict procedure, presented in section 24.3.5. must be followed to avoid calibration errors being up to an order of magnitude greater than that specified for this input. This particularly concerns the linearity specification.

A pre-wired jig built using a spare instrument sleeve may help to speed up the calibration procedure especially if a number of instruments are to be calibrated. This can be built using a spare instrument sleeve available by quoting Part No. SUB26/SLE.

It is very important that power is turned on only after the controller has been inserted in the sleeve of the pre-wired circuit. Power should also be turned off before removing the controller from its sleeve.

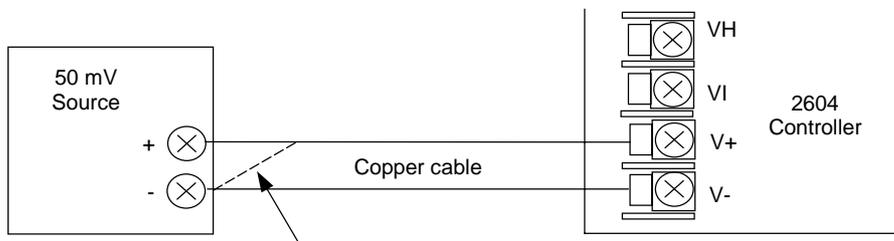
Allow at least 10 minutes for the controller to warm up after switch on.

Failure to observe these precautions will result in the controller not being calibrated to its full capability.

24.3. PV INPUT

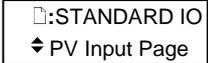
24.3.1. To Calibrate mV Range

Calibration of both 40 and 80 mV ranges for the PV Input is carried out using the same 50 milli-volt source. Pyrometer and mA calibration is included in this procedure. To calibrate thermocouples it is first necessary to calibrate the 40mV and 80mV ranges followed by CJC described in section 24.3.2.



For best results 0mV should be calibrated by disconnecting one of the copper wires from the mV source and short circuiting it to the other wire. This is particularly important to obtain best accuracy for RTD calibration

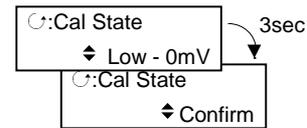
Figure 24-1: Connections for mV Range

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the ' STANDARD IO ' page header is displayed.		To choose PV Input
2. Press  or  if necessary to select ' PV Input Page '		
1. Press  to show the first parameter in the page – in this example ' Channel Type '		Alternatively the 80mV range may be chosen
3. Press  or  to choose ' 40mV '		
4. Press  until the parameter ' Cal State ' is displayed		

Calibrate at 0mV

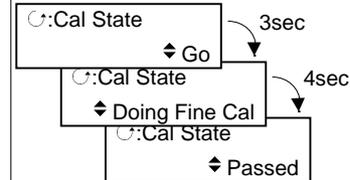
5. Set mV source to 0mV (or better by linking the two copper wires – Figure 24-1)

6. Press  to choose 'Low - 0mV'



Calibration commences 3 seconds after (Go) is selected and 4 seconds later progresses to 'Passed'.

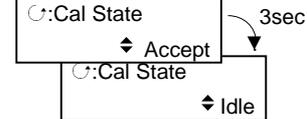
7. Press  to confirm. The display will change to 'Go'



If the message **Failed** appears this usually indicates that the input is not connected - press  to **Abort**

Abort can be selected any point in this process.

8. Press  to choose 'Accept'



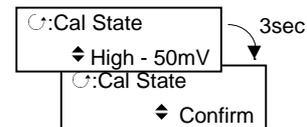
3 seconds after selecting 'Accept' the 0mV calibration becomes valid

Alternatively press  to 'Abort'

Calibrate at 50mV

9. Set mV source to 50mV

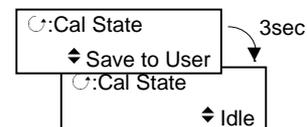
10. Press  to choose 'High - 50mV'



11. Repeat steps 7 & 8

At this point the new calibration values are used by the controller. They will, however, be lost when the power to the controller is turned off. Complete the following step to store the values to the User Calibration area.

12. Press  or  to choose 'Save to User'



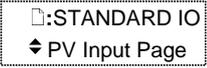
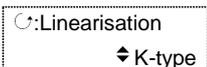
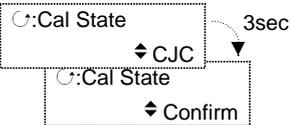
3 seconds after selecting 'Save to User' the 0mV and 50 mV calibration values are stored and used by the controller.

To return to factory calibration press  to 'Restore Factory', then choose 'Save to User'

24.3.2. Thermocouple Calibration

Thermocouples are calibrated, firstly, by following the previous procedure for the 40mV and 80mV ranges, (both ranges should be calibrated to cover all types of thermocouple) then calibrating CJC.

This can be carried out using an external CJC reference source such as an ice bath or using a thermocouple mV source. Replace the copper cable shown in Figure 24-1 with the appropriate thermocouple compensating cable. Set the mV source to internal compensation for the thermocouple in use and set the output for 0mV. Then:-

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Access the PV Input Page from STANDARD IO menu as described in the previous section		To choose PV Input
2. Press  to select ' Channel type ' 3. Press  or  to choose ' Thermocouple '		To configure the input for a thermocouple
4. Press  to select ' Linearisation ' 5. Press  or  to choose the linearisation curve for the thermocouple in use		To choose thermocouple linearisation curve Ensure that ' Rear Term Temp ' is set to ' Auto '. If not it will be necessary to accurately measure the temperature at the rear terminals and set this value accordingly
6. Press  until the parameter ' Cal State ' is displayed		
7. Press  or  to choose ' CJC ' Press  to 'Go'. 8. Then Accept and Save to User as described in Section 24.3.1. steps 8 and 12.		

24.3.3. Voltage Calibration

The procedure is identical to mV calibration with the exception that the low calibration point is 0V and the high point is 8V.

Note:- The voltage input terminals are VH and V- as detailed in the User Guide.

24.3.4. High Z Voltage Calibration

The procedure is identical to mV calibration with the exception that the low calibration point is 0V and the high point is 1V.

Note:- The voltage input terminals are VH and V- as detailed in the User Guide.

24.3.5. RTD Calibration

The two points at which RTD is calibrated are 150.00 Ω and 400.00 Ω .

Before starting RTD calibration:

- A decade box with total resistance lower than 1K must be connected in place of RTD as indicated on the connection diagram **before the instrument is powered up**. If at any instant the instrument was powered up without this connection then at least 1 hour must elapse from the time of restoring this connection before RTD calibration can take place.
- The instrument should be warmed up (powered up) for at least 10 minutes.

Before using or verifying RTD calibration:

- The above two points must be satisfied if the full accuracy is to be expected – see Note 2.
- The mV ranges must be calibrated – particularly the 0mV point. RTD calibration is incomplete without accurately calibrated mV ranges. Each instrument (or module) is calibrated to high standard in factory before shipment, therefore, the user does not need to perform mV calibration. If for any reasons this calibration was altered then ‘Restore Factory’ calibration and ‘Save’ facilities of mV ranges can be used. If on the other hand the RTD linearity is of a particular importance and the mV calibration was not checked/performed for several years than see Note 1.

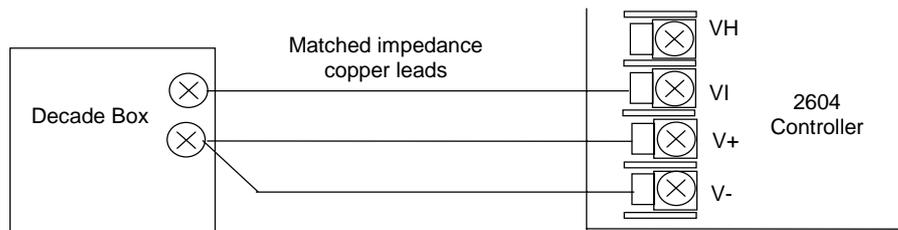
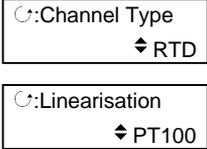
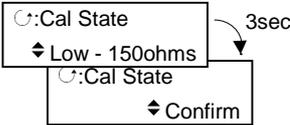
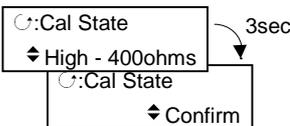


Figure 24-2: Connections for RTD

Note 1: - Proceed with mV calibration as described in section 24.3.1. making sure that 0mV is calibrated by short-circuiting the connecting copper wires and the same 50 mV source is used to calibrate high point on both 40 and 80 mV ranges. Also the calibration of both mV range should take place within short period of each other. As mV calibration requires disconnecting RTD or decade box it may be quicker to do RTD calibration first. However, do remember about 1-hour delay before being able to verify the calibration.

Note 2: - Typical extra errors to expect: ~0.5 °C within the first minute, ~0.2 °C within first 15 minutes, ~0.1 °C within first 1 hour.

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. For a controller calibrated for RTD type PT100, the views on the display should be as shown.		
2. Press  until the parameter 'Cal State' is displayed		
3. Set the decade box for 150.00Ω 4. Repeat procedure 24.3.1. steps 9 to 10	<p>Calibrate at 150 ohms.</p> 	'Doing Fine Cal' for RTD takes about 30 seconds. This is about seven times longer than when calibrating mV
5. Set the decade box for 400.00Ω 6. Repeat procedure 24.3.1. steps 11 to 14	<p>Calibrate at 400 ohms.</p> 	

24.4. ANALOGUE INPUT

Calibration of the Analogue input is carried out using an 8 volt ($\pm 2\text{mV}$) source. mA calibration is included in Volt calibration and assumes 100Ω burden resistor across terminals BA & BB.

There are three conditions to be calibrated - **Offset**, **Common Mode Rejection** and **Gain**.

The use of a pre-wired jig is recommended assuming that all three conditions are to be calibrated. The connections for this are shown in Figure 24-3.

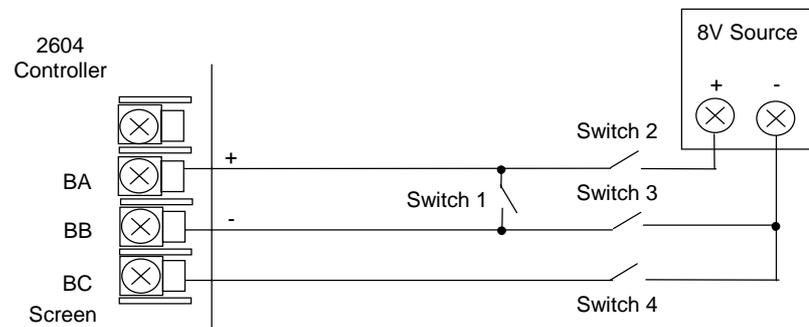


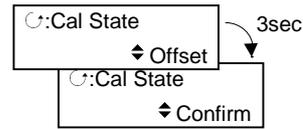
Figure 24-3: Analogue Input Calibration Connections

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the 'STANDARD IO' page header is displayed.	 :STANDARD IO ◆ An Input Page	
2. Press  or  if necessary to select 'An Input Page'		
3. Press  to show the first parameter in the page – in this example 'Channel Type'	 :Channel Type ◆ Volts	The Channel Type may be mA or Volts. The calibration procedure is the same.
4. Press  or  to choose 'mA' or 'Volts'		
5. Press  until the parameter 'Cal State' is displayed	 :Cal State ◆ Idle	

To calibrate Offset

Connect + and - terminals together by closing switch 1. Open switches 2, 3 and 4 to allow the short circuited inputs to float.

6. Press  or  to choose '**Offset**'

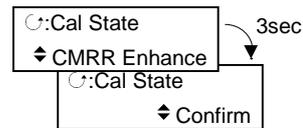


The procedure is now the same as paragraphs 7 to 12 for mV calibration.

To calibrate Common Mode Rejection Ratio

Close switches 2 and 4, while switch 1 remains closed and switch 3 remains open, so that 8V is applied to both + and - input terminals with respect to the Screen terminal.

7. Press  or  to choose '**CMRR Enhance**'

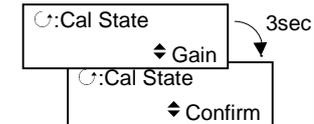


The procedure is now the same as paragraphs 7 to 12 for mV calibration.

To calibrate Gain

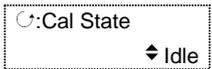
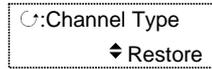
Open switches 1 and 4 and close switches 2 and 3 so that 8V is connected to both + and - input terminals while the screen is floating.

8. Press  or  to choose '**Gain**'



The procedure is now the same as paragraphs 7 to 12 for mV calibration.

24.5. TO RESTORE FACTORY CALIBRATION VALUES

Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. Press  until the parameter ' Cal State ' is displayed		
2. Press  or  to choose ' Restore Factory '		The factory calibration values are restored for the input selected, i.e. if the Analogue Input is selected the PV Input and Module input values are not affected.

24.6. MODULE I/O

24.6.1. DC Output Module

The DC output module is calibrated in the factory at 10% and 90% of output level.

This is 1 and 9V for 0 to 10Vdc output and 2mA and 18mA for a 0 to 20mA output.

The factory calibration can be modified by the user by adjusting the 'Cal Trim' parameter, i.e. Actual Output = Factory Cal (Low & High) Value + User Cal (Low & High) Trim Value.

The user trim value can be accepted and saved as for input calibration data.

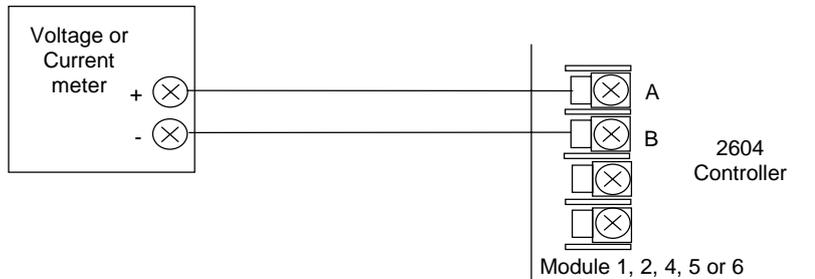
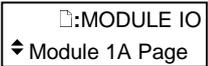
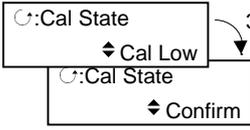
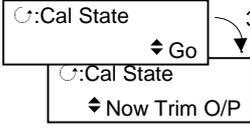
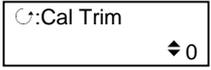
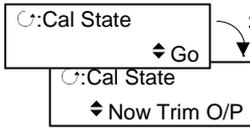
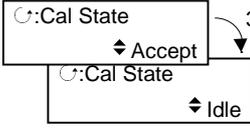
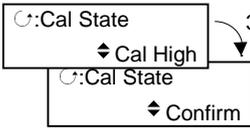
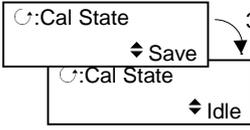


Figure 24-4: DC Module Connections Volts or Current Output

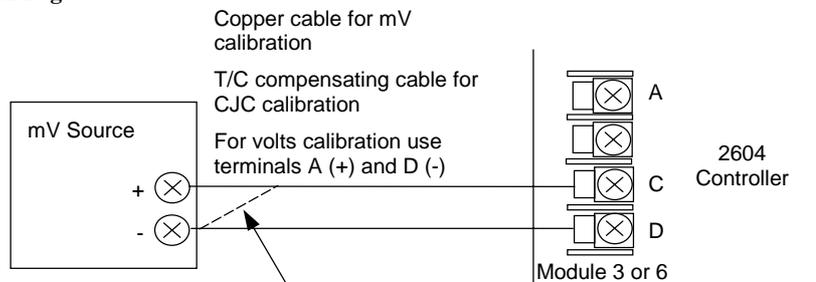
Do This	This Is The Display You Should See	Additional Notes
1. From any display press  as many times as necessary until the MODULE IO page header is displayed 2. Press  or  to choose the module in which the DC Output module is fitted		
3. Press  until the parameter ' Cal State ' is displayed		Choices are: Idle Cal Low Cal High Restore Factory Save (only appears after cal procedure complete).

Calibrate at 10% Output		
4. Press  to choose 'Cal Low'		3 seconds after selecting 'Cal Low' the confirm message will appear. The other choice is 'Abort'
5. Press  to choose 'Go'		
6. Press  to scroll to 'Cal Trim'		The adjustment is between -9999 and +9999. These numbers do not have units and are used for indication only.
7. Press  or  to achieve the required output value read by the multimeter. 1.00 Vdc or 2.00mA		
8. Press and hold  while pressing  twice to return to 'Cal State'		You can also scroll forward using the  button only. This, however, means that you will need to scroll through all parameters in the list.
9. Press  to choose 'Accept'		3 seconds later the calibration is accepted
Calibrate at 90% Output		
10. Press  to choose 'Cal High'		
11. Repeat steps 6 to 10 to calibrate at 90% output. 9.00Vdc or 18mA		
At this point the calibration values are used by the controller. They will, however, be lost when the power to the controller is turned off. From Cal State/Idle :		
12. Press  or  to choose Save		The 10% and 90% calibration values are stored and used by the controller. To return to factory calibration press  to 'Restore Factory'. When 'Idle' appears choose 'Save'

24.6.2. PV Input Module

PV Input modules can be fitted in positions 3 and 6. These modules can provide inputs for thermocouple, 3-wire RTD, mV, Volts or mA. The wiring connections for these inputs are shown below.

The calibration procedure is identical to that described in Section 24-3, but the **Cal State** parameter will be found under the page header **MODULE IO/Module 3 A Page** or **Module 6 A Page**.



For best results 0mV should be calibrated by disconnecting one of the copper wires from the mV source and short circuiting it to the other wire. This is particularly important to obtain best accuracy for RTD calibration

Figure 24-5: Volt, mV and Thermocouple Connections to Modules 3 & 6

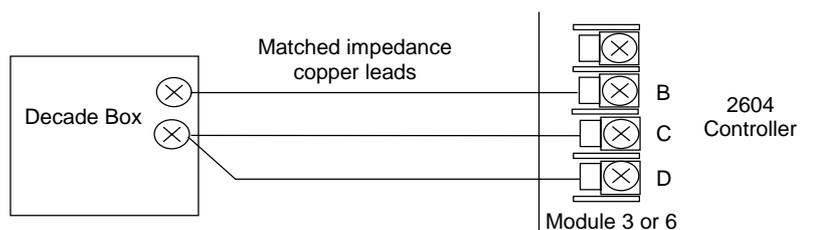


Figure 24-6: 3-Wire RTD Connections to Modules 3 & 6

24.6.3. Dual PV Input Module

The procedure is the same as the PV Input module above, but the parameter '**En Dual Mode**' in the Channel C parameter list must be set to '**No**'. '**Cal State**' is accessed from Channel A when enable dual mode is set to '**No**'.

24.6.4. DC Input Module

The procedure is the same as the PV Input module above except that only a single mV range is available.

A.	APPENDIX A ORDER CODE	2
A.1.	HARDWARE CODE	2
A.2.	CONFIGURATION CODING (OPTIONAL)	3
A.3.	QUICK START CODE EXAMPLE:.....	4

A. Appendix A Order Code

A.1. HARDWARE CODE

The 2604 has a modular hardware construction, which accepts up to six plug-in modules and two comms modules. Eight digital IO and a relay form part of the fixed hardware build.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
1 Controller Type		5 - 9 I/O Slots 1 3 4 5 6				10 Memory Module								
2604	Standard	XX	None Fitted	XX	Not Fitted	11 - Comms H								
2604f	Profibus	R4	Change Over Relay			XX	None Fitted							
2 Supply Voltage		RR	2 Pin Relay					A2	232 Modbus					
VH	85-264Vac	T2	Dual Relay					Y2	2 wire EIA-485					
VL	20-29Vac/dc	TT	Triac					F2	4 wire EIA-485					
3 Loops/Programs		D4	Dual Triac					AE	232 Bisynch					
First Digit		D6	DC Control					YE	2 Wire 485 Bisynch					
1__	One Loop	PV	DC Retransmission					FE	4 Wire 485 Bisynch					
2__	Two Loop		PV Input(slots 3 & 6 only)					PB	Profibus					
3__	Three Loop	TL	Triple Logic Input					DN	DeviceNet					
Second Digit		TK	Triple Contact Input					12 Comms J						
_XX	No Programs	TP	Triple Logic Output					XX	None Fitted					
2	20 Programs ⁽¹⁾	MS	24Vdc Transmitter PSU					A2	232 Modbus					
5	50 Programs	VU	Potentiometer Input					Y2	2 wire EIA-485					
Third Digit		G3	5Vdc transducer PSU					F2	4 wire EIA-485					
_XX	No Programs	G5	10Vdc transducer PSU					M1	232 Master					
_1	1 Profile	LO	Isolated single logic OP					M2	2-wire 485 Master					
_2	2 Profile	DO	Dual 4-20mA OP/24Vdc PSU (slots 1,4,5 only)					M3	4-wire 485 Master					
_3	3 Profile	HR	Hi resolution DC retrans & 24Vdc PSU (slots 1,4,5 only)					13 Manual						
4 Application						ENG				English				
XX	Standard					FRA				French				
ZC	Zirconia					GER				German				
V1	1 Gauge Vacuum					NED				Dutch				
V3	3 Gauge Vacuum					SPA				Spain				
						SWE				Sweden				
						ITA				Italian				
						14 Toolkit Blocks								
						XX				Standard				
						U1				16 An & 16 Dig				
						U2				24 An & 32 Dig				
						15 Config Tools								
						XX				None				
						IT				iTools				

Hardware notes:

- Basic controller includes 8 digital registers, 4 timers, 4 totalisers
- Toolkit 1 includes 16 analogue, 16 digital, pattern generator, pulse programmer & 4 user values
- Toolkit 2 includes Toolkit 1 plus extra 8 analogue, 16 digital operations and 8 user values
- Dual analogue input suitable for carbon probes.(inputs not isolated from each other)
- EI-Bisynch includes only a subset of parameters
- The HR module has one high resolution DC output and one 24Vdc power supply

Hardware Code Example

2604/VH/323/XX/RR/PV/D4/TP/PV/XX/A2/XX/ENG/U1/IT

Three loop controller with capability to store 20 three profile programs. Supply voltage 85 - 264 Vac.

Modules: 2 x PV input, 1 x Dual relay, 1 x DC control, 1 x Triple logic output, EIA-232 Comms.

16 analogue and 32 digital operations and iTools supplied with controller.

A.2. CONFIGURATION CODING (OPTIONAL)

The controller supplied in accordance with the hardware code on the previous page requires to be configured. Configuration is carried out using iTools. Alternatively, for simple applications the controller may be supplied pre-configured using the following code:-

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12												
1 - 3 Loop function First Digit XXXX None S___ Standard PID C___ Cascade R___ Ratio O___ Override ⁽⁷⁾ Other Digits _PID PID control _ONF On/Off control _PIF PID/OnOff control _VP1 VP w/o feedback _VP2 VP with feedback _VP3 Dual VP w/o feedback _VP4 Dual VP w/ithfeedback			4 - 6 PV Inputs X None J J Thermocouple K K Thermocouple T T Thermocouple L L Thermocouple N N Thermocouple R R Thermocouple S S Thermocouple B B Thermocouple P P Thermocouple C C Thermocouple Z RTD/PT100 A 4-20mA linear Y 0-20mA linear V 0-10Vdc linear W 0-5Vdc linear G 1-5Vdc linear Custom (Replace C) Q Custom curve D D Thermocouple E E Thermocouple 1 Ni/Ni18%Mo 2 Pt20%Rh/Pt40%Rh 3 W/W26%Re(Eng) 4 W/W26%Re(Hos) 5 W5%Re/W26%Re(Eng) 6 W5%Re/W26%Re(Hos) 7 Pt10%Rh/Pt40%Rh 8 Exergen K80 IR Pyro			7 Analogue Input XXX None P2_ PV Loop 2 P3_ PV Loop 3 S1_ SP Loop 1 S2_ SP Loop 2 S3_ SP Loop 3 A1_ Aux PV Loop 1 A2_ Aux PV Loop 2 A3_ Aux PV Loop 3 L1_ Ratio lead PV Loop 1 L2_ Ratio lead PV Loop 2 L3_ Ratio lead PV Loop 3 Input range Select third digit from table 1 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Table 1</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>4-20mA linear</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Y</td> <td>0-20mA linear</td> </tr> <tr> <td>V</td> <td>0-10Vdc linear</td> </tr> <tr> <td>W</td> <td>0-5Vdc linear</td> </tr> <tr> <td>G</td> <td>1-5Vdc linear</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Table 1		A	4-20mA linear	Y	0-20mA linear	V	0-10Vdc linear	W	0-5Vdc linear	G	1-5Vdc linear	8 - 12 Slot function Loop number XXX Unconfigured 1_ Loop No 1 2_ Loop No 2 3_ Loop No 3 Single relay or triac _HX Heat _CX Cool Dual relay or triac _HC PID Heat & Cool _VH VP Heat _VC VP Cool _AA FSH & FSH _AB FSH & FSL _AC DH & DL _AD FSH & DH _AE FSL & DL _AF FSH & FSL _AG FSH & DB _AH FSL & DB _AJ DB & DB HHX Heat O/P Ips 1 & 2 CCX Cool O/P Ips 1 & 2 P12 Prog events 1 & 2 P34 Prog events 3 & 4 P56 Prog events 5 & 6 P78 Prog events 7 & 8 Triple logic output _HX Ch1 Heat _CX Ch1 Cool _HC Ch1 Heat, Ch2 Cool HHX Heat O/P Ips 1 & 2 HHH Heat O/P Ips 1,2 & 3 Single DC outputs _H PID Heat _C PID Cool _T PV Retransmission _S SP Retransmission For output range select third digit from table 1 Precision PV input _PV PV input Module _PA Aux PV Input ⁽⁸⁾ _PL Ratio lead input		
Table 1																							
A	4-20mA linear																						
Y	0-20mA linear																						
V	0-10Vdc linear																						
W	0-5Vdc linear																						
G	1-5Vdc linear																						
			Dual 4-20mA/24Vdc Tx OP HHX Heat OP Lps 1 & 2 _HC Heat Cool _HT Ch 1 Heat, Ch 2 Tx TTX Both chs Txmtr Changeover Relay _HX Heat _CX Cool Potentiometer input _VF VP Heat Feedback _VZ VP Cool Feedback _RS Remote SP Analogue Input * _R_ Setpoint Aux & lead PV inputs * _L_ Ratio lead input _B_ Aux PV input * For input range select third digit from table 1 High Res DC Output -TA 4-20mA PV retran -TV 0-10V PV retran -SA 4-20mA SP retran -SV 0-10V SP retran																				

General Notes

1. Loop 1 PV defaults to main input on microboard. Loop 2 and 3 PV inputs must be fitted in I/O slots 3 or 6 or be assigned to the analogue input.
2. This alarm configuration refers to loop alarms only. One selection per loop is allowed. Additional alarms are available for the user to configure.
3. Thermocouple and RTD inputs assume sensor min and max values with no decimal point.
4. Linear inputs are ranged 0-100%, no decimal point.
5. Temperature inputs will be C unless ordered by USA where F will be supplied.
6. Remote setpoints assume loop min & max ranges.
7. VP1 or VP2 not available with override function.
8. For cascade and override inputs only.
9. HR module should be used in feedback mode.

A.3. QUICK START CODE EXAMPLE:

SVP1/SPID/SPID/K/Z/A/S1A/1VH/2PV/2HV/3HC/3PV

This code configures the hardware specified on page A2 to be:

Loop1: Valve position control, Type K input, Ch1 VP output in slot 1, 4-20mA remote setpoint input.

Loop 2: PID control, RTD input in slot 3, 0-10Vdc Ch1 output in slot 4.

Loop 3: PID control, 4-20mA input in slot 6, Logic Ch1/Ch2 output in slot 5.

B. APPENDIX B SAFETY AND EMC INFORMATION	2
B.1. SAFETY	2
B.1.1. Electromagnetic compatibility	2
B.2. SERVICE AND REPAIR.....	2
B.2.1. Electrostatic discharge precautions.....	2
B.2.2. Cleaning.....	2
B.3. INSTALLATION SAFETY REQUIREMENTS.....	3
B.3.1. Safety Symbols	3
B.3.2. Personnel	3
B.3.3. Enclosure of live parts	3
B.3.4. Isolation.....	3
B.3.5. Wiring.....	4
B.3.6. Power Isolation.....	4
B.3.7. Earth leakage current	4
B.3.8. Overcurrent protection.....	5
B.3.9. Voltage rating	5
B.3.10. Conductive pollution	5
B.3.11. Over-temperature protection.....	6
B.3.12. Grounding of the temperature sensor shield	6
B.4. INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EMC	6
B.4.1. Routing of wires	6

B. Appendix B Safety and EMC Information

This controller is manufactured in the UK by Eurotherm Controls Ltd.

Please read this section carefully before installing the controller

This controller is intended for industrial temperature and process control applications when it will meet the requirements of the European Directives on Safety and EMC. Use in other applications, or failure to observe the installation instructions of this handbook may impair the safety or EMC protection provided by the controller. It is the responsibility of the installer to ensure the safety and EMC of any particular installation.

B.1. SAFETY

This controller complies with the European Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, amended by 93/68/EEC, by the application of the safety standard EN 61010.

B.1.1. Electromagnetic compatibility

This controller conforms with the essential protection requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC, amended by 93/68/EEC, by the application of a Technical Construction File. This instrument satisfies the general requirements for heavy/light industrial and residential/commercial environments as described by EN 50081-1 and EN 50082-1. For more information on product compliance refer to the Technical Construction File.

B.2. SERVICE AND REPAIR

This controller has no user serviceable parts. Contact your supplier for repair.

Caution: Charged capacitors

Before removing an instrument from its sleeve, disconnect the supply and wait at least two minutes to allow capacitors to discharge. Failure to observe this precaution will expose capacitors that may be charged with hazardous voltages. In any case, avoid touching the exposed electronics of an instrument when withdrawing it from the sleeve.

B.2.1. Electrostatic discharge precautions

When the controller is removed from its sleeve, some of the exposed electronic components are vulnerable to damage by electrostatic discharge from someone handling the controller. To avoid this, before handling the unplugged controller discharge yourself to ground.

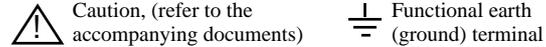
B.2.2. Cleaning

Do not use water or water based products to clean labels or they will become illegible. Isopropyl alcohol may be used to clean labels. A mild soap solution may be used to clean other exterior surfaces of the product.

B.3. INSTALLATION SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

B.3.1. Safety Symbols

Various symbols are used on the instrument, they have the following meaning:



Caution, (refer to the accompanying documents)

Functional earth (ground) terminal

The functional earth connection is not required for safety purposes but to ground RFI filters.

B.3.2. Personnel

Installation must only be carried out by qualified personnel.

B.3.3. Enclosure of live parts

To prevent hands or metal tools touching parts that may be electrically live, the controller must be installed in an enclosure.

B.3.4. Isolation

The fixed digital I/O and analogue input are not isolated. The PV Input and all plug in modules are fully isolated. This is shown in Figure B-1.

The Analogue Input is a self biased differential input suitable for either grounded or floating transducers of low output impedance generating signal in the range of $\pm 10V$ or $\pm 20mA$ (with a burden resistor of 100 Ohms across + and - terminals).

This input is neither isolated from the instrument ground (which can be earthed via fixed I/O ports) nor isolated from the instrument earth terminal, therefore, under no circumstances should mains potentials be applied to any of its inputs.

In order for the Input to operate safely the common voltage at the inputs measured with respect to instrument ground should not exceed $\pm 120V_{dc}$ or ac_{rms} . For actively enhanced common mode rejection (i.e. operation within the spec.) this voltage should be limited to $\pm 40V_{dc}$.

Floating transducers will automatically be biased to $+2.5V$ with respect to instrument ground upon connection.

Note: All the other I/Os are fully isolated from the instrument ground and each other.

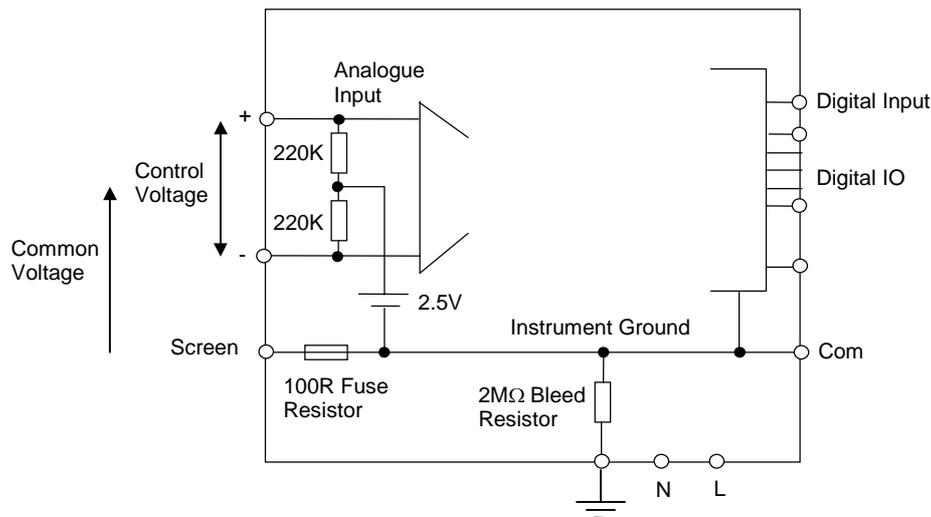


Figure B-1: Analogue Input and Fixed Digital I/O Equivalent Circuit

B.3.5. Wiring

It is important to connect the controller in accordance with the wiring data given in this handbook. Take particular care not to connect AC supplies to the low voltage sensor input or other low level inputs and outputs. Only use copper conductors for connections (except thermocouple inputs) and ensure that the wiring of installations comply with all local wiring regulations. For example in the in the UK use the latest version of the IEE wiring regulations, (BS7671). In the USA use NEC Class 1 wiring methods.

B.3.6. Power Isolation

The installation must include a power isolating switch or circuit breaker. This device should be in close proximity to the controller, within easy reach of the operator and marked as the disconnecting device for the instrument.

B.3.7. Earth leakage current

Due to RFI Filtering there is an earth leakage current of less than 0.5mA. This may affect the design of an installation of multiple controllers protected by Residual Current Device, (RCD) or Ground Fault Detector, (GFD) type circuit breakers.

B.3.8. Overcurrent protection

To protect the internal PCB tracking within the controller against excess currents, the AC power supply to the controller and power outputs must be wired through the fuse or circuit breaker specified in the technical specification.

B.3.9. Voltage rating

The maximum continuous voltage applied between any of the following terminals must not exceed 264Vac:

- line or neutral to any other connection;
- relay or triac output to logic, dc or sensor connections;
- any connection to ground.

The controller should not be wired to a three phase supply with an unearthed star connection. Under fault conditions such a supply could rise above 264Vac with respect to ground and the product would not be safe.

Voltage transients across the power supply connections, and between the power supply and ground, must not exceed 2.5kV. Where occasional voltage transients over 2.5kV are expected or measured, the power installation to both the instrument supply and load circuits should include a transient limiting device.

These units will typically include gas discharge tubes and metal oxide varistors that limit and control voltage transients on the supply line due to lightning strikes or inductive load switching. Devices are available in a range of energy ratings and should be selected to suit conditions at the installation.

B.3.10. Conductive pollution

Electrically conductive pollution must be excluded from the cabinet in which the controller is mounted. For example, carbon dust is a form of electrically conductive pollution. To secure a suitable atmosphere in conditions of conductive pollution, fit an air filter to the air intake of the cabinet. Where condensation is likely, for example at low temperatures, include a thermostatically controlled heater in the cabinet.

B.3.11. Over-temperature protection

When designing any control system it is essential to consider what will happen if any part of the system should fail. In temperature control applications the primary danger is that the heating will remain constantly on. Apart from spoiling the product, this could damage any process machinery being controlled, or even cause a fire.

Reasons why the heating might remain constantly on include:

- the temperature sensor becoming detached from the process;
- thermocouple wiring becoming short circuit;
- the controller failing with its heating output constantly on;
- an external valve or contactor sticking in the heating condition;
- the controller setpoint set too high.

Where damage or injury is possible, we recommend fitting a separate over-temperature protection unit, with an independent temperature sensor, which will isolate the heating circuit.

Please note that the alarm relays within the controller will not give protection under all failure conditions.

B.3.12. Grounding of the temperature sensor shield

In some installations it is common practice to replace the temperature sensor while the controller is still powered up. Under these conditions, as additional protection against electric shock, we recommend that the shield of the temperature sensor is grounded. Do not rely on grounding through the framework of the machine.

B.4. INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR EMC

To ensure compliance with the European EMC directive certain installation precautions are necessary as follows:

- For general guidance refer to EMC Installation Guide, HA025464.
- When using relay or triac outputs it may be necessary to fit a filter suitable for suppressing the emissions. The filter requirements will depend on the type of load. For typical applications we recommend Schaffner FN321 or FN612.
- If the unit is used in a portable enclosure which is plugged into a standard power socket, then it is likely that compliance to the commercial and light industrial emissions standard is required. In this case to meet the conducted emissions requirement, a suitable mains filter should be installed. We recommend Schaffner types FN321 and FN612.

B.4.1. Routing of wires

To minimise the pick-up of electrical noise, the wiring for low voltage dc and particularly the sensor input should be routed away from high-current power cables. Where it is impractical to do this, use shielded cables with the shield grounded at both ends.

C.	APPENDIX C TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION	2
C.1.	ALL ANALOGUE, DUAL AND PV INPUTS	2
C.2.	PRECISION PV INPUT / MODULE	3
C.3.	DUAL (PROBE) INPUT MODULE	3
C.4.	ANALOGUE INPUT.....	4
C.5.	ANALOGUE INPUT MODULE.....	4
C.6.	STANDARD DIGITAL I/O.....	5
C.7.	DIGITAL INPUT MODULES	5
C.8.	DIGITAL OUTPUT MODULES	5
C.9.	ANALOGUE OUTPUT MODULES	5
C.10.	TRANSMITTER PSU.....	5
C.11.	TRANSDUCER PSU.....	6
C.12.	DUAL DC OUTPUT	6
C.13.	HIGH RESOLUTION DC OUTPUT	6
C.14.	POTENTIOMETER INPUT	6
C.15.	DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS.....	6
C.16.	ALARMS.....	6
C.17.	USER MESSAGES.....	7
C.18.	CONTROL FUNCTIONS	7
C.19.	SETPOINT PROGRAMMER.....	7
C.20.	ADVANCED FUNCTIONS.....	7
C.21.	GENERAL SPECIFICATION.....	8
C.22.	GRAPHICAL REPRESENTATION OF ERRORS.....	9
C.22.1.	mV Input.....	9
C.22.2.	Mid range high impedance Input	10
C.22.3.	High Level Input.....	11
C.22.4.	RTD (Pt-100) Input type.....	12
C.22.5.	Thermocouple Input type.....	14

C. Appendix C Technical Specification

All figures quoted at 0 to 50°C unless otherwise stated.

C.1. ALL ANALOGUE, DUAL AND PV INPUTS

Sample rate	9Hz (110msec.)
Input filtering	OFF to 999.9 seconds of filter time constant (f.t.c.). Default setting is 0.4 seconds unless stated otherwise
User calibration	Both the user calibration and a transducer scaling can be applied.
Sensor break	a.c. sensor break on each input (i.e. fast responding and no dc errors with high impedance sources).
Thermocouple types	Most linearisations including K,J,T,R,B,S,N,L,PII,C,D,E with linearisation error $< \pm 0.2^{\circ}\text{C}$
General	Resolution (noise free) is quoted as a typical figure with f.t.c. set to the default value = 0.4 second. Resolution generally improves by a factor of two with every quadrupling of f.t.c. Calibration is quoted as offset error + percentage error of absolute reading at ambient temperature of 25°C Drift is quoted as extra offset and absolute reading errors per degree of ambient change from 25°C.

C.2. PRECISION PV INPUT / MODULE

Allocation (isolated)	One standard and up to two additional PV input modules can be fitted in I/O slots 3 and 6
mV input	Two ranges: $\pm 40\text{mV}$ & $\pm 80\text{mV}$, used for thermocouple, linear mV source or 0 - 20mA with 2.49Ω Calibration: $\pm(1.5\mu\text{V} + 0.05\%$ of reading), Resolution: $0.5\mu\text{V}$ for 40mV range & $1\mu\text{V}$ for 80mV range Drift: $<\pm(0.05\mu\text{V} + 0.003\%$ of absolute reading) per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Input impedance: $>100\text{M}\Omega$, Leakage: $< 1\text{nA}$
0 - 2V input	-1.4V to +2V, used for zirconia Calibration: $\pm(0.5\text{mV} + 0.05\%$ of reading) Resolution: $60\mu\text{V}$ Drift: $<\pm(0.05\text{mV} + 0.003\%$ of reading) per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Input impedance: $>100\text{M}\Omega$, Leakage: $< 1\text{nA}$
0 - 10V input	-3V to +10V, used for voltage input Calibration: $\pm(0.5\text{mV} + 0.1\%$ of reading) Resolution: $180\mu\text{V}$ Drift: $<\pm(0.1\text{mV} + 0.01\%$ of reading) per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Input impedance: $0.66\text{M}\Omega$
Pt100 input	0 to 400ohms (-200°C to $+850^{\circ}\text{C}$), 3 matched wires - up to 22Ω in each lead without errors. Calibration: $\pm(0.1^{\circ}\text{C} + 0.04\%$ of reading in $^{\circ}\text{C}$) Resolution: 0.02°C Drift: $<\pm(0.006^{\circ}\text{C} + 0.002\%$ of absolute reading in $^{\circ}\text{C}$) per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Bulb current: 0.2mA .
Thermocouple	Internal compensation: CJC rejection ratio $>40:1$ typical. CJ Temperature calibration error at 25°C : $<\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ 0°C , 45°C and 50°C external compensation available.
Zirconia probes	Most probes supported. Continuous monitoring of probe impedance (100Ω to $100\text{K}\Omega$)

C.3. DUAL (PROBE) INPUT MODULE

General	The same specification as for the Precision PV Input module applies with the exception of the following: Module offers two sensor/transmitter inputs, which share the same negative input terminal. One low level (mV, 0-20mA, thermocouple, Pt100) and one high level (0-2Vdc, 0-10Vdc) can be connected
Isolation	The two inputs are isolated from the rest of the instrument but not from each other
Sample rate (each input)	4.5Hz (220msec)
Input filtering	Default setting is 0.8 seconds

C.4. ANALOGUE INPUT

No of inputs	One fixed (Not isolated) Can be used with either floating or ground referenced transducers of low impedance.
Input range	-10V to +10V linear or 0 -20 mA with burden resistor of 100 Ω . Calibration: $\pm(1.5\text{mV} + 0.1\%$ of reading) Resolution: 0.9mV Drift: $< \pm(0.1\text{mV} + 0.006\%$ of reading) per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Input Impedance: 0.46M Ω (floating input), 0.23M Ω (ground referenced input)
Isolation	Not isolated from standard digital I/O . Differential type input with common mode range of $\pm 42\text{Vdc}$ (the average voltage of the two inputs with respect to 'Screen' or 'Common' terminals should be within $\pm 42\text{Vdc}$. CMRR : $>110\text{dB}$ at 50/60Hz, $>80\text{dB}$ at DC
Functions	Process variable, remote setpoint, power limit, feedforward, etc.

C.5. ANALOGUE INPUT MODULE

Allocation mV input	Up to 4 analogue input modules can be fitted in I/O slots 1,3,4 & 6 100mV range - used for thermocouple, linear mV source, or 0-20mA with 2.49 Ω external burden resistor. Calibration: $\pm 10\mu\text{V} + 0.2\%$ of reading Resolution: 6 μV Drift: $< \pm 0.2\mu\text{V} + 0.004\%$ of reading per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Input impedance: $>10\text{M}\Omega$, Leakage: $<10\text{nA}$
0 - 2Vdc input	-0.2V to +2.0V range - used for zirconia. Calibration: $\pm 2\text{mV} + 0.2\%$ of reading Resolution: 30 μV Drift: $< \pm 0.1\text{mV} + 0.004\%$ of reading per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Input impedance: $>10\text{M}\Omega$, Leakage: $<20\text{nA}$
0 - 10Vdc input	-3V to +10.0V range - used for voltage input. Calibration: $\pm 2\text{mV} + 0.2\%$ of reading Resolution: 200 μV Drift: $< \pm 0.1\text{mV} + 0.02\%$ of reading per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Input impedance: $>69\text{K}\Omega$
Pt100 input	0 to 400ohms (-200 $^{\circ}\text{C}$ to +850 $^{\circ}\text{C}$), 3 matched wires - up to 22 Ω in each lead without errors. Calibration: $\pm(0.4^{\circ}\text{C} + 0.15\%$ of reading in $^{\circ}\text{C}$) Resolution: 0.08 $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Drift: $< \pm(0.015^{\circ}\text{C} + 0.005\%$ of reading in $^{\circ}\text{C}$) per $^{\circ}\text{C}$ Bulb current: 0.3mA.
Thermocouple	Internal compensation: CJC rejection ratio $>25:1$ typical. CJ Temperature calibration error at 25 $^{\circ}\text{C}$: $< \pm 2^{\circ}\text{C}$ 0 $^{\circ}\text{C}$, 45 $^{\circ}\text{C}$ and 50 $^{\circ}\text{C}$ external compensation available.

C.6. STANDARD DIGITAL I/O

Allocation not isolated	1 digital input standard and 7 I/O which can be configured as inputs or outputs plus 1 changeover relay
Digital inputs	Voltage level : input active < 2Vdc, inactive >4Vdc Contact closure : input active <100ohms, inactive >28kohms
Digital outputs	Open collector, 24Vdc at 40mA drive capability, requires external supply
Changeover relay	Contact rating 2A at 264Vac resistive
Functions	Refer to Chapter 17
Operations	1,000,000 operations with addition of external snubber

C.7. DIGITAL INPUT MODULES

Module type	Triple contact input, Triple logic input
Allocation	Can be fitted into slots 1, 3, 4, 5 or 6
Contact closure	Active <100ohms, inactive >28kohms
Logic inputs	Current sinking : active 10.8Vdc to 30Vdc at 2.5mA inactive -3 to 5Vdc at <-0.4mA
Functions	Refer to Chapter 18

C.8. DIGITAL OUTPUT MODULES

Module types	Single relay, dual relay, single triac, dual triac, triple logic module (isolated)
Allocation	Can be fitted into slot 1, 3, 4, 5 or 6 (max. 3 triac modules per instrument)
Relay rating	2A, 264Vac resistive
Logic drive	12Vdc at 9mA
Triac rating	0.75A, 264Vac resistive
Functions	Refer to Chapter 18

C.9. ANALOGUE OUTPUT MODULES

Module types	1 channel DC control, 1 channel DC retransmission (5 max.)
Allocation (isolated)	Can be fitted into slot 1, 3, 4, 5 or 6
Range	0-20mA, 0-10Vdc
Resolution	1 part in 10,000 (2,000-noise free) 0.5% accurate for retransmission 1 part in 10,000 2.5% accurate for control
Functions	Refer to Chapter 18

C.10. TRANSMITTER PSU

Allocation	Can be fitted into slots 1, 3, 4, 5 or 6 (isolated)
Transmitter	24Vdc at 20mA

C.11. TRANSDUCER PSU

Bridge voltage	Software selectable 5 or 10Vdc
Bridge resistance	300 Ω to 15K Ω
Internal shunt resistor	30.1K Ω at 0.25%, used for calibration of 350 Ω bridge

C.12. DUAL DC OUTPUT

Current Output	4-20mA, 20V output span
Accuracy	1%, 11 bit noise free resolution
Speed	50ms response
Transmitter/logic PSU	20V min at full 22mA current load. 30V max at open circuit short circuit protected at 22-24mA

C.13. HIGH RESOLUTION DC OUTPUT

Current Output	4-20mA, 20V output span
Accuracy	1%, 15 bit noise free resolution
Speed	40ms response
Transmitter/logic PSU	20V min at full 22mA current load. 30V max at open circuit short circuit protected at 21-28mA

C.14. POTENTIOMETER INPUT

Potentiometer resistance	330 Ω to 15K Ω , excitation of 0.5 volts
--------------------------	--

C.15. DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS

Allocation	2 modules fitted in slots H & J (isolated)
Modbus	RS232, 2 wire or 4 wire RS485, max baud 19.2KB in H module & 9.6KB in J module
Profibus-DP	High speed, RS485, 1.5Mbaud

C.16. ALARMS

No of Alarms	Input alarms (2), loop alarms (2) User alarms (8)
Alarm types	Full scale, deviation, rate of change, sensor break plus application specific
Modes	Latching or non-latching, blocking, time delay
Parameters	Refer to Chapter 8

C.17. USER MESSAGES

No of messages	Maximum 50, triggered by operator or alarm or used for custom parameter names
Format	Up to 16 characters

C.18. CONTROL FUNCTIONS

No of loops	One, two or three
Modes	On/off, PID, motorised valve with or without feedback
Options	Cascade, ratio, override or feed forward
Cooling algorithms	Linear, water, oil or fan
PID sets	3 per loop (Cascade loop includes master and slave parameters)
Manual mode	Bumpless transfer or forced manual output, manual tracking available
Setpoint rate limit	Display units per second, minute or hour

C.19. SETPOINT PROGRAMMER

No of programs	A maximum of 50 programs assignable over 500 segments for a time to target programmer and 400 segments for a ramp rate programmer. A program can consist of up to 3 variables. Programs can be given user defined 16 character names
Event outputs	Up to 16, can be assigned individually to segments or called as part of an event group

C.20. ADVANCED FUNCTIONS

Application blocks	32 digital operations 24 Analogue calculations
Timers	4, On Pulse, Off delay, one shot and min-On
Totalisers	4, trigger level & reset input
Real time clock	Day of week and time
Pattern generators	16 x 16, 2 off

C.21. GENERAL SPECIFICATION

Display range	5 digits including up to 3 decimal places
Supply	85-264Vac, 20Watts (max)
Operating ambient	0 - 50°C and 5 to 95% RH non condensing
Storage temp	-10 to +70°C
Panel sealing	IP54
Dimensions	96H x 96W x 150D (mm)
EMC standards	EN50081-1 & EN50082-2 generic standards - suitable for domestic, commercial and light industrial as well as heavy industrial environments
Safety standards	Meets EN61010 installation category II, pollution degree 2
Atmospheres	Not suitable for use above 2000m or in explosive or corrosive atmospheres
Inrush Current	High Voltage controller – 30A duration 100•s Low Voltage controller – 15A duration 100•s

C.22. GRAPHICAL REPRESENTATION OF ERRORS

This section shows graphically the effects of adding all contributions of different errors for each input type and range. The errors are a combination of:

Calibration accuracy, Drift with ambient temperature, Linearity error, Leakage

C.22.1. mV Input

Two ranges:

working range	$\pm 40\text{mV}$		
full linear range	$\pm 60\text{mV}$		
noise (resolution)	1 μV - OFF,	0.5 μV - 0.4sec,	0.25 μV - 1.6sec

working range	$\pm 80\text{mV}$		
full linear range	$\pm 105\text{mV}$		
noise (resolution)	2 μV - OFF,	1 μV - 0.4sec,	0.5 μV - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy @ 25°C

$$< \pm (1.5\mu\text{V} + 0.05\% \text{ of } |\text{reading}|)$$

Drift with ambient temperature

$$< \pm (0.05\mu\text{V} + 0.003\% \text{ of } |\text{reading}|) \text{ per } ^\circ\text{C}$$

Linearity error

$$< \pm 0.002\% \text{ of span (i.e. } < 1\mu\text{V, } < 2\mu\text{V)}$$

Leakage

$$< \pm 1\text{nA (typically } \pm 200\text{pA)}$$

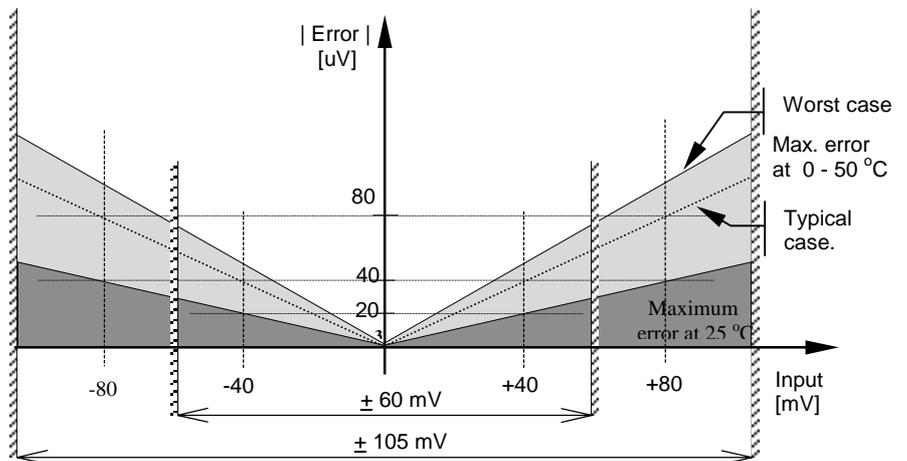


Figure C-1: Error Graph - mV Input

C.22.2. Mid range high impedance Input

0 - 2V Input type

Range:
 working range -1.4V to +2V
 full linear range -1.8V to +2.4V
 noise (resolution) 100uV - OFF, 50uV - 0.4sec, 35uV - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy @ 25°C
 $< \pm (0.5\text{mV} + 0.05\% \text{ of } |\text{reading}|)$

Drift with ambient temperature
 $< \pm (0.05\text{mV} + 0.003\% \text{ of } |\text{reading}|) \text{ per } ^\circ\text{C}$

Linearity error
 $< \pm 0.01\% \text{ of span (i.e. } \pm 200\text{uV)}$

Input Impedance & Leakage
 $> 100\text{M}\Omega$ $< 1\text{nA}$

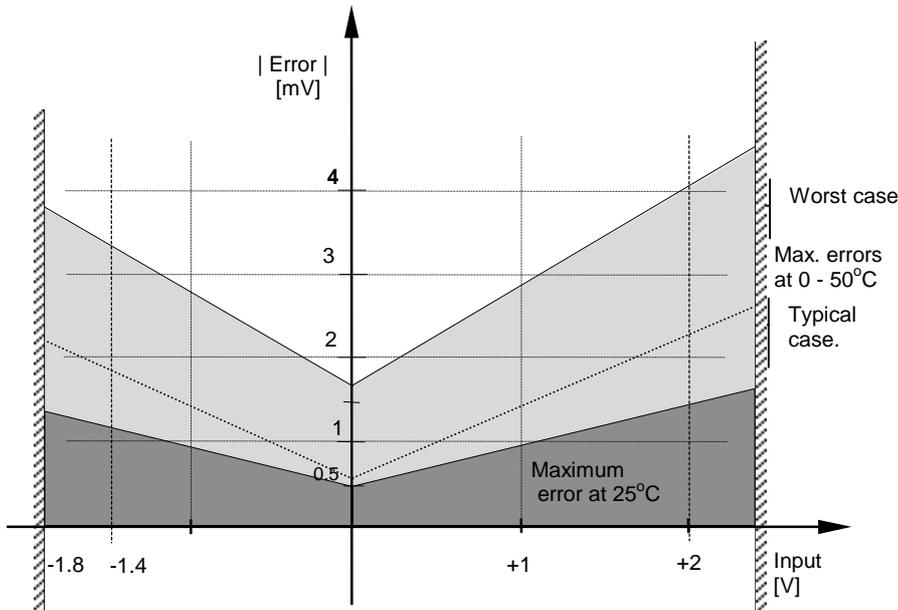


Figure C-2: Error Graph - 0 - 2V Input

C.22.3. High Level Input

0 - 10V Input type

Range:

working range	-3V to +10V		
full linear range	-5V to +14V		
noise (resolution)	300uV - OFF,	150uV - 0.4sec,	100uV - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy @ 25°C

$$< \pm (0.5\text{mV} + 0.1\% \text{ of } |\text{reading}|)$$

Drift with ambient temperature

$$< \pm (0.01\text{mV} + 0.006\% \text{ of } |\text{reading}|) \text{ per } ^\circ\text{C}$$

Linearity error

$$< \pm 0.02\% \text{ of span (i.e. } \pm 2\text{mV)}$$

Input Impedance

0.66 MΩ

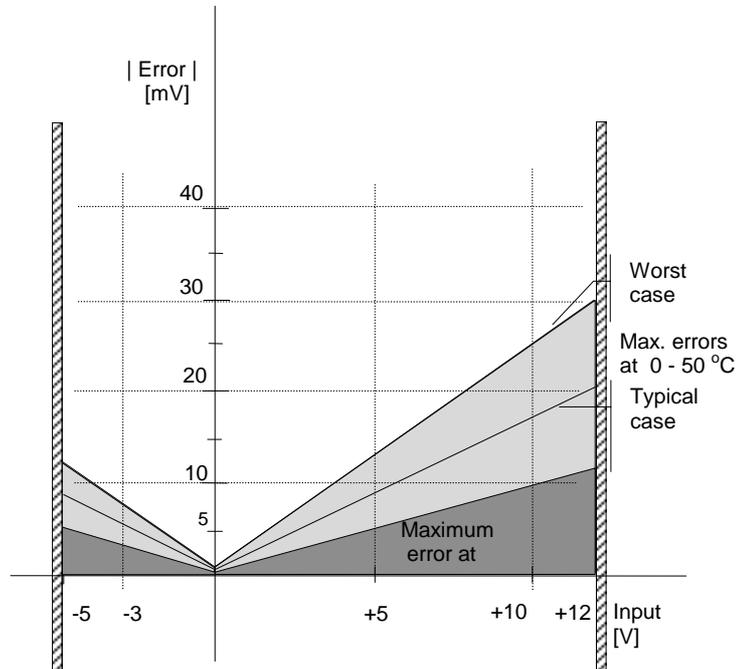


Figure C-3: Error Graph - 0 - 10V Input

C.22.4. RTD (Pt-100) Input type

Resistance measurement specification in Ohms:

Range

0 to 400 Ω with up to 22 Ω in each connecting lead

Noise (resolution)

8m Ω - 0.4sec, 4m Ω - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy limits @ 25 $^{\circ}$ C

< \pm (35m Ω @ 110 Ω + 0.03% of |reading - 110 Ω |)

Drift with ambient temperature

\pm (0.002% of |reading|) per $^{\circ}$ C

Linearity error

< \pm 15 m Ω

Pt-100 measurement specification in $^{\circ}$ C:

Range

-200 $^{\circ}$ C to +850 $^{\circ}$ C

Noise (resolution)

0.02 $^{\circ}$ C - 0.4sec, 0.01 $^{\circ}$ C - 1.6sec

Calibration accuracy limit @ 25 $^{\circ}$ C

< \pm (0.1 $^{\circ}$ C + 0.03% of |reading in $^{\circ}$ C|)

Drift with ambient temperature

< \pm (0.0055 $^{\circ}$ C + 0.002% of |reading in $^{\circ}$ C|) per $^{\circ}$ C of ambient change

Linearity + Linearisation error

< \pm 55 $^{\circ}$ mC (i.e. 50 $^{\circ}$ mC + 5 $^{\circ}$ mC)

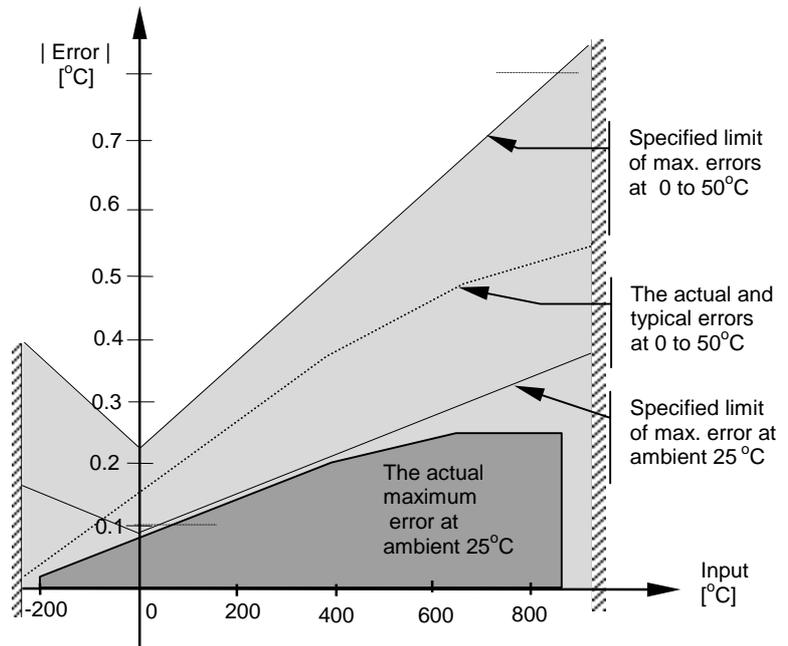


Figure C-4: Error Graph - RTD Input

C.22.5. Thermocouple Input type

Internal CJT sensing spec

Calibration error @ 25°C (including temp. difference between top and bottom screws)

$< \pm 0.5^\circ\text{C}$

Total CJT error

$< \pm (0.5^\circ\text{C} + 0.012^\circ\text{C per } 1^\circ\text{C of ambient change})$

(i.e. CJC Rejection for measured temperatures above 0°C is $> 80 : 1$)

Noise (resolution)

0.01 °C

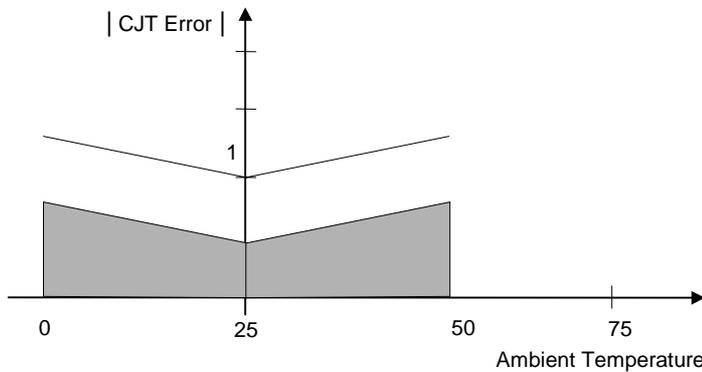


Figure C-5: Overall CJT Error at Different Ambient Temperatures

D. APPENDIX D PARAMETER UNITS AND ADDRESSES ..	2
D.1. COMMONLY USED PARAMETERS.....	2
D.2. PARAMETER UNITS	8
D.3. MODULE STATUS MESSAGES.....	8

D. Appendix D Parameter Units and Addresses

D.1. COMMONLY USED PARAMETERS

Any parameter can be chosen for Soft Wiring, Parameter Promotion or Customised Display purposes by using its Modbus address. The address of any parameter can be found by using iTools. However, the controller contains a list a commonly used parameters showing both their Modbus addresses and the mnemonic of the the parameter. These parameters are shown in the following table:

Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Refer To Section:-	Modbus Address
None	None		00000
L1.PV	Loop1 PV	Chapter 9	00001
L1.Wkg OP	Loop1 working output	LP1 SETUP	00004
L1.Wkg SP	Loop1 working setpoint	Diagnostic Page	00005
L1.Ch1 OP	Loop1 channel 1 output	Output Page	00013
L1.Ch2 OP	Loop1 channel 2 output	Output Page	00014
L2.PV	Loop2 PV	Chapter 9	01025
L2.Wkg OP	Loop2 working output	LP2 SETUP	01028
L2.Wkg SP	Loop2 working setpoint	Diagnostic Page	01029
L2.Ch1 OP	Loop2 channel 1 output	Output Page	01037
L2.Ch2 OP	Loop2 channel 2 output	Output Page	01038
L3.PV	Loop3 PV	Chapter 9	02049
L3Wkg OP	Loop3 working output	LP3 SETUP	02052
L3Wkg SP	Loop3 working setpoint	Diagnostic Page	02053
L3Ch1 OP	Loop3 channel 1 output	Output Page	02061
L3Ch2 OP	Loop3 channel 2 output	Output Page	02062
CLin1.OP	Custom linearisation 1	Chapter 11 INPUT OPERS Cust Lin 1	03365
CLin2.OP	Custom linearisation 2	Cust Lin 2	03413
CLin3.OP	Custom linearisation 3	Cust Lin 3	03461
SwOv1.OP	Switchover output value	Switch 1 Page	03477
Mod1A.Val	Module 1A output value	Chapter 18 MODULE IO Module 1A page	04148
Mod1B.Val	Module 1B output value	Module 1B page	04196
Mod1C.Val	Module 1C output value	Module 1C page	04244
Mod3A.Val	Module 3A output value	Module 3A page	04468
Mod3B.Val	Module 3B output value	Module 3B page	04516
Mod3C.Val	Module 3C output value	Module 3C page	04564
Mod4A.Val	Module 4A output value	Module 4A page	04628
Mod4B.Val	Module 4B output value	Module 4B page	04676

Mod4C.Val	Module 4C output value	Module 4C page	04724
Mod5A.Val	Module 5A output value	Module 5A page	04788
Mod5B.Val	Module 5B output value	Module 5B page	04836
Mod5C.Val	Module 5C output value	Module 5C page	04884
Mod6A.Val	Module 6A output value	Module 6A page	04948
Mod6B.Val,	Module 6B output value	Module 6B page	04996
Mod6C.Val	Module 6C output value	Module 6C page	05044
PVIn.Val	PV input value	Chapter 17 STANDARD IO PV Input page	05108
AnIn.Val	Analogue input value	An Input Page	05268
DIO1.Val	Digital input/output value 1	Dig IO1 Page	05402
DIO2.Val	Digital input/output value 2	Dig IO2 Page	05450
DIO3.Val	Digital input/output value 3	Dig IO3 Page	05498
DIO4.Val	Digital input/output value 4	Dig IO4 Page	05546
DIO5.Val	Digital input/output value 5	Dig IO5 Page	05594
DIO6.Val	Digital input/output value 6	Dig IO6 Page	05642
DIO7.Val	Digital input/output value 7	Dig IO7 Page	05690
Prg.PSP1	Programmer working SP1	Chapter 6 RUN PSP1 Page	05800
Prg.PSP2	Programmer working SP2	PSP2 Page	05801
Prg.PSP3	Programmer working SP3	PSP3 Page	05802
Prg.Uval1	Programmer user value 1	PROGRAM EDIT Segment Page	05808
Prg.Uval2	Programmer user value 2	PROGRAM EDIT Segment Page	05809
Prg.DO1	Programmer digital OP1	Chapter 6 RUN General Page	05869
Prg.DO2	Programmer digital OP2		05870
Prg.DO3	Programmer digital OP3		05871
Prg.DO4	Programmer digital OP4		05872
Prg.DO5	Programmer digital OP5		05873
Prg.DO6	Programmer digital OP6		05874
Prg.DO7	Programmer digital OP7		05875
Prg.DO8	Programmer digital OP8		05876
ProgEnd	End of Program		05892
ProgRun	Program run		05893
ProgHold	Program hold		05894
ProgNewSe	Program new segment		05895
ProgReset	Program reset		05906

AnOp1.OP	Analogue operator OP1	Chapter 14 ANALOGUE OPERS Analogue 1 Page	06158
AnOp2.OP	Analogue operator OP2	Analogue 2 Page	06178
AnOp3.OP	Analogue operator OP3	Analogue 3 Page	06198
AnOp4.OP	Analogue operator OP4	Analogue 4 Page	06218
AnOp5.OP	Analogue operator OP5	Analogue 5 Page	06238
AnOp6.OP	Analogue operator OP6	Analogue 6 Page	06258
AnOp7.OP	Analogue operator OP7	Analogue 7 Page	06278
AnOp8.OP	Analogue operator OP8	Analogue 8 Page	06298
AnOp9.OP	Analogue operator OP9	Analogue 9 Page	06318
AnOp10.OP	Analogue operator OP10	Analogue 10 Page	06338
AnOp11.OP	Analogue operator OP11	Analogue 11 Page	06358
AnOp12.OP	Analogue operator OP12	Analogue 12 Page	06378
AnOp13.OP	Analogue operator OP13	Analogue 13 Page	06398
AnOp14.OP	Analogue operator OP14	Analogue 14 Page	06418
AnOp15.OP	Analogue operator OP15	Analogue 15 Page	06438
AnOp16.OP	Analogue operator OP16	Analogue 16 Page	06458
LgOp1.OP	Logic operator output 1	Chapter 15 LOGIC OPERS Logic 1 Page	07176
LgOp2.OP	Logic operator output 2	Logic 2 Page	07192
LgOp3.OP	Logic operator output 3	Logic 3 Page	07208
LgOp4.OP	Logic operator output 4	Logic 4 Page	07224
LgOp5.OP	Logic operator output 5	Logic 5 Page	07240
LgOp6.OP	Logic operator output 6	Logic 6 Page	07256
LgOp7.OP	Logic operator output 7	Logic 7 Page	07272
LgOp8.OP	Logic operator output 8	Logic 8 Page	07288
LgOp9.OP	Logic operator output 9	Logic 9 Page	07304
LgOp10.OP	Logic operator output 10	Logic 10 Page	07320
LgOp11.OP	Logic operator output 11	Logic 11 Page	07336
LgOp12.OP	Logic operator output 12	Logic 12 Page	07352
LgOp13.OP	Logic operator output 13	Logic 13 Page	07368
LgOp14.OP	Logic operator output 14	Logic 14 Page	07384
LgOp15.OP	Logic operator output 15	Logic 15 Page	07400
LgOp16.OP	Logic operator output 16	Logic 16 Page	07416

Clk.Alm1	Timer alarm 1	Chapter 12 TIMER BLOCKS Alarm 1 Page	08711
Clk.Alm2	Timer alarm 2	Alarm 2 Page	08716
Tot1.Alm	Totaliser 1 alarm output	Chapter 12 TIMER BLOCKS Totaliser 1 Page	08743
Tot2.Alm	Totaliser 2 alarm output	Totaliser 2 Page	08757
Tot3.Alm	Totaliser 3 alarm output	Totaliser 3 Page	08775
Tot4.Alm	Totaliser 4 alarm output	Totaliser 4 Page	08791
Tmr1.OP	Timer 1 output	Chapter 12 TIMER BLOCKS Timer 1 Page	08963
Tmr2.OP	Timer 2 output	Timer 2 Page	08975
Tmr3.OP	Timer 3 output	Timer 3 Page	08987
Tmr4.OP	Timer 4 output	Timer 4 Page	08999
UVal1.Val	User 1 value	Chapter 13 USER VALUES User Val 1 Page	09220
UVal2.Val	User 2 value	User Val 2 Page	09225
UVal3.Val	User 3 value	User Val 3 Page	09230
UVal4.Val	User 4 value	User Val 4 Page	09235
Pat1.OP1	Pattern 1 output 1	Chapter 15	09973
Pat1.OP2	Pattern 1 output 2	PATTERN	09974
Pat1.OP3	Pattern 1 output 3	GENERATOR	09975
Pat1.OP4	Pattern 1 output 4	Dig Group 1	09976
Pat1.OP5	Pattern 1 output 5		09977
Pat1.OP6	Pattern 1 output 6		09978
Pat1.OP7	Pattern 1 output 7		09979
Pat1.OP8	Pattern 1 output 8		09980
Pat1.OP9	Pattern 1 output 9		09981
Pat1.OP10	Pattern 1 output 10		09982
Pat1.OP11	Pattern 1 output 11		09983
Pat1.OP12	Pattern 1 output 12		09984
Pat1.OP13	Pattern 1 output 13		09985
Pat1.OP14	Pattern 1 output 14		09986
Pat1.OP15	Pattern 1 output 15		09987
Pat1.OP16	Pattern 1 output 16		09988

Pat2.OP1	Pattern 2 output 1	Chapter 15 PATTERN GENERATOR Dig Group 2	10037
Pat2.OP2	Pattern 2 output 2		10038
Pat2.OP3	Pattern 2 output 3		10039
Pat2.OP4	Pattern 2 output 4		10040
Pat2.OP5	Pattern 2 output 5		10041
Pat2.OP6	Pattern 2 output 6		10042
Pat2.OP7	Pattern 2 output 7		10043
Pat2.OP8	Pattern 2 output 8		10044
Pat2.OP9	Pattern 2 output 9		10045
Pat2.OP10	Pattern 2 output 10		10046
Pat2.OP11	Pattern 2 output 11		10047
Pat2.OP12	Pattern 2 output 12		10048
Pat2.OP13	Pattern 2 output 13		10049
Pat2.OP14	Pattern 2 output 14		10050
Pat2.OP15	Pattern 2 output 15		10051
Pat2.OP16	Pattern 2 output 16		10052
Sum.LP2&3	Summary of loop 2 and loop3		10246
Sum.PrName	Summary of programmer name	Chapter 6 PROGRAM RUN General Page	10247
Sum.D1-16	Summary of digital outputs 1 to 16	Chapter 6 PROGRAM RUN General Page	10248
Sum.TiRem	Summary of program time remaining	Chapter 6 PROGRAM RUN General Page	10249
Const.1	Constant value = 1 May be used in place of a User Value		10464
Zirc.PV	Zirconia Value	Chapter 10 ZIRCONIA Options Page	11059
Zirc.Stat	Probe Status		11066
Zirc.Clea	Clean State		11067
Zirc.SAlm	Sooting Alarm		PROBE
Humid.%RH	Relative Humidity	Chapter 10 HUMIDITY Options Page	11105
Humid.DwP	Dewpoint	Chapter 10 HUMIDITY Options Page	11106
DI8.Val	Status of digital input 8	Chapter 17 STANDARD IO Diagnostic Page	11313
DI-E1.Val	Status of IO expander inputs		11314

L1Alm1.OP	Loop1 alarm 1 output	Chapter 7 ALARMS LP1 Page	11592
L1Alm2.OP	Loop1 alarm 2 output		11602
L2Alm1.OP	Loop2 alarm 1 output	LP2 Page	11640
L2Alm2.OP	Loop2 alarm 2 output	LP2 Page	11650
L3Alm1.OP	Loop3 alarm 1 output	LP3 Page	11688
L3Alm2.OP	Loop3 alarm 2 output	LP3 Page	11698
U1Alm.OP	User 1 alarm output	User 1 Page	11737
U2Alm.OP	User 2 alarm output	User 2 Page	11753
U3Alm.OP	User 3 alarm output	User 3 Page	11769
U4Alm.OP	User 4 alarm output	User 4 Page	11785
U5Alm.OP	User 5 alarm output	User 5 Page	11801
U6Alm.OP	User 6 alarm output	User 6 Page	11817
U7Alm.OP	User 7 alarm output	User 7 Page	11833
U8Alm.OP	User 8 alarm output	User 8 Page	11849
NewAlarm	New alarm	Summary Page	12162
IOEx.IP1	IO expander input 1		12187
IOEx.IP2	IO expander input 2		12188
IOEx.IP3	IO expander input 3		12189
IOEx.IP4	IO expander input 4		12190
IOEx.IP5	IO expander input 5		12191
IOEx.IP6	IO expander input 6		12192
IOEx.IP7	IO expander input 7		12193
IOEx.IP8	IO expander input 8		12194
IOEx.IP9	IO expander input 9		12195
IOEx.IP10	IO expander input 10		12196

D.2. PARAMETER UNITS

PSP Units are:-

None

°C/°F/°K,

V, mV, A, mA,

PH, mmHg, psi, bar, mbar, %RH, %, mmWG, inWG, inWW, Ohms, PSIG, %O₂, PPM,

%CO₂, %CP, %/sec,

°C\°F\°K(rel),

Custom 1, Custom 2, Custom 3, Custom 4, Custom 5, Custom 6,

sec, min, hrs,

D.3. MODULE STATUS MESSAGES

OK	Module good
Initialising	Module initialising
Ch A SBreak	Channel A sensor input break
Ch C SBreak	Channel C sensor input break
Ch A Out Range	Channel A out of range
Ch C Out Range	Channel C out of range
Ch A IP Sat	Channel A input saturation
Ch C IP Sat	Channel C input saturation
Ch A Not Calib	Channel A not calibrated
Ch C Not Calib	Channel C not calibrated
Ch Short CCT	Channel terminals shorted

E.	APPENDIX E CASCADE TRIM MODE – EARLIER CONTROLLERS	2
E.1	CASCADE PARAMETERS	3

E. Appendix E Cascade Trim Mode – Earlier Controllers

Controllers built after April 2001 with software versions 4.0 or greater use the cascade trim block diagram shown in Section 9.10.5.

Earlier versions used the block diagram shown below.

It is recommended that if this mode is required for your application that the controller should be upgraded to Version 4.0 or greater. These later versions use additional trim limits and scaling to provide improved control in this mode.

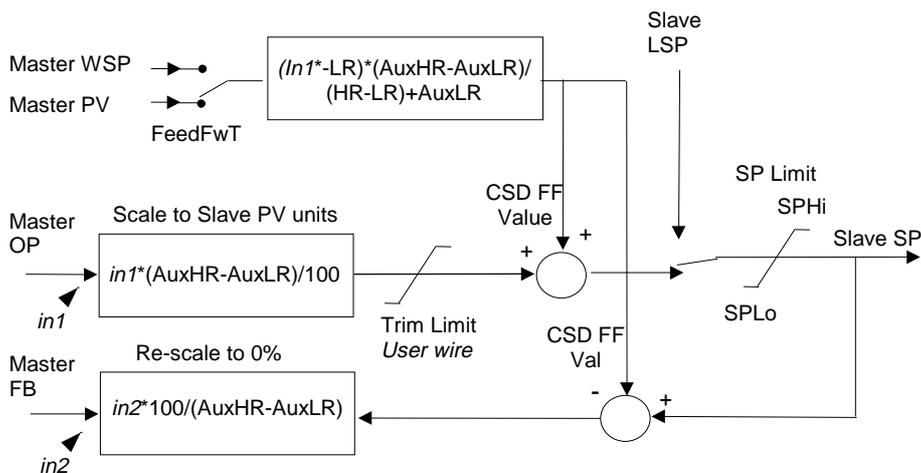


Figure E-1: Cascade Trim Mode - Software Versions Earlier Than V4.0

E.1 CASCADE PARAMETERS

Table Number: E.1.		These parameters allow you to autotune the loop		<i>LPx</i> setup (Cascade Page)	
Parameter Name	Parameter Description	Value	Default	Access Level	
Disable CSD	Cascade disable status. (It is sometimes useful to disable cascade when starting a process. This also returns the controller to single loop control using the local SP.)	Off On		L1	
CSD FF Value	Cascade feedforward value i.e. The value being fed forward	Range of signal being fed forward		L3	
CSD FF Trim Lim	Cascade feedforward trim limit i.e. The amount the master output can be trimmed up and down	Range of slave loop		L3	
Work FF Value	Working feedforward value			R/O	
The above three parameters only appear if 'FF Type' ≠ 'None'					
Master OP	Cascade master PID output power	Range of slave loop		R/O	

F.	APPENDIX F INSTALLATION	2
F.1.	MECHANICAL INSTALLATION	2
F.1.1.	Positioning	2
F.1.2.	Outline dimensions Model 2604	2
F.1.3.	Mounting the Controller	3
F.1.4.	Unplugging and Plugging in the Controller	3
F.2.	WIRING	4
F.2.1.	Electrical Connections	4
F.2.2.	Rear Terminal Layout	4
F.3.	STANDARD CONNECTIONS	6
F.3.1.	Power Supply Wiring	6
F.3.2.	Relay Output	6
F.3.3.	Sensor Input Connections	7
F.3.4.	Analogue Input Connections	8
F.3.5.	I/O Expander (or Additional Digital Input)	9
F.3.6.	Digital I/O	10
F.4.	OPTIONAL PLUG IN MODULE CONNECTIONS	11
F.4.1.	Digital Communications Connections	11
F.4.2.	Devicenet Wiring	13
F.4.3.	I/O Modules	15
F.5.	TO CONNECT ZIRCONIA (DUAL SIGNAL) PROBE	21
F.5.1.	Zirconia Probe Screening	22

F. Appendix F INSTALLATION

This section has been re-produced from the 2604 User Handbook as a reference for installation and wiring of the controller.

F.1. MECHANICAL INSTALLATION

F.1.1. Positioning

The controller can be mounted vertically or on a sloping panel of maximum thickness 15mm (0.6in). Adequate access space must be available at the rear of the instrument panel for wiring and servicing purposes. The outline dimensions are shown in figure F-1.

Take care not to cover ventilation holes in the top, bottom and sides of the instrument.

Before proceeding please read Appendix B 'Safety and EMC Information'.

F.1.2. Outline dimensions Model 2604

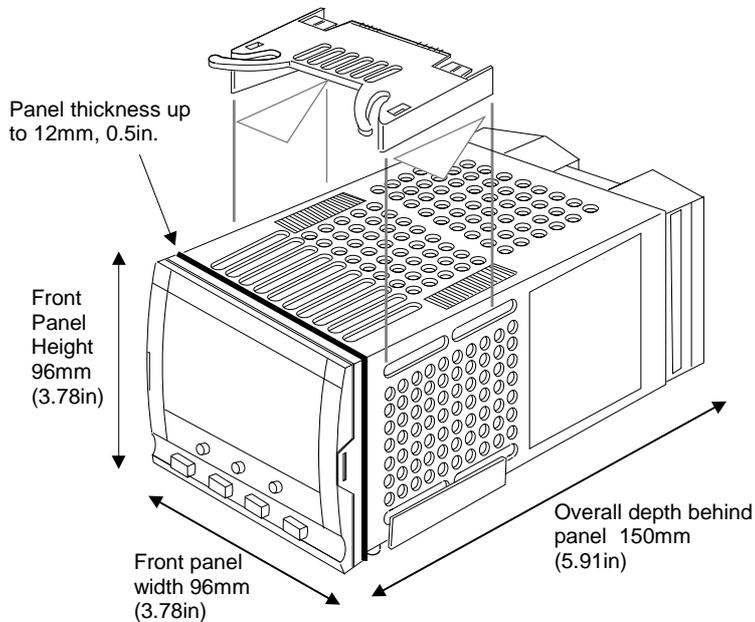


Figure F-1: Outline Dimensions

F.1.3. Mounting the Controller

1. Prepare the panel cut-out to the size shown in Figure F-2. Ensure that there is sufficient spacing between instruments as shown by the minimum dimensions given in Figure F-2. Ensure also that the controller is not mounted close to any device which is likely to produce a significant amount of heat which may affect the performance of the controller.
2. Insert the controller through the panel cut-out.
3. Spring the upper and lower panel retaining clips into place. Secure the controller in position by holding it level and pushing both retaining clips forward.

Note:- If the retaining clips subsequently need removing, in order to extract the controller from the control panel, they can be unhooked from the side with either your fingers or a screwdriver.

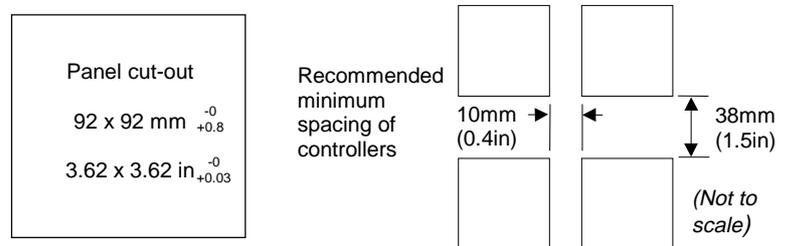


Figure F-2: Panel Cut-out and Minimum Spacing Requirements

F.1.4. Unplugging and Plugging in the Controller

If required, the controller can be unplugged from its sleeve by easing the latching ears outwards and pulling the controller forward out of the sleeve. When plugging the controller back into its sleeve, ensure that the latching ears click into place.

It is recommended that the power to the controller is switched off when un-plugging or plugging the controller into its sleeve. This is to prevent premature wear on the controller connectors when current is flowing through them.

F.2. WIRING

WARNING



You must ensure that the controller is correctly configured for your application. Incorrect configuration could result in damage to the process being controlled, and/or personal injury. It is your responsibility, as the installer, to ensure that the configuration is correct. The controller may either have been configured when ordered, or may need configuring now.

Before proceeding further, please read Appendix B, Safety and EMC information.

F.2.1. Electrical Connections

All electrical connections are made to the screw terminals at the rear of the controller. They accept wire sizes from 0.5 to 1.5 mm² (16 to 22 AWG) and should be tightened to a torque of 0.4Nm (3.5lbin). If you wish to use crimp connectors, the correct size is AMP part number 349262-1. The terminals are protected by a clear plastic hinged cover to prevent hands, or metal, making accidental contact with live wires.

F.2.2. Rear Terminal Layout

The rear terminal layout is shown in Figure F-3, which identifies terminal designations and their functions. Refer to the individual diagrams to wire the controller to your requirements.

The two outer terminal strips have fixed hardware for all versions of the instrument, as follows:-

- A Process Variable input which can be configured for:-
 - Thermocouple, RTD, Pyrometer, Voltage (e.g. 0-10Vdc) or Milliamp (e.g. 4-20mA) plus vacuum – log10
- Seven Digital I/O, configurable as input or output
 - Inputs are logic (-1 to 35Vdc) or contact closure, and can be configured for:- Manual, Remote, Run, Hold, Reset, etc,
 - Outputs are open collector requiring an external power supply, and can be configured as event, status time proportioning or valve position outputs.
- One digital input
- An I/O expander which allows additional digital I/O via an external unit, or an extra digital input
- A changeover relay which can be configured as an alarm or event output. It cannot be configured as a time proportioning output
- An analogue input for volts (e.g. 0-10Vdc) or Milliamp (e.g. 4-20mA) signals to a second PID loop, setpoint, etc,. (This input can be characterised to match a particular curve from a transmitter. It cannot accept thermocouple inputs directly)
- Power supply to the unit. The supply may be 85 - 264Vac 50 or 60 Hz,

The three central terminal strips are for optional plug in modules, as follows:-

- Terminals marked 2A to 2D are reserved for a Memory Module only. No connections should be made to these terminals
- Terminals marked HA to HF are connections for optional RS232, RS485, or RS422 communications modules
- Terminals marked JA to JF are connections for an optional slave communications module or second communications port used to communicate with other instruments
The modules fitted into the above two communications slots can be inter-changed

For a full list of available modules refer to the Ordering code - Appendix A and the Technical Specification - Appendix C.

Warning:- Take care that mains supplies are connected only to the power supply terminals (85 to 254Vac only), the fixed relay terminals or to relay or triac modules. Under no circumstances should mains supplies be connected to any other terminals.

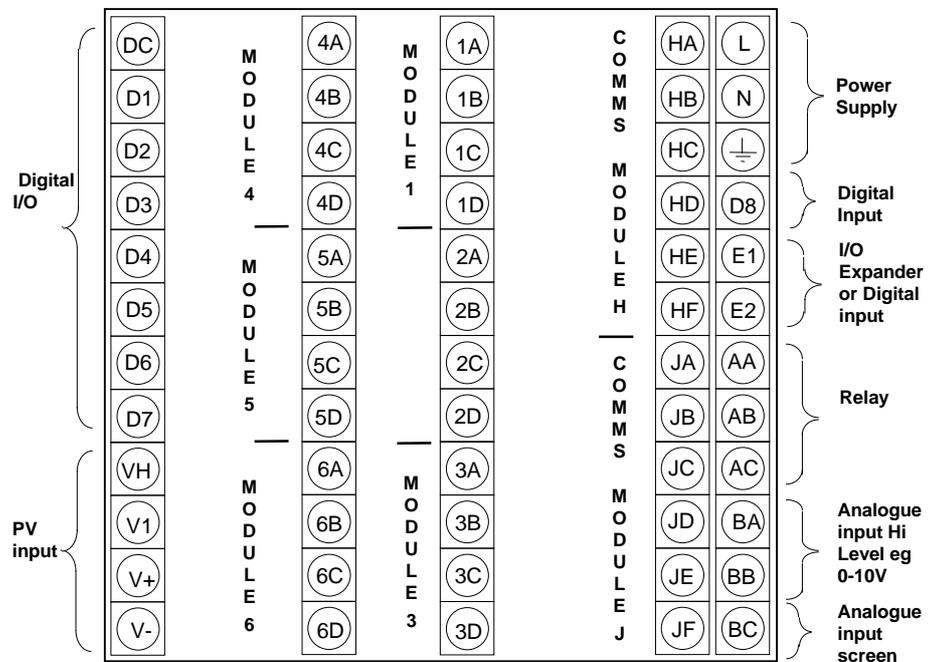


Figure F-3: Rear Terminal Connections

F.3. STANDARD CONNECTIONS

F.3.1. Power Supply Wiring

Controllers supplied with the VH Supply Voltage option are suitable for connection to a power supply of between 85 and 264Vac 50 or 60 Hz.

Controllers supplied with the VL Supply Voltage option are suitable for connection to a power supply of between 20 and 29Vac 50 or 60 Hz or 20 to 29Vdc.

It is the users responsibility to provide an external fuse or circuit breaker. Suitable fuses are :-

85 to 264 volt supply T type (EN60127 time-lag type) rated at 1A

20 to 29 volt supply T type (EN60127 time-lag type) rated at 4A

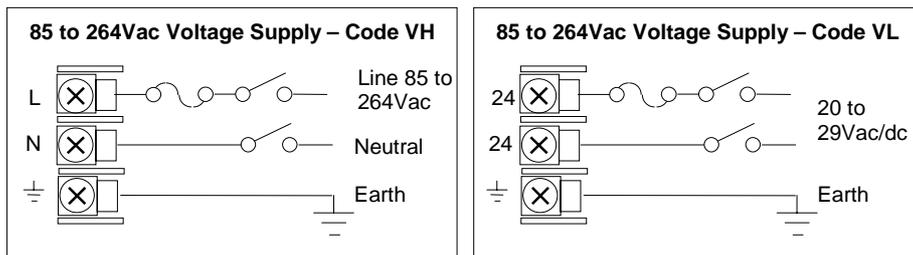


Figure F-4: Supply Voltage Connections

F.3.2. Relay Output

A single changeover relay is provided as standard. It can be configured as a control output or an alarm or event output.

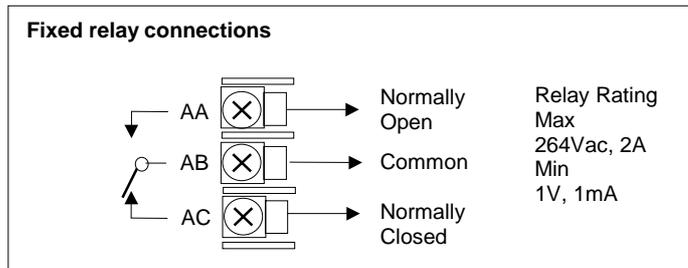


Figure F-5: Wiring Connections For Fixed Relay Output

F.3.3. Sensor Input Connections

The fixed PV input can accept a range of sensors including Thermocouple, RTD (Pt100), Pyrometer, Voltage (e.g. 0-10Vdc) or Milliamp (e.g. 4-20mA) signals. These sensors are used to provide inputs to Control Loop 1.

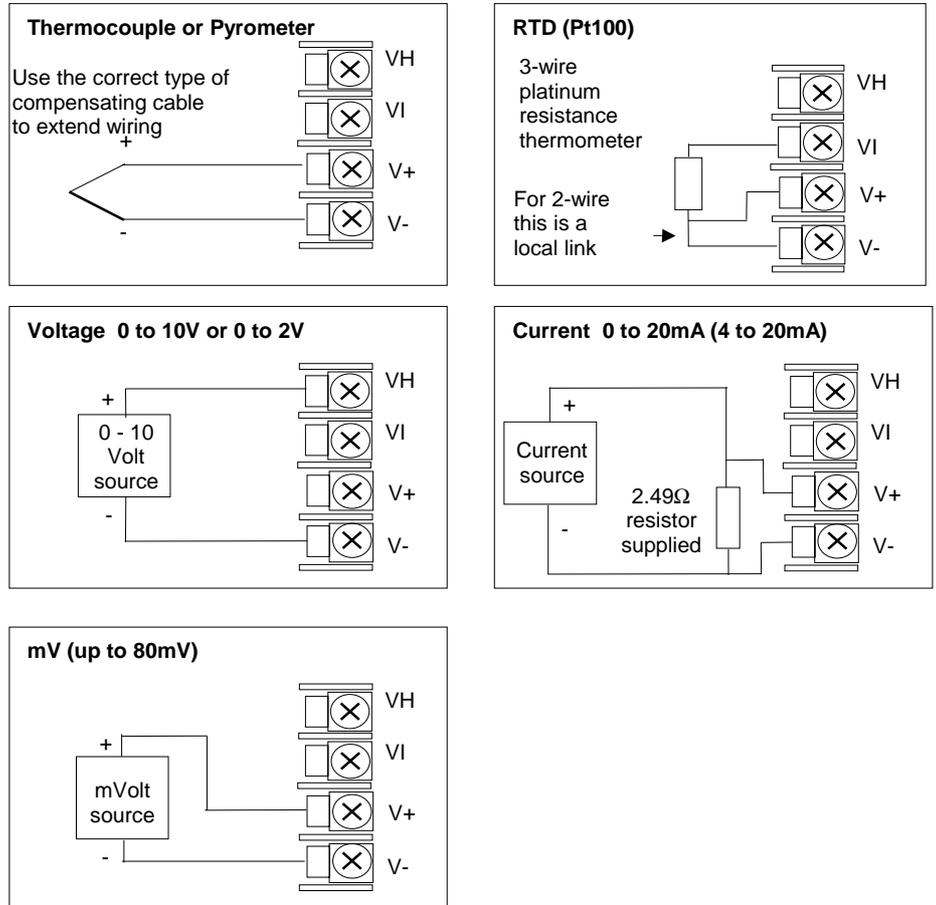


Figure F-6: Wiring Connections For PV Input

F.3.4. Analogue Input Connections

The analogue input is supplied as standard and is intended to accept 0 to 10 Vdc from a voltage source. A milli-amp current source can be used by connecting a 100Ω resistor across terminals BA and BB. This input can be used as a remote setpoint input, remote setpoint trim or as a high level PV input to a control loop. This input is not isolated from the digital IO.

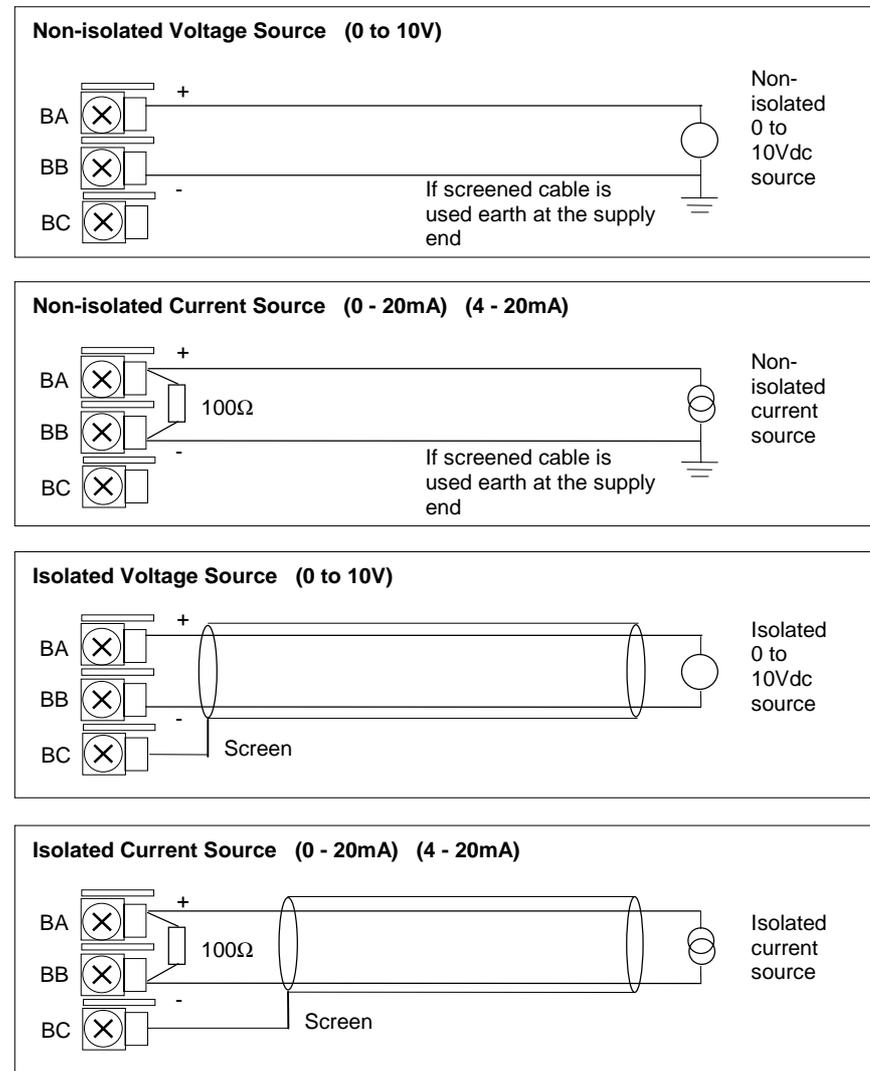


Figure F-7: Wiring Connections For Analogue Input

F.3.5. I/O Expander (or Additional Digital Input)

An I/O expander (Model No 2000IO) can be used with the 2604 to allow the number of I/O points to be increased by a further 20 digital inputs and 20 digital outputs. Data transfer is performed serially via a two wire interface from instrument to expander.

If the expander unit is not required it is possible to use terminals E1 & E2 as a secondary digital input. These terminals are not part of the digital I/O terminals D1 to D8 and if used in this way connect a 2K2, ¼ W limiting resistor in series with the input, see Figure F-8.

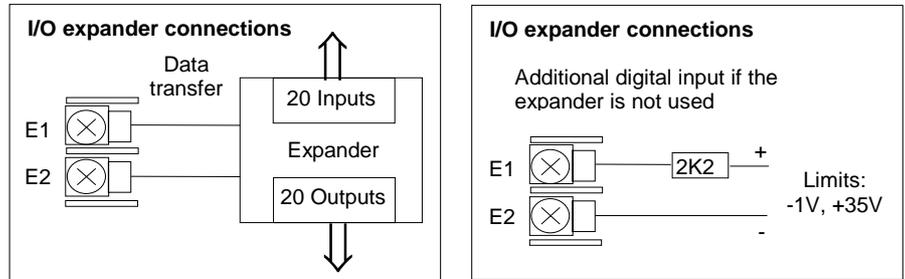


Figure F-8: Wiring Connections for the I/O Expander

For details of the IO Expander refer to the Operating Instructions HA026893. The connections for this unit are reproduced below for convenience.

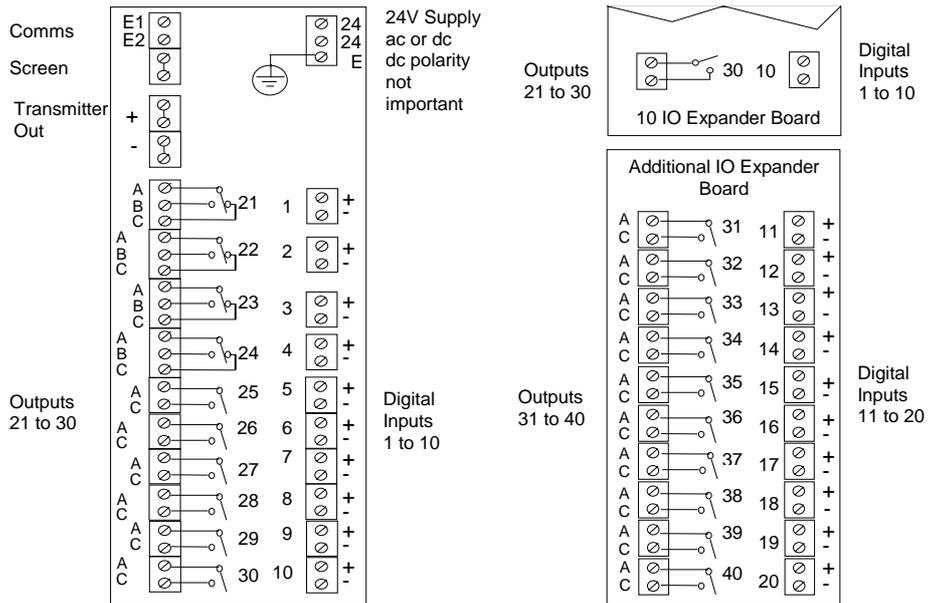


Figure F-9: IO Expander Connections

F.3.6. Digital I/O

Eight digital I/O connections are provided as standard. They can be individually configured as:

1. Inputs Run, Hold, Reset, Auto/Manual, etc. - logic or contact closure.
2. Outputs Configurable as Control outputs, Programmer Events, Alarms, etc.

Digital IO is not isolated from instrument ground.

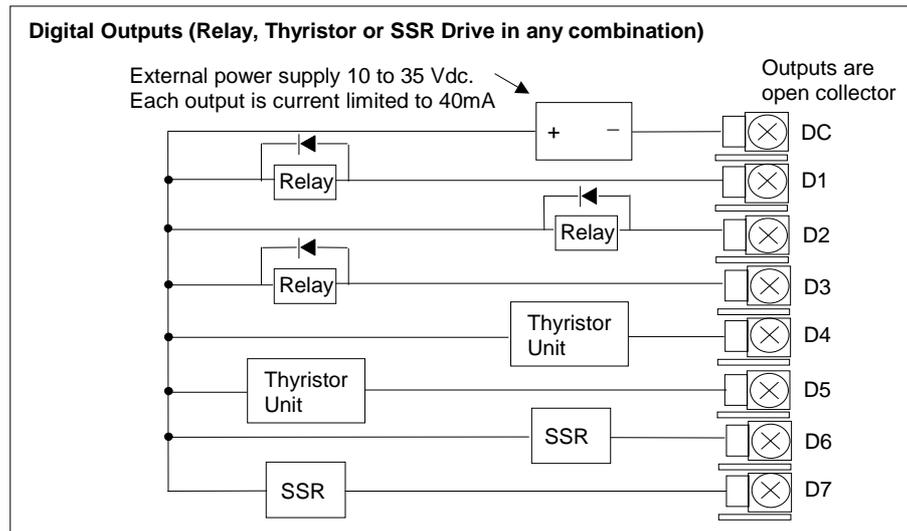
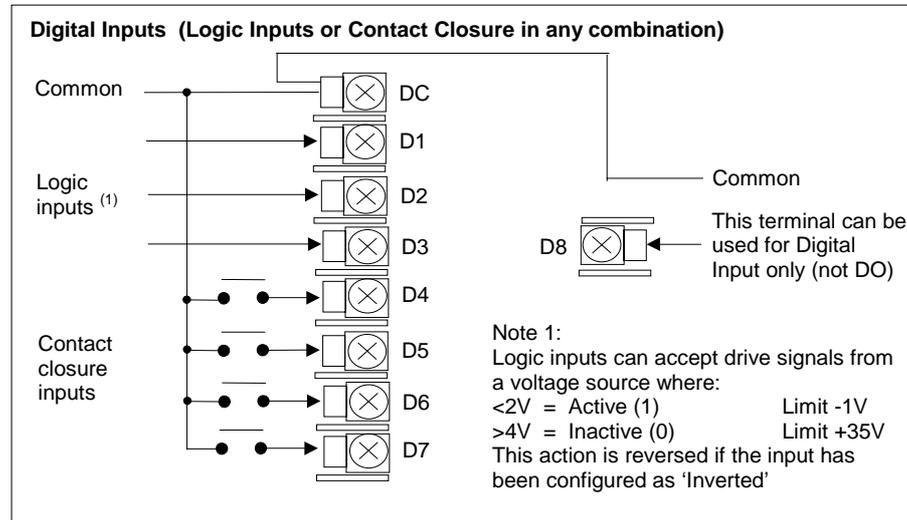


Figure F-10: Wiring Connections for Digital I/O

F.4. OPTIONAL PLUG IN MODULE CONNECTIONS

F.4.1. Digital Communications Connections

Digital Communications modules can be fitted in two positions in the 2604 controller. The connections being available on HA to HF and JA to JF depending on the position in which the module is fitted. The two positions could be used, for example, to communicate with a configuration package, such as 'iTools', on one position and to a PC running a supervisory package on the second position.

The connections shown in the following diagrams show RS232, 2-wire RS485, 4-wire RS422 and master/slave comms to a second controller.

The diagrams show connections for 'bench top test' wiring. For a full description of the installation of a communications link, including line resistors, see Communications Handbook, Part No. HA026230, and EMC Installation Guide, part no. HA025464.

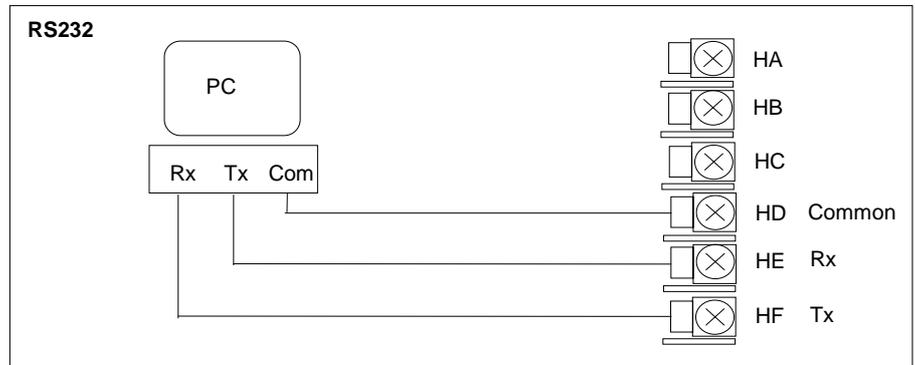


Figure F-11: RS232 Communications Connections

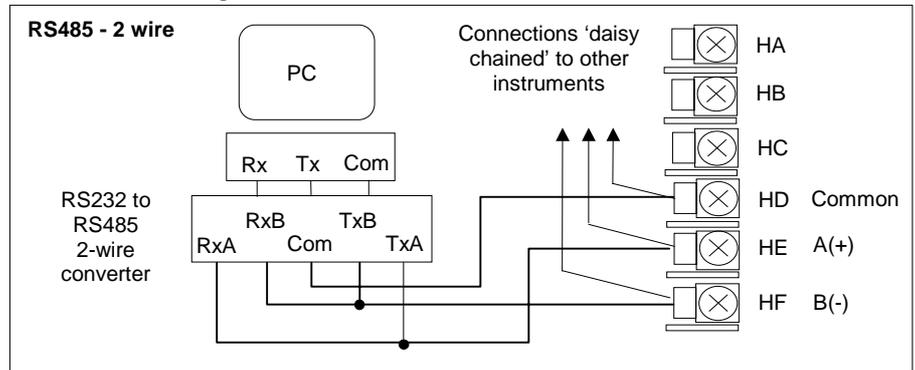


Figure F-12: RS485 2- Wire Communications Connections

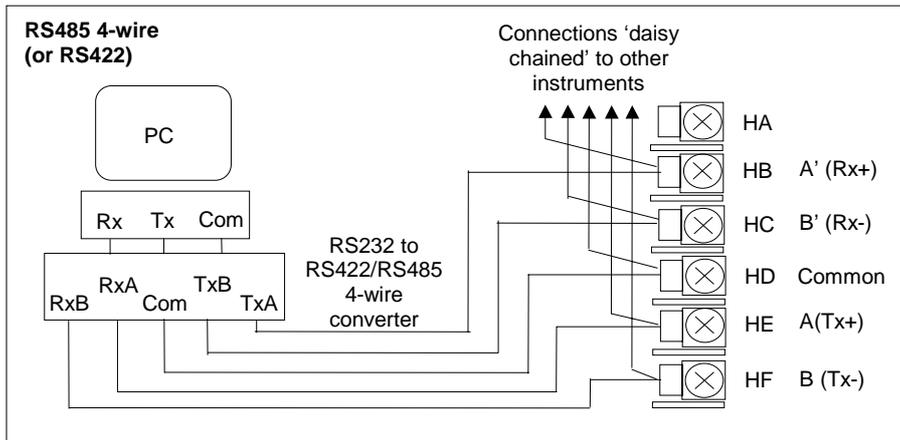


Figure F-13: RS485 4-Wire Communications Connections

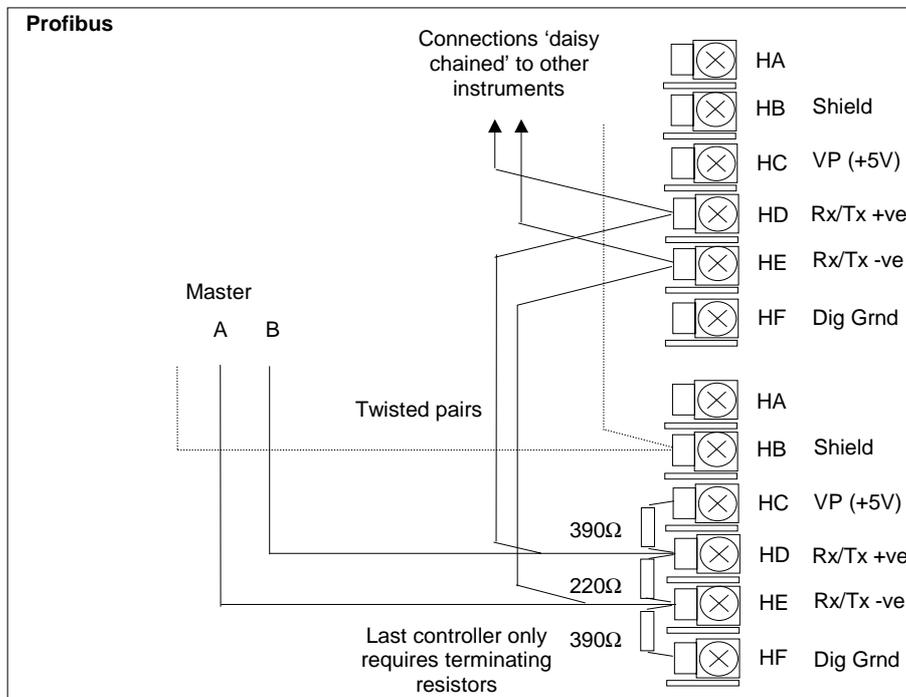


Figure F-14: Profibus Wiring Connections

F.4.2. Devicenet Wiring

This section covers the DeviceNet digital communications option.

F.4.2.1. DeviceNet Terminal Functions

Terminal Reference	CAN Label	Color Chip	Description
HA	V+	Red	DeviceNet network power positive terminal. Connect the red wire of the DeviceNet cable here. If the DeviceNet network does not supply the power, connect to the positive terminal of an external 11-25 Vdc power supply.
HB	CAN_H	White	DeviceNet CAN_H data bus terminal. Connect the white wire of the DeviceNet cable here.
HC	SHIELD	None	Shield/Drain wire connection. Connect the DeviceNet cable shield here. To prevent ground loops, the DeviceNet network should be grounded in only one location.
HD	CAN_L	Blue	DeviceNet CAN_L data bus terminal. Connect the blue wire of the DeviceNet cable here.
HE	V-	Black	DeviceNet network power negative terminal. Connect the black wire of the DeviceNet cable here. If the DeviceNet network does not supply the power, connect to the negative terminal of an external 11-25 Vdc power supply.
HF			Connect to instrument earth

Note: Power taps are recommended to connect the DC power supply to the DeviceNet trunk line. Power taps include:

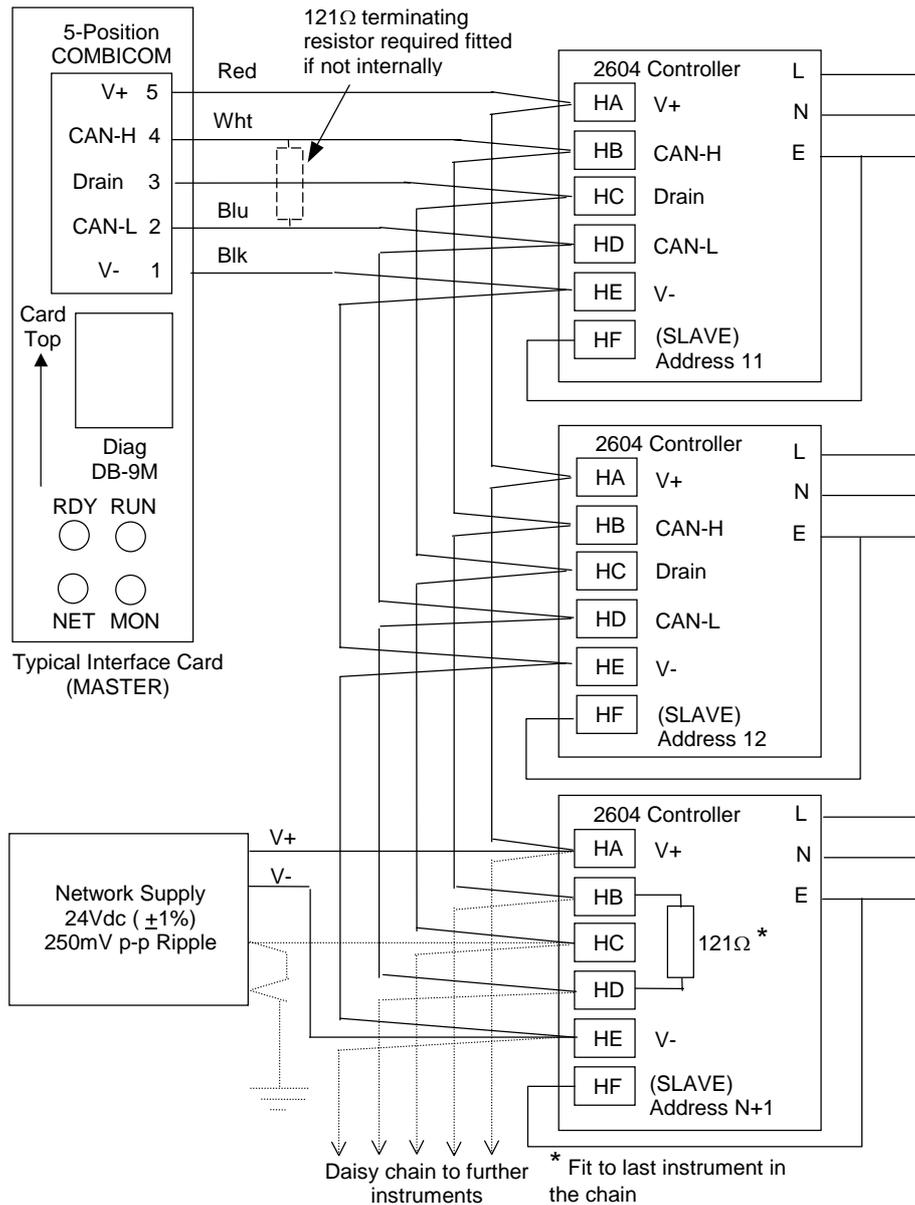


A Schottky Diode to connect the power supply V+ and allows for multiple power supplies to be connected.

2 fuses or circuit breakers to protect the bus from excessive current which could damage the cable and connectors.

The earth connection, HF, to be connected to the main supply earth terminal.

F.4.2.2. Wiring Interconnections for DeviceNet Communications

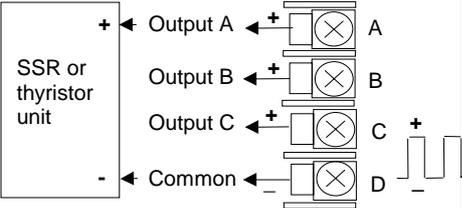
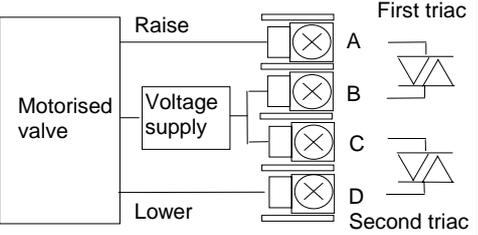
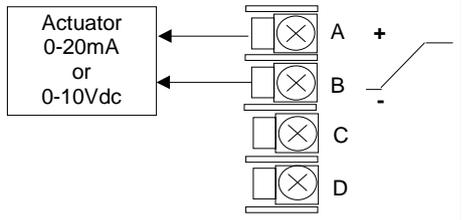
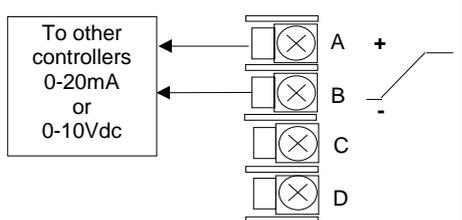


F.4.3. I/O Modules

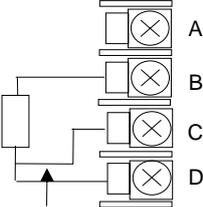
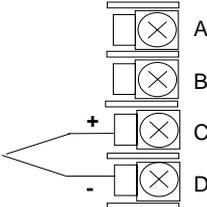
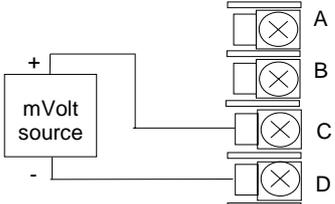
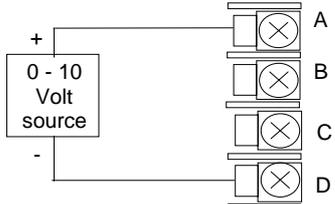
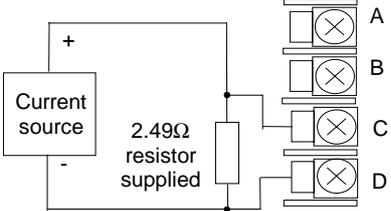
The 2604 controller contains five positions in which 4-terminal I/O modules can be fitted. These positions are marked Module 1, Module 3, Module 4, Module 5, Module 6, in Figure F-3. Module 2 is reserved for the Memory Module which can only be fitted in this position. To find out which modules are fitted check the ordering code which is found on a label on the side of the instrument.

Any module, listed in this section, can be fitted in any position, except the PV input - limited to positions 3 and 6 only; and the Analogue Input module - cannot be fitted in slot 5. Care should be taken, therefore, to ensure that modules are fitted as expected from the order code. The instrument can be interrogated in 'View Config' level to locate the positions in which the modules are fitted. See Chapter 4, Access Levels. If modules have been added, removed or changed it is recommended that this is recorded on the instrument code label.

I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
Note: The order code and terminal number is pre-fixed by the module number. Module 1 is connected to terminals 1A, 1B, 1C, 1D; module 3 to 3A, 3B, 3C, 3D, etc.			
Relay (2 pin) and Dual Relay max 264Vac, 2A, min 12V, 100mA	Heating, cooling, alarm, program event, valve raise, valve lower	R2 and RR	
Change Over Relay max 264Vac, 2A, min 12V, 10mA	Heating, cooling, alarm, program event, valve raise, valve lower	R4	
Isolated Single Logic Output 18Vdc at 24mA max	Heating, Cooling, Program events	LO	

I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
<p>Triple Logic Output</p> <p>(18Vdc at 8mA max. per channel)</p>	<p>Heating, cooling, program events</p>	<p>TP</p>	
<p>Triac and Dual Triac</p> <p>(0.7A, 30 to 264Vac combined rating)</p>	<p>Heating, cooling, valve raise, valve lower</p>	<p>T2 and TT</p>	 <p>Note: Dual relay modules may be used in place of dual triac.</p> <p>Note:- The combined current rating for the two triacs must not exceed 0.7A.</p>
<p>DC Control</p> <p>(10Vdc, 20mA max)</p>	<p>Heating, cooling</p> <p>e.g. to a 4-20mA process actuator</p>	<p>D4</p>	
<p>DC Re-transmission</p> <p>(10Vdc, 20mA max)</p>	<p>Logging of PV, SP, output power, etc.,</p> <p>(0 to 10Vdc, or 0 to 20mA)</p>	<p>D6</p>	

I/O Module	Typical usage	H/W Code	Connections and examples of use
<p>Dual DC Output</p> <p>(each channel can be 4-20mA or 24Vdc power supply)</p>	<p>Control output 12 bit resolution</p> <p>Can only be fitted in slots 1,4 or 5</p>	DO	
<p>High Resolution DC Output</p> <p>(one 15 bit 4-20mA plus one 24V power supply)</p>	<p>Retransmission in 'feedback mode'</p> <p>Can only be fitted in slots 1,4 or 5</p>	HR	

I/O Module	Typical usage	Order Code	Connections and examples of use
<p>PV Input (Modules 3 & 6 only)</p> <p>and</p> <p>Analogue Input (Modules 1, 3, 4 & 6 only)</p>	<p>Second or third PV input</p> <p>mV, V, mA, TC, RTD (Pt100) Zirconia probe</p> <p>Second or third PV input</p> <p>mV, mA, TC, RTD (Pt100)</p>	<p>PV</p> <p>AM</p>	<p>3-wire RTD</p>  <p>Thermocouple</p>  <p>For 2-wire this is a local link</p> <p>AM (up to 100mV)</p>  <p>Voltage 0 to 10V or 0 to 2V</p>  <p>Current 0 to 20mA (4 to 20mA)</p> 

I/O Module	Typical usage	Order Code	Connections and examples of use
Triple Logic Input	Events e.g. Program Run, Reset, Hold	TL	<p>Logic inputs</p> <p>Input 1 →  A</p> <p>Input 2 →  B</p> <p>Input 3 →  C</p> <p>Common →  D</p> <p><5V OFF >10.8V ON Limits: -3V, +30V</p>
Triple Contact Input	Events e.g. Program Run, Reset, Hold	TK	<p>External Switches or Relays</p> <p>Input 1 →  A</p> <p>Input 2 →  B</p> <p>Input 3 →  C</p> <p>Common →  D</p> <p>Contact inputs <100Ω ON >28KΩ OFF</p>
24V Transmitter Supply (20mA)	To power an external transmitter	MS	<p>Transmitter</p> <p>← +  A</p> <p>← -  B</p> <p> C</p> <p> D</p>

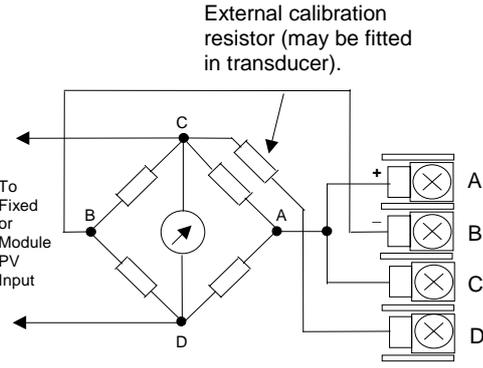
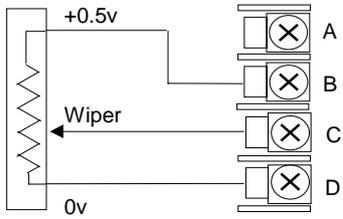
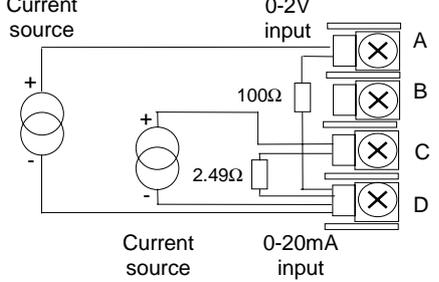
<p>Transducer Power Supply</p>	<p>Provide 5V or 10Vdc to power Strain Gauge Transducer + Shunt Contact</p>	<p>G3 or G5</p>	<p>External calibration resistor (may be fitted in transducer).</p>  <p>Note: To minimise noise pick up it is recommended that screened cables are used for strain gauge power supply connections.</p>
<p>Potentiometer Input (100Ω to 15KΩ)</p>	<p>Motorised valve position feedback Remote SP</p>	<p>VU</p>	
<p>Dual PV Input (Modules 3 & 6 only)</p>	<p>To accept two inputs from a high level and a low level source. The two inputs are not isolated from each other.</p>	<p>DP</p>	 <p>The common connections to terminal D must be returned separately to D as shown in the dual current example above.</p>

Figure F-15: Wiring Connections for IO Modules

F.5. TO CONNECT ZIRCONIA (DUAL SIGNAL) PROBE

A dual signal probe, such as a Zirconia probe, will normally be connected to a Dual PV Input module (Code DP). The module presents two channels, A and C, where A is the voltage input and C is the mV, thermocouple, RTD or mA input.

Example 1 shown below uses the Dual PV Input module with both channels configured. In this configuration the module runs at 4.5Hz. The two channels are un-isolated from one-another but isolated from the rest of the instrument.

Example 2 uses two modules. The modules can either be two PV Input modules (code PV) or a Dual PV Input module (code DP) with Channel C configured as 'None' plus a PV Input module. This combination runs at 9Hz and may be used if the loop is unusually fast.

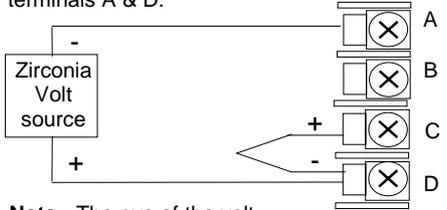
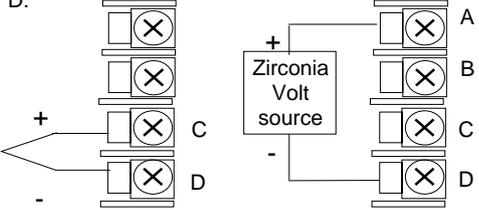
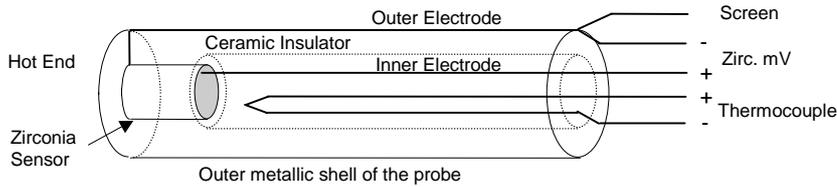
I/O Module	Typical usage	Order Code	Connections and examples of use
Dual PV Input	Zirconia probe	DP	<p>Example 1:- Using the Dual PV Input Module. Channel C is shown configured for thermocouple. The temperature sensor of a zirconia probe is connected to this input, terminals C & D. The Volt Source is connected to the A channel, terminals A & D.</p>  <p>Note: The +ve of the volt source must be connected to the -ve of the thermocouple.</p>
Two PV Input Modules	PV		<p>Example 2:- Using Two Modules The temperature sensor of the zirconia probe can be connected to the precision PV input of one I/O module, connections C & D, with the Volt Source connected to the second module, terminals A & D.</p> 

Figure F-16: Wiring Connections for Zirconia Probe

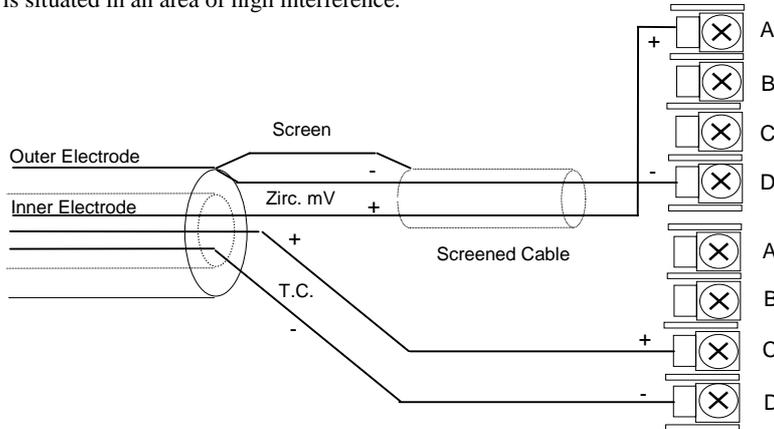
F.5.1. Zirconia Probe Screening

F.5.1.1. Zirconia Carbon Probe Construction



F.5.1.2. Screening connections when two modules are used

The zirconia sensor wires should be screened and connected to the outer shell of the probe if it is situated in an area of high interference.



F.5.1.3. Screening connections when a dual input module is used

Both the thermocouple and the zirconia sensor wires must be screened and connected to the outer shell of the probe if it is situated in an area of high interference.

Note the reverse connection of the zirconia sensor .

